



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

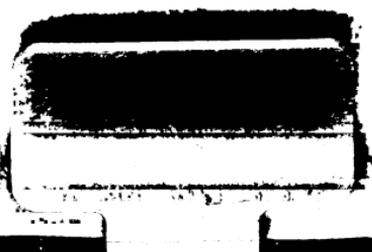
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

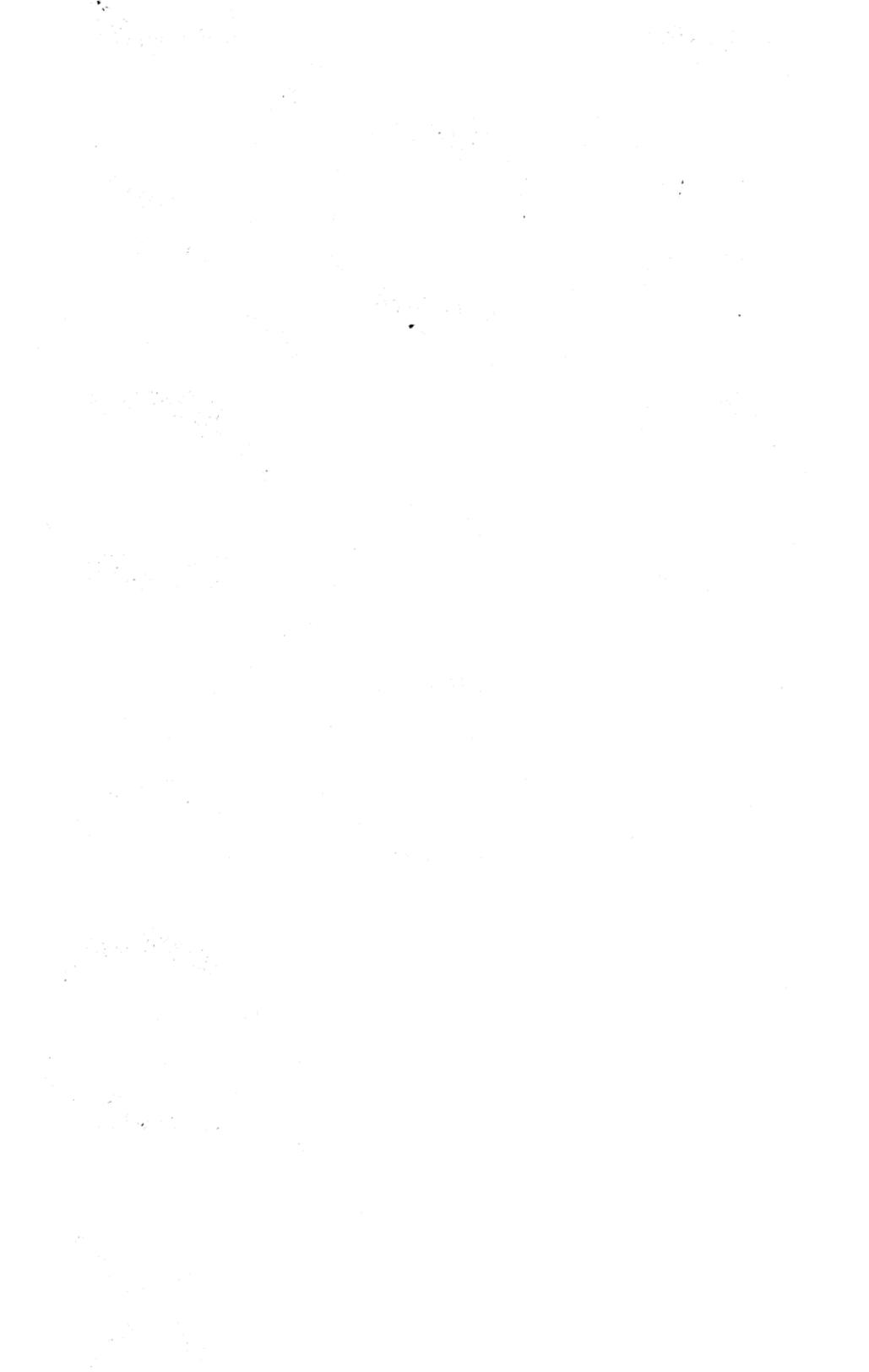
We also ask that you:

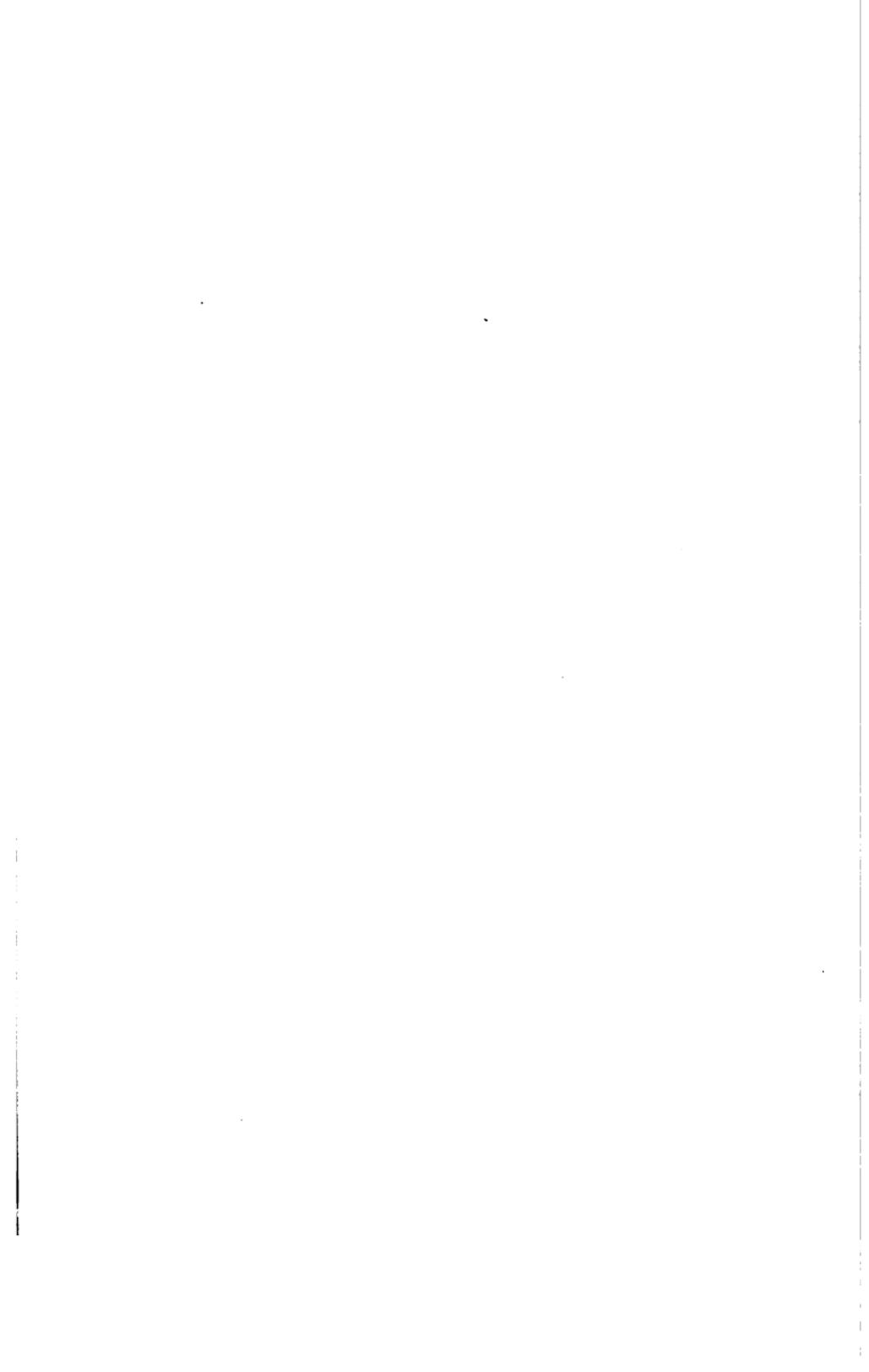
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

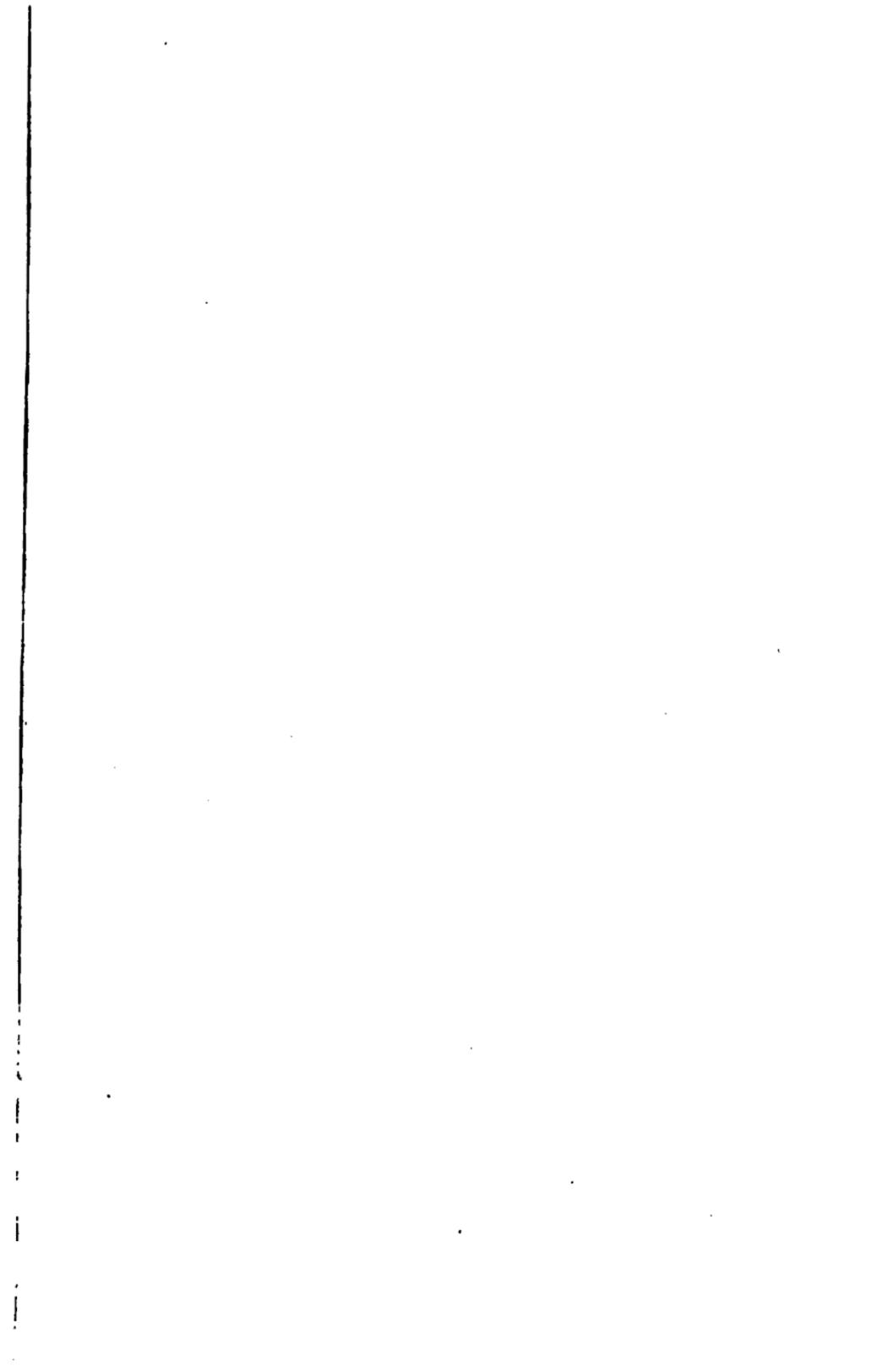
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

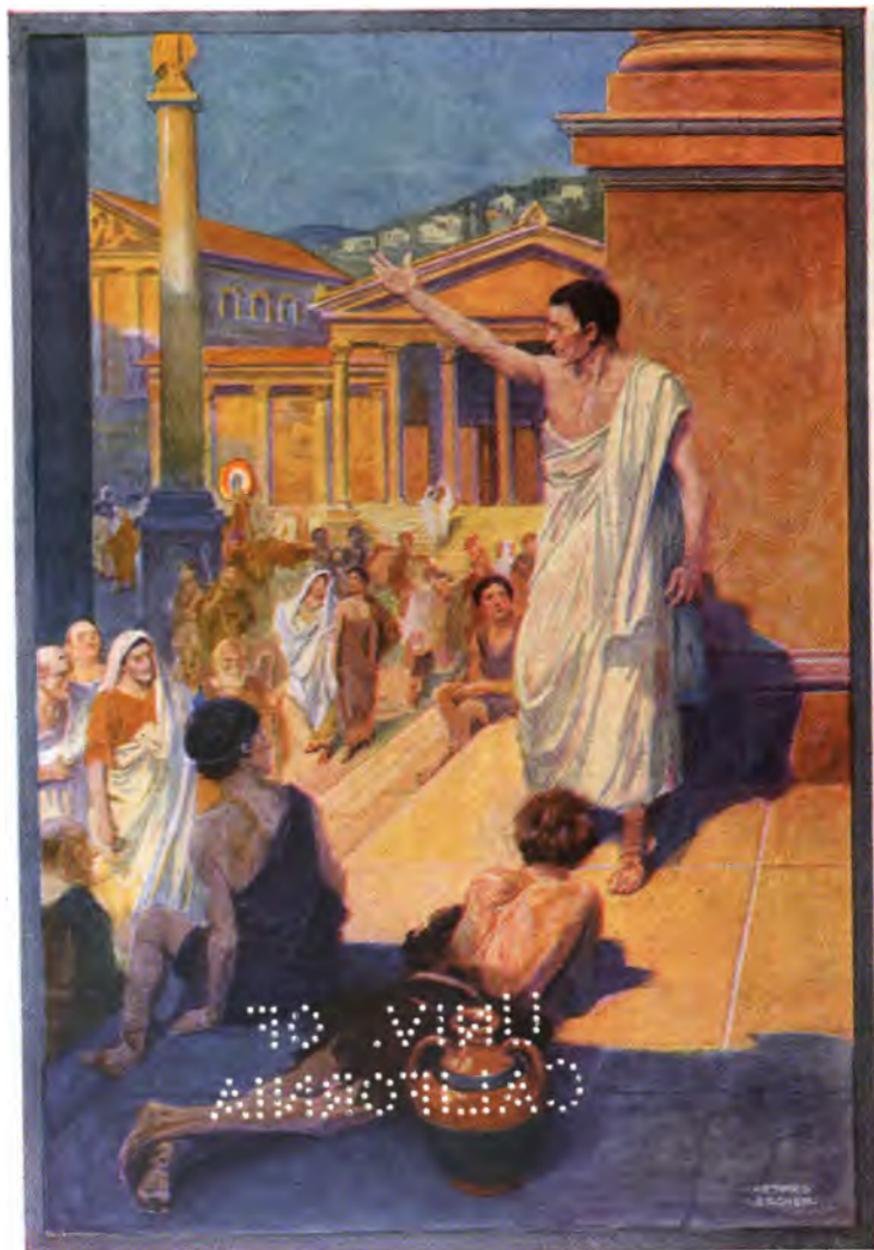












A ROMAN CITIZEN SPEAKS



COLLAR AND DANIELL'S
FIRST YEAR LATIN

REVISED BY
THORNTON JENKINS*
HEAD MASTER, HIGH SCHOOL, MALDEN, MASSACHUSETTS



GINN AND COMPANY
BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON
ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO



COPYRIGHT, 1901, BY WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL

COPYRIGHT, 1918, BY GINN AND COMPANY

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

318.4

Main Lib.

+

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

460
C 697
Fair
1918

PREFACE

The book that is placed in the hands of a pupil during his first year of the study of Latin should be simple and clear and interesting in its treatment of the language; it should teach with the utmost thoroughness those principles that it attempts to teach, but it should not attempt to teach to-day what may be taught more properly to-morrow; it should get the pupil into the reading of easy connected Latin as soon as possible, and for this purpose should supply a generous amount of material graded to his attainment; and it should never allow the pupil to leave the classroom without a reminder of the extent to which Latin is a part of his own language.

With these convictions the revision of Collar and Daniell's "First Year Latin" was undertaken. All these principles underlay the plan of "First Year Latin," but the unanimity with which they have been accepted since the publication of that text has made it possible in the revision so to extend their application as to produce what is in effect a new book.

The vocabulary has been made briefer and more Cæsarian. From the vocabularies of the lessons the pupil is asked to learn the meanings of some five hundred and seventy words. About ninety per cent of these words are included in the list of one thousand words which Professor Lodge¹ suggests should be learned before the end of the second year of the study of Latin. Over sixty per cent occur more than ten times in Cæsar. In the Selections for Reading the pupil has a chance to become acquainted casually with a wider vocabulary.

¹ Vocabulary of High School Latin.

A number of constructions which were taught in the original book have been omitted. With three exceptions the constructions included in the revision are those which Byrne¹ recommends for the first year. Similarly, the pupil is no longer required to learn uncommon forms which are not necessary for his second-year reading.

Increased attention has been given to derivatives. Related English words are often placed after the Latin words in the vocabularies of the lessons as well as in the general vocabulary. Everywhere in the reviews this important part of the study of Latin is kept constantly before the pupil. Suggestions are offered for the keeping of notebooks of English derivatives. The force of certain common prefixes and suffixes in the formation and meaning of Latin words is also explained.

Interspersed throughout the book there are ten Review Lessons, which take up the words and constructions previously taught. The machinery for drill has been further strengthened by a summary of the uses of nouns and of verbs, and by review questions touching upon the syntax, forms, derivatives, and principles of each lesson. These questions have been placed after the Selections for Reading, that they may be somewhat removed from the lessons they concern.

The treatment of the Essentials of Grammar has been made more useful by a comparison of English grammar with Latin grammar, and by the inclusion of Latin equivalents for the English illustrative words and phrases.

The material for reading has been somewhat changed, particularly by the omission of the Fables and Stories, and by the introduction of the Story of Perseus, of the simplified narrative of Cæsar's Campaign against the Helvetians, and of a number of pages from Eutropius. In all the selections the

¹ The Syntax of High School Latin.

syntax has been made to conform with that taught in the lessons, so that the pupil may not be bothered or discouraged by unfamiliar constructions.

As an aid to the pupil's pronunciation, a mark of accent has been placed on the words in the vocabularies of the first eighteen lessons, and on declensions and conjugations, both in the text and in the Appendix.

Teachers who are familiar with "First Year Latin" will find that none of its well-known excellences have been sacrificed in the revision. There are, for example, the same short lessons, usually less than two pages in length. In the exercises the sentences for translation remain simple. Nowhere are many constructions brought within the limits of a single sentence. The exercises for translation from English into Latin are relatively shorter than those from Latin into English. The order in which the verb is developed and in which the various constructions are presented will be found the same, with a few exceptions. In the study of syntax the pupil is still led from the observation of model sentences to the deduction of usages and principles. Passages of connected Latin are introduced early and are of frequent occurrence throughout the lessons, and there is ample material for reading after the lessons have been completed. The content of the book is still such that it is possible for high-school classes to go through the lessons within thirty weeks.

The "Teacher's Manual," in addition to general directions and notes on each lesson, contains carefully graded sentences for sight reading and for the practice of the "direct method," as well as material for drill on English derivatives of the Latin words of the vocabularies.

It is hoped that teachers will find the numerous illustrations a help to them in familiarizing pupils with the life of the

Romans. The four plates in colors were made especially for this book by Mr. Arthur E. Becher after a careful study of all the phases of Roman life that they represent. As for the other pictures, half tones have been used where the subject could be made more realistic if reproduced directly from a photograph. In cases where line engravings seemed more suitable, drawings in the style of the early Italian engravings were made for the purpose by Mr. Thomas M. Cleland, Mr. W. A. Dwiggins, and Mr. Adrian J. Iorio. As a whole the illustrations are believed to be of a quality unexcelled in schoolbooks.

The reviser wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to the suggestions received from Mr. Collar himself, who, before his death, had given considerable thought to the aim and scope of the revision. Indebtedness is also gratefully acknowledged to Professor Charles Knapp, of Barnard College, New York; to Mr. Herbert F. Hancox, of Lewis Institute, Chicago; and to Miss Grace I. Bridge and Miss Grace E. Jackson, of the Hyde Park High School, Chicago, for their helpful criticisms.

T. J.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR	1
TO THE BEGINNER IN LATIN: WHAT LATIN IS, AND WHY IT IS STUDIED. HOW TO STUDY LATIN	15
INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET, SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT	19
LESSON	
I. THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS. THE NOMINATIVE CASE USED AS SUBJECT	24
II. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE USED AS THE DIRECT OBJECT	26
III. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION	28
IV. THE GENITIVE CASE USED TO DENOTE POSSESSION	30
V. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION. CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH <i>Quod</i>	32
VI. THE DATIVE CASE USED AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT. THE ABLATIVE USED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES TO SHOW PLACE WHERE	34
VII. THE FIRST DECLENSION. GENDER	36
FIRST REVIEW LESSON	38
VIII. THE SECOND DECLENSION	40
IX. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	42
X. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF <i>Sum</i> . PREDICATE NOUN AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	44
XI. APPPOSITION. <i>Cornēlia et Iūlia</i>	46
XII. THE SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN <i>-er</i> , <i>-ir</i> , <i>-ius</i> , AND <i>-ium</i>	48
XIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS ENDING IN <i>-er</i> . <i>Dē Graeciā</i>	50

LESSON	PAGE
XIV. THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF Sum . THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	52
SECOND REVIEW LESSON	54
XV. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS	56
XVI. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER	58
XVII. PRINCIPAL PARTS. THE PERFECT STEM. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION. Dē Sabinis	60
XVIII. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, SECOND CONJUGATION. THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT	62
XIX. THE DEMONSTRATIVE Is . THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF Sum	64
XX. THE INTERROGATIVE Quis . Dē Deis Rōmānōrum	66
XXI. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AND PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION	68
THIRD REVIEW LESSON	70
XXII. READING LESSON. Dē Īcarō. Rōmānī prō Sociis pugnāt	72
XXIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION	74
XXIV. THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN -iō . THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH. THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH	76
XXV. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES EXPRESSING CAUSE	78
XXVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION: i -STEMS.	80
XXVII. THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS	82
XXVIII. READING LESSON. Horātius Pontem dēfendit. Dē Nātiōnibus Eurōpae	84
FOURTH REVIEW LESSON	86
XXIX. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	88
XXX. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. Conloquium	90
XXXI. THE ABLATIVE OF TIME. <i>Laconic Speeches</i>	92

CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XXXII. THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS	94
XXXIII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES Hic AND Ille . PLACE FROM WHICH AND TO WHICH, IN NAMES OF TOWNS .	96
XXXIV. READING LESSON. Victōria Caesaris. Dē Caesare et Britannīs	98
XXXV. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGA- TIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT	100
XXXVI. THE RELATIVE Qui	102
FIFTH REVIEW LESSON	104
XXXVII. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF Regō AND Capiō	106
XXXVIII. THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	108
XXXIX. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. Veturia, Māter Coriolānī. Dē Perseō	110
XL. THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION	112
XLI. THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. Iup- piter Perseum servat	114
XLII. THE FOURTH DECLENSION	116
XLIII. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	118
SIXTH REVIEW LESSON	120
XLIV. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -er OR -lis . THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE	122
XLV. READING LESSON. Scipiō et Hannibal. Perseus Medū- sam quaerit	124
XLVI. THE IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE	126
XLVII. THE FORMATION AND THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	128
XLVIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT	130

LESSON	PAGE
XLIX. READING LESSON. <i>A Letter from Pompeii. Perseus Medūsam interficit</i>	132
L. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH Ut AND Nē	134
LI. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. SEQUENCE OF TENSES	136
LII. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. RESULT CLAUSES. SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON	140
LIII. READING LESSON. Caesar Hostis vincit. Andromeda Fīlia Cēphēi	142
LIV. THE PERFECT AND THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	144
LV. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE	146
LVI. ADJECTIVES HAVING THE GENITIVE IN -ius . Mōnstrum appropinquat	148
LVII. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS COMPLEMENT	150
LVIII. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT. THE ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE. INDIRECT STATEMENTS	152
LIX. READING LESSON. Caesar in Conciliō dicit. Perseus Cēphēō Andromedam reddit	156
LX. THE DEMONSTRATIVES Īdem, Ipse, Iste . THE IRREGULAR VERB Possum	158
EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON	160
LXI. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. <i>The Nations of Gaul</i>	162
LXII. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. THE DATIVES OF PURPOSE AND REFERENCE	164
LXIII. THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS. THE IRREGULAR VERBS Volō, Nōlō, Mālō	166
LXIV. READING LESSON. <i>Belling the Cat. Nasica and Ennius. Orgetorix and the Helvetians</i>	168
LXV. PARTICIPLES	170
LXVI. READING LESSON. Dicta Antiquōrum. Orgetorix and the Helvetians (CONTINUED)	173
LXVII. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	175

CONTENTS

xi

LESSON	PAGE
LXVIII. THE GERUND. THE IRREGULAR VERB Eŏ	178
NINTH REVIEW LESSON	180
LXIX. THE GERUNDIVE. THE IRREGULAR VERB Ferŏ	182
LXX. READING LESSON. <i>The Helvetians leave their Territory</i>	184
LXXI. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. DEPONENT VERBS .	186
LXXII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH Cum . THE IRREGULAR VERB Fŏ	188
LXXIII. READING LESSON. <i>Cæsar refuses the Helvetians Per- mission to go through the Roman Province</i>	190
LXXIV. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT INTRODUCED BY Quod . THE INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES	192
LXXV. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS	194
TENTH REVIEW LESSON	196
SUMMARY: THE USES OF NOUNS AND VERBS	198

SELECTIONS FOR READING:

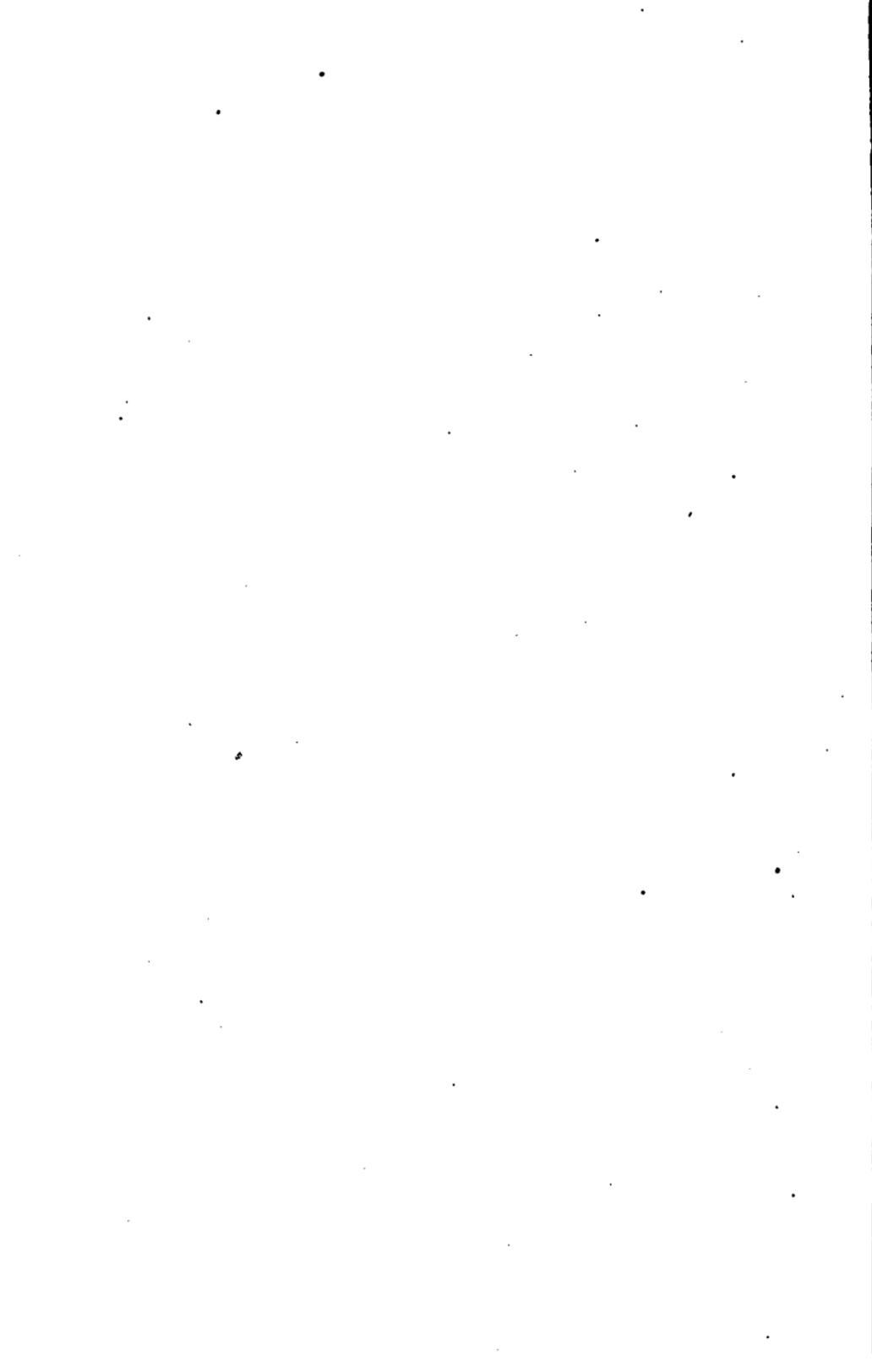
Cæsar: The Campaign against the Helvetians	201
Cæsar: The Story of the Aduatuci	206
Stories of Hercules	208
Stories of Ulysses	213
Eutropius: History of Rome	218
Stories from Roman History	223
REVIEW QUESTIONS	227

APPENDIX I:

Rules of Syntax	245
Formation of Latin Words	249
English Derivatives	251

APPENDIX II:

Declensions and Conjugations	253
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	287
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	331
INDEX	341



FIRST YEAR LATIN

ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

NOUNS

I. *a.* A *noun* is the name of a person, place, or thing: *boy, London, ship; puer, Londinium, nāvis.*

b. A *proper noun* is the name of a particular person, place, or thing: *Cornelia, Rome, Rhone; Cornēlia, Rōma, Rhodanus.*

c. A *common noun* is a name that may be applied to any one of a class of objects: *boy, city, day; puer, urbs, diēs.*

d. A *collective noun* is a name that may be applied to a group of objects, though itself in the singular number (XXIII): *crowd, family; multitudō, gēns.*

e. A *verbal noun* is the name of an action: *seeing, writing, to see, to write; videndi (459), scribendi, vidēre, scribere.*

f. An *abstract noun* is the name of a quality or condition: *goodness, truth, poverty; bonitās, vērītās, paupertās.*

PRONOUNS

II. *a.* A *pronoun* is a word used to take the place of a noun or of another pronoun: *I, you, him, this, who; ego, tū, eum, hoc, qui.*

b. The noun (or pronoun) for which a pronoun stands is called its *antecedent* (from *antecēdere, to go before*). Thus, in the sentence *John goes to school, but he does not study*, the

noun *John* is the antecedent of *he*. The antecedent is especially common with a relative pronoun (II, *d*). Neither in Latin nor in English does the antecedent necessarily stand in advance of its pronoun: *What he says, he believes, quod dicit, id crēdit.*

c. A *personal pronoun* shows by its form whether it stands (1) for the speaker: *I, we*; *ego, nōs*, that is, the *first person*; (2) for the person spoken to: *thou, you*; *tū, vōs*, that is, the *second person*; or (3) for the person or thing spoken of: *he, she, it, they*; *is, ea, id, eī*, that is, the *third person*.

d. A *relative pronoun* connects a subordinate clause, in which it stands, with the antecedent: *The book that you have is mine, liber quem habēs meus est.* The relative pronouns in English are *who, which, that, and as*; in Latin the relative is *quī*.

e. An *interrogative pronoun* is used to ask a question: *Who is walking in the garden? Quis in hortō ambulat?* The interrogative pronouns in English are *who, which, and what*; in Latin, *quis* and *uter*.

f. A *demonstrative pronoun* points out an object definitely: *this, that, these, those*; *hic, ille, hī, illī*.

g. An *indefinite pronoun* refers to an object indefinitely: *some, some one, any, any one*; *aliquis, quis*.

h. A *reflexive pronoun* refers back to the subject: *He blamed himself, sē culpāvit.*

ADJECTIVES

III. *a.* An *adjective* is a word used to qualify or limit a noun or a pronoun: *good book, beautiful moon, five girls*; *liber bonus, lūna pulchra, quīnque puellae.*

b. *A, an, and the*, really limiting adjectives, are sometimes called *articles*. *The* is the *definite article*, *a* or *an* the *indefinite article*. These articles are not used in Latin.

c. Numeral adjectives denote how many persons or things are under consideration. They are either *cardinal*, denoting how many: *one, two, three, four*; *ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor*; or *ordinal*, denoting which in order: *first, second, third, fourth*; *primus, secundus, tertius, quārtus*.

d. Possessive adjectives denote ownership: *my friend, our house*; *meus amicus, nostra domus*. Possessive adjectives are frequently used as possessive pronouns.

e. The demonstrative pronouns, the indefinite pronouns, and the interrogative pronouns which and what may be used as adjectives, and are then called respectively *demonstrative adjectives*: *this book, that house*; *hic liber, illa domus*; *indefinite adjectives*: *some boys, aliqui pueri*; and *interrogative adjectives*: *Which way shall we go? Quā viā ibimus?*

f. Adjectives are often used as nouns: "*The land of the free,*" *patria liberōrum*.

VERBS

IV. *a. A verb* is a word which can declare or assert something about a person, a place, or a thing: *The man laughs, vir ridet*; *the town is captured, oppidum captum est*; *the leaf falls, folium cadit*.

b. A verb which has an object (XIV, *a*) to complete its meaning is said to be *transitive*, or to be *used transitively*: *The girl has a rose, puella rosam habet*.

c. A verb which does not have an object (XIV, *a*) to complete its meaning is said to be *intransitive*, or to be *used intransitively*: *Birds fly, avēs volant*; *I walk, ambulō*.

NOTE. Thus certain verbs may at one time be transitive and at another intransitive: *The wind blew the snow into our faces; the wind blew furiously*.

d. Verbs are classified as *regular* or *irregular*. This distinction is made merely for convenience. A *regular verb* in English forms its imperfect (past) tense (xxxiii, *a*) and past participle (xxxiv, *b*) by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present: present, *love*; past, *loved*; past participle, *loved*. For Latin regular verbs see 658–662.

e. An *irregular verb* in English does not form its imperfect (past) tense by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present: present, *give*; past, *gave*; past participle, *given*. For Latin irregular verbs see 663–668.

f. An *auxiliary verb* is used in the conjugation of other verbs: *I am loved, he has given*. In Latin the verb *esse, to be* (663), is so used: *missus est, he has been sent*.

ADVERBS

V. *a.* An *adverb* is used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: *He walks swiftly, celeriter ambulat*.

b. An *adverb* of *place* answers the question *where?* — *here, there, hence*; *hic, illic, hinc*.

c. An *adverb* of *time* answers the question *when?* — *then, now, often*; *tum, nunc, saepe*.

d. An *adverb* of *manner* answers the question *how?* — *so, well, ill*; *sic, bene, male*.

e. An *adverb* of *degree* answers the question *how much?* — *little, almost, enough*; *paulo, paene, satis*.

f. A *modal adverb* expresses affirmation or negation, or the degree of confidence with which a statement is made: *yes, no, certainly, perhaps*; *certe, forsitan*.

PREPOSITIONS

VI. A preposition is used before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. Usually the relation shown is position, direction, or time: *He sent a legion against the enemy, in hostēs legiōnem mīsit.* In Latin certain phrases which would be introduced in English by a preposition are expressed by the use of one of the cases (XXIV, *b*) without a preposition: *At dawn he sent a legion, primā lūce legiōnem mīsit.*

CONJUNCTIONS

VII. *a.* A *conjunction* connects words, phrases (xvi), clauses (xx), and sentences (xviii): *boys and girls, pueri et puellae; they fought bravely but were conquered, fortiter pugnāvērunt sed victi sunt.*

b. A *coördinate conjunction* connects words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of equal order or rank. The conjunctions in the examples in VII, *a* are coördinate.

c. A *subordinate conjunction* connects a subordinate clause (xx, *a*) with a principal clause (xx, *a*): *The boy was praised because he was industrious, puer laudātus est quod impiger erat.*

INTERJECTIONS

VIII. An *interjection* is used to express strong feeling. It is not grammatically related to any other word in the sentence: *oh! ah! alas! hurrah! ēheu! ecce!*

NOTE. The following couplets have often proved useful to young persons in identifying the parts of speech:

Three little words we often see
Are Articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*.

A Noun 's the name of anything;
As *school* or *garden*, *hoop* or *swing*.

Adjectives tell the kind of noun ;
As *great, small, pretty, white, or brown.*

Instead of nouns the Pronouns stand ;
I come, you go, as they command.

Verbs tell of something being done ;
As *read, write, spell, sing, jump, or run.*

How things are done the Adverbs tell ;
As *slowly, quickly, ill, or well.*

They also tell us where and when ;
As *here and there and now and then.*

A Preposition stands before
A noun ; as *in or through* a door.

Conjunctions join the words together ;
As rain *and* sunshine, wind *or* weather.

Conjunctions sentences unite ;
As kittens scratch *and* puppies bite.

An Interjection shows surprise ;
As *Oh!* how pretty! *Ah!* how wise!

THE SENTENCE

IX. A *sentence* is a word or a group of words expressing a thought : *Stars shine ; he walks ; stellae lūcent ; ambulat.*

X. a. A *declarative sentence* declares or asserts something :
The farmers are plowing the fields, agricolae agrōs arant.

b. An *interrogative sentence* asks a question : *Why are the farmers plowing the fields? Cūr agricolae agrōs arant?*

c. An *imperative sentence* expresses a command, a request, or an entreaty : *Plow the fields to-day, hodiē agrōs arāte.*

d. An *exclamatory sentence* expresses strong feeling or emotion : *Would that he had remained! Utinam mānsisset!*

XI. *a.* A sentence is made up of two parts, one called the *subject* and the other the *predicate*.

b. The *subject* represents the person, place, or thing about which something is declared or asserted: *Birds sing, avēs cantant.*

c. The *predicate* declares or asserts something about the person, place, or thing which the subject represents: *Birds sing, avēs cantant.*

NOTE. In English and in Latin either the subject or the predicate, or both, may be enlarged to any extent by the addition of qualifying words and expressions called modifiers: *My sister's small birds | sing sweetly in the morning.*

XII. The *simple subject* is the noun or pronoun which signifies the person, place, or thing about which the assertion is made. The *simple predicate* is the verb that makes the assertion. *Birds* is the simple subject, and *sing* the simple predicate, in the note under XI, *c.*

XIII. The *complete subject* is the simple subject with all its modifiers. The *complete predicate* is the simple predicate with all its modifiers. Thus, in the example in the note under XI, *c* the complete subject is all that precedes the vertical line, and the complete predicate all that follows it.

XIV. *a.* The *object* of a verb is a word or an expression that completes the meaning of the verb, and signifies that which is affected by the action: *He sent messengers, nūntiōs misit; he wished me to go to Italy, mē in Italiam ire voluit.*

b. The *direct object* represents that which is immediately affected by the action of the verb; the *indirect object* that to or for which the action is performed. Thus, in *He gave me a book, mihi librum dedit*, *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect.

XV. *a.* A *predicate noun* or a *predicate adjective* is used after certain intransitive or passive verbs to complete their meaning, and to describe or define the subject: *Marcus is a sailor; the sailor is brave; Mārcus nauta est; nauta fortis est.*

b. The predicate noun or adjective is called the *complement* of the verb. Intransitive verbs that require a complement are called *copulative verbs*. The verb *be* (Latin *esse*) in its various forms (*am, was, has been, etc.*) is often called the *copula*.

c. The predicate noun or adjective has the same case as the subject; hence the term *predicate nominative*.

XVI. *a.* A *phrase* is a combination of words (not subject and predicate) used as a single part of speech.

b. An *adjective phrase* modifies a noun: *A man of great valor, vir magnae virtūtis.*

c. An *adverbial phrase* modifies a verb: *They work with great diligence, magnā cum diligentia laborant.* In Latin certain cases of nouns are used to express what in English would be prepositional phrases of an adverbial nature (VI).

XVII. A *simple sentence* contains but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *Cæsar drew up a line of battle, Caesar aciem instruxit.*

XVIII. A *compound sentence* contains two or more independent statements: *Cæsar drew up a line of battle, but the enemy fled, Caesar aciem instruxit, sed hostes fugerunt.*

NOTE. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend on (qualify or limit) another statement.

XIX. A *complex sentence* contains one independent (principal) statement and one or more dependent (subordinate)

statements: *When the messenger had replied, the lieutenant spoke as follows, cum nūntius respondiſſet, lēgātus haec dixit.*

NOTE. A dependent, or subordinate, statement is one that qualifies or limits another in some way; thus, the dependent statement *when the messenger had replied* limits the verb *spoke*, telling when the lieutenant spoke.

XX. *a.* The separate statements in a compound or a complex sentence are called *clauses*, and, as has already been seen, they may be either *independent (principal)* or *dependent (subordinate)*.

b. When dependent (subordinate) clauses modify nouns or pronouns they are called *adjective clauses*: *The girls whom we praised were good, puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant.*

c. When dependent (subordinate) clauses modify verbs they are called *adverbial clauses*: *When the messenger had replied, the lieutenant spoke as follows, cum nūntius respondiſſet, lēgātus haec dixit.*

d. When dependent (subordinate) clauses are used as nouns they are called *substantive clauses*: *That you are here pleases us, quod ades nōs dēlectat.*

e. Dependent (subordinate) clauses introduced by *when* (Latin *cum*, *ubi*, etc.) are called *temporal clauses*; introduced by *because* (Latin *quod* etc.), they are called *causal clauses*; introduced by *if* (Latin *sī*), they are called *conditional clauses*; introduced by *although* (Latin *cum*, *etsī*, etc.), they are called *concessive clauses*; introduced by a relative pronoun (Latin *quī*), they are called *relative clauses*.

f. The independent clause of a complex sentence is called the *principal clause*. Connected clauses that are of the same rank, both independent or both dependent, are said to be *coördinate*.

INFLECTION

XXI. *Inflection* is a change in the form of a word to indicate a change in its meaning or use: *man, men, boy, boy's, love, loved; vir, viri, puer, pueri, amant, amabant.*

DECLENSION

XXII. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called its *declension*. Nouns and pronouns in English are declined to show number and case, and a few nouns to show gender. In Latin the nouns and pronouns are declined; adjectives also are declined in gender, number, and case to agree with the nouns which they modify.

Number

XXIII. A noun or pronoun is in the *singular number* when it means one person, place, or thing: *town, city, I; oppidum, urbs, ego*; in the *plural number* when it means more than one person, place, or thing: *towns, cities, we; oppida, urbēs, nōs.*

Case

XXIV. *a.* The several forms taken by words that are declined are called *cases*. In English there are the following cases, to indicate the uses of nouns and pronouns:

1. The *nominative*, primarily used as the subject of a sentence: *He throws the ball.*

2. The *possessive* (genitive), used to denote possession or ownership: *John throws his ball; see the queen's crown.*

3. The *objective* (accusative), used as the object of a transitive verb or of a preposition: *John throws the ball to him.*

4. The *dative*, used to express the indirect object of the verb: *John throws him the ball.* Only personal pronouns and the pronoun *who* have separate forms for these cases in English.

Nouns have the nominative, objective, and dative alike, with a separate form for the possessive.

b. In Latin there are seven cases: *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, vocative, and locative*; but a single form sometimes does duty for several cases (cf. *agricola*, 63). The nominative, genitive, and accusative cases are used much like the same cases in English. The dative expresses in general that relation of words to other words which is expressed in English by prepositional phrases beginning with *to* or *for*: *to the farmer, for the man*. The ablative expresses in general that relation of words to other words which is expressed in English by prepositional phrases beginning with *from, with, by, in*: *with a spear, by a story*.

c. The direct object of a verb in Latin is in the accusative case, but sometimes the direct object in English is expressed in Latin by the dative (425, 433).

Gender

XXV. *a.* The gender of English nouns is what is called *natural gender*, and hence has very little to do with grammar. Thus, a noun denoting a male is in the *masculine gender*: *man, boy, father*; a noun denoting a female is in the *feminine gender*: *woman, girl, mother*; one denoting either male or female is in the *common gender*: *cat, dog, parent*; one denoting a sexless object is in the *neuter gender*: *river, wind, mountain*.

b. In Latin only nouns that denote persons and some animals have natural gender: *nauta, sailor* (masc.); *māter, mother* (fem.). All others have an arbitrary gender, called *grammatical gender*, determined chiefly by the ending: *flūmen, river* (neut.); *ventus, wind* (masc.); *nūbēs, cloud* (fem.).

COMPARISON

XXVI. *a.* English adjectives and adverbs are inflected to show degree. This is called *comparison*. There are three degrees of comparison, the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*: positive *wise*, comparative *wiser*, superlative *wisest*; positive *good*, comparative *better*, superlative *best*; positive *often*, comparative *oftener*, superlative *oftenest*.

b. Adjectives and adverbs are also compared in English by prefixing the adverbs *more* and *most*: *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

c. Comparison in Latin is indicated exactly as in English: *sapiēns*, *sapientior*, *sapientissimus*; *bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*; *idōneus*, *magis idōneus*, *maximē idōneus*; *saepe*, *saepius*, *saepissimē*.

CONJUGATION

XXVII. *a.* The inflection of a verb is called *conjugation*. Verbs are conjugated to show voice, mood, and tense, and the number and person of the subject.

b. The English verb has but few changes of form. Thus the verb *love* has in common use only the forms *love*, *loves*, *loving*, and *loved*. Most of the conjugation of the verb is made up of verb phrases formed by the use of auxiliaries (IV, *f*): *I am loved*, *I shall love*, *I shall have been loved*, etc.

c. The Latin verb has many changes in form to show voice, mood, tense, number, and person: *amor*, *I am loved*; *amābō*, *I shall love*; *amātus erō*, *I shall have been loved*.

Voice

XXVIII. A verb is in the *active voice* when it represents the subject as acting (or being): *The man praised the boy*, *vir puerum laudāvit*. A verb is in the *passive voice* when it represents the subject as acted on.: *The boy was praised by the man*, *puer ā virō laudātus est*.

Mood

XXIX. A verb is in the *indicative mood* when it is used in stating a fact or in asking a question: *The citizens are assembling, cives conveniunt; why do they carry arms? cur arma portant?*

XXX. *a.* In English a verb is in the *subjunctive mood* when it asserts something doubtfully or conditionally. It is used in subordinate clauses, and is usually introduced by *if, though, and the like*: *If he were here, I should be glad; "Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him."*

NOTE. The subjunctive is very little used in modern English, its place being taken by the indicative.

b. In Latin the subjunctive has a great variety of uses, in independent as well as in dependent clauses (344, 358, 373, etc.).

XXXI. *a.* A verb is in the *imperative mood* when it expresses command, request, or entreaty: *Fortify the city, urbem munit.*

b. Unless emphatic the subject of the imperative (*thou or you*) is not expressed either in English or in Latin.

The Infinitive

XXXII. *a.* The *infinitive* in English (*to love, to have loved, etc.*) is a verbal noun. It has neither person nor number. Like a noun it may be the subject or the object or the complement of a verb: *To see is to believe; he wishes to go home.* Like a verb it may have a subject, an object, and adverbial modifiers: *We wish you to begin your work early.*

b. The Latin infinitive is used in the same way that the English infinitive is used. It differs, however, from the English infinitive in not being used in prose in expressions of purpose (*They came to see me*), and in being used constantly for the verb of a statement that is given indirectly: *He said that he would come, dixit se venturum esse.*

c. The verbal noun in *-ing* is sometimes called an infinitive : *Seeing is believing = to see is to believe*. This verbal noun has its counterpart in the Latin gerund (459).

Tense

XXXIII. a. A verb is in the *present, past (imperfect), or future* tense according as it represents an action as taking place in present, past, or future time : *I love, I loved (was loving), I shall love* ; *amō, amābam, amābō*.

b. The *present perfect (perfect)* tense represents an action completed in the present : *I have loved, amāvī* ; the *past perfect (pluperfect)* an action completed in the past before some other past action or state : *I had loved, amāveram* ; and the *future perfect* an action completed in the future before some other future action or state : *I shall have loved, amāverō*.

The Participle

XXXIV. a. The *participle* is a verbal adjective. Like an adjective it may qualify a noun : *struggling soldiers, militēs labōrantēs*. Like a verb it may have an object and adverbial modifiers : *Fearing danger they remained in the camp, periculum veritī in castris mānsērunt*.

b. There are in English three participles in the active voice : present, *loving* ; past, *loved* ; perfect, *having loved* ; and three in the passive voice : present, *(being) loved* ; past, *loved* ; perfect, *having been loved*. In Latin the past and perfect active and the present passive participles are wanting, but there is a future participle.

c. The participle in *-ing* is used with the auxiliary *be* to make the progressive form of the verb : *you are loving, he was loving, they will be loving*. Latin has no special tenses for the progressive forms.

TO THE BEGINNER IN LATIN

What Latin is. Latin is the language that was used by the ancient Romans. It gets its name from the *Lati'ni*, a little tribe living in western Italy more than twenty-five hundred years ago. The Latini, and their successors, the Romans, slowly extended their lands and their power until they gained control of all Italy, and finally of all the civilized world of those days. Their dominions reached from the Atlantic Ocean to Persia and from the Baltic Sea to the deserts of Africa, and their language was spoken wherever they ruled. For about six hundred years the Romans were the most powerful nation on the earth. Their history covers in all a period of twelve centuries; no nation has had a longer history.

Why Latin is studied. And now why is it that it is worth your while to study a language that is so many centuries old?

First, a knowledge of Latin helps you to use English more correctly. As more than half the words in the English language are of Latin origin, you yourself in a sense speak Latin to-day. There are the words of your everyday talk, like *animal*; there are the learned words, like *emancipate*; there are the terms of law, of medicine, and of the sciences, like *mandamus*, *delirium*, and *antennae*; and there are the words which are newly come into use, like *tractor*. If you study Latin, you will be helped to know the meaning of many of these words, how to spell them, and how to use them correctly; all of which is quite worth your while, particularly if you are intending to enter one of the professions.

Again, the study of Latin will train your mind. Latin is somewhat unlike English in the form of its words and much

unlike English in the order of the words in its sentences. You will therefore be obliged to look carefully, and to think carefully, and to speak carefully whenever you try to read and to translate anything written in Latin. But this close attention will do good to your mind: it will train your powers of observation, of clear thinking, and of clear expression; in fact, no other subject that you study in school can do as much for you as can Latin toward developing these desirable powers.

Furthermore, the reading of Latin will add to your information. If you are to be a well-informed person, you will need to know something about Rome and the Romans, and what they have meant in the history of the world; and in no other way can you better come to know and to appreciate the literature, the life, the customs, and the civilization of the Romans than by the faithful study of their language and of the things written in that language.

How to study Latin. 1. Never allow yourself to think that Latin is not worth your best efforts or that it is too hard for you. Industry and confidence will bring you success in this study.

2. Have a fixed hour each day for the study of your Latin. If possible, prepare your lesson for to-morrow immediately after reciting the lesson of to-day. Your interest will then be greater and your mind better fitted to grasp the subject.

3. Learn each day's lesson with thoroughness. Neglect no part of the lesson even if it seems to you unimportant.

4. Before beginning a new lesson recall what you have already learned about the subject to be taught in the new lesson. For example, if you are about to study a new use of one of the cases, recall all the uses of that case which you have previously learned.

5. Review the vocabularies regularly. A knowledge of the meanings of the words will be a great saving of time to you, as well as a constant encouragement. Aim to know every word

you have met, and to this end keep lists of words about the meaning of which you are doubtful.

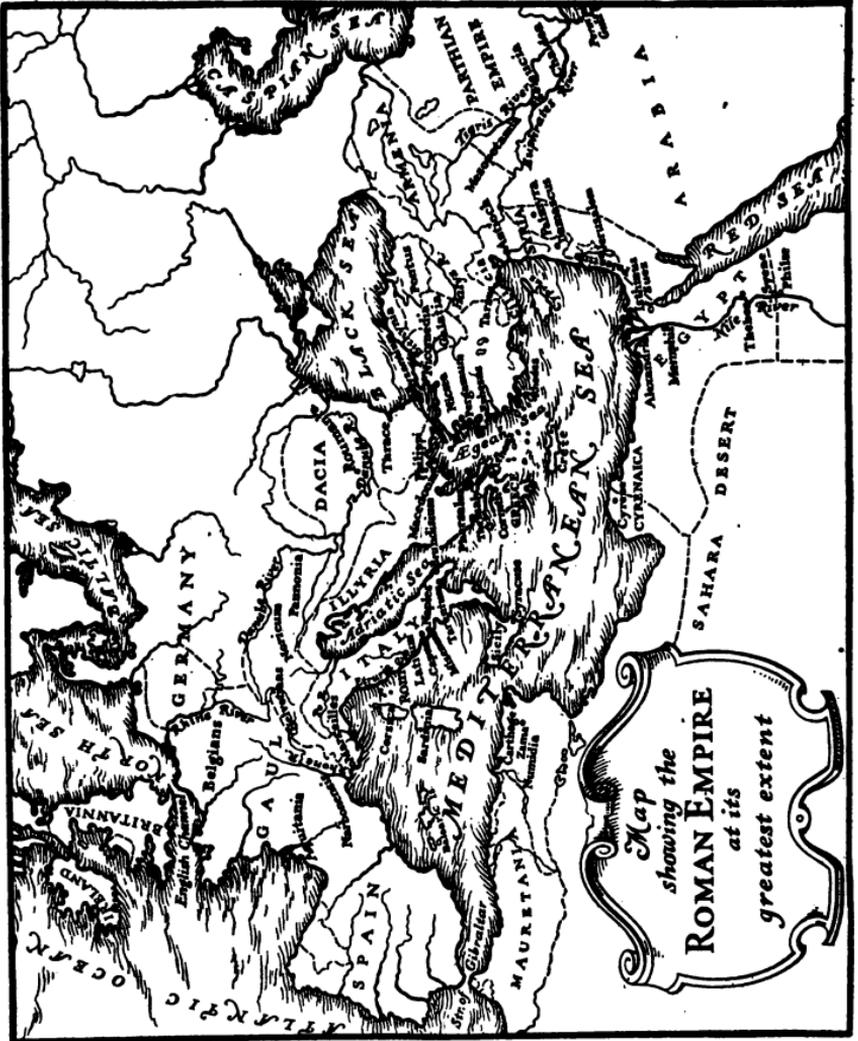
6. Recite the declensions and the conjugations by yourself aloud. It will help you to remember them, and you will make better recitations. Read the Latin sentences aloud each day.

7. Go over the new lesson slowly, and thus avoid mistakes in the spelling of words, in their endings, and in the explanation of Latin constructions.

8. Recall your English grammar when you are learning Latin constructions; most of the Latin usages that you will learn in your first year are like English usages.

9. Study the lessons as a whole. Then go back to special difficulties. Go over the lesson again just before the recitation and consider the troublesome parts.





INTRODUCTION

ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

2. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**. The other letters are consonants.

3. The letter **i** is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant and is called *i-consonant*. Thus in **iaciō**, *I throw*, the first **i** is a consonant, and the second a vowel.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS¹

4. The vowels are either long or short. In this book the long vowels are marked (-); unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short. The vowels are sounded as follows :

ā like the last *a* in *aha'*

ē like *e* in *they*

ī like *i* in *machine*

ō like *o* in *note*

ū like *oo* in *boot*

ǣ like the first *a* in *aha'*

ĕ like *e* in *met*

ĭ like *i* in *pin*

ŏ like *o* in *obey*

ŭ like *oo* in *foot*

5. The diphthongs are sounded as follows :

ae like *ai* in *aisle*

au like *ou* in *our*

ei like *ei* in *eight*

eu like *eu* in *feud*

oe like *oi* in *boil*

ui like *we*

¹ Latin is pronounced to-day substantially as it was pronounced by the Romans at the beginning of the Christian era.

6. The consonants generally have the same sound as the corresponding consonants in English. But there are the following exceptions :

c is like *c* in *come*

g is like *g* in *get*

i-consonant is like *y* in *yet*

s is like *s* in *sun*

t is like *t* in *time*

v is like *w* in *wine*

x is like *x* in *extra*

bs and **bt** are like *ps* and *pt*

ch is like *k* in *kite*

gu, **qu**, and sometimes **su** before a vowel are like *gw*, *qw*, and *sw* (*u* is not counted as a vowel)

ph is like *p*

th is like *t*

When a consonant is doubled (as **ll**), it should be pronounced twice.

EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

7. 1. *sum*, *tum*. 2. *cum*, *dum*. 3. *ad*, *id*. 4. *in*, *an*. 5. *at*, *et*, *ut*. 6. *hic*, *hīc*, *hāc*. 7. *hōc*, *hūc*. 8. *hoc*, *num*. 9. *is*, *bis*, *īs*. 10. *dīc*, *dūc*. 11. *fac*, *fer*. 12. *aut*, *hae*. 13. *ē*, *ā*, *ī*. 14. *ex*, *ab*, *ob*. 15. *dō*, *dā*, *dē*. 16. *pāx*, *dux*. 17. *nox*, *vōx*. 18. *pars*, *sōl*. 19. *trēs*, *mōs*. 20. *quō*, *quā*. 21. *iūs*, *quī*. 22. *quae*, *quīn*. 23. *quis*, *sē*. 24. *mē*, *tē*. 25. *gēns*, *sīc*. 26. *vel*, *vir*, *iam*.

SYLLABLES

8. A syllable consists of a vowel or a diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs : *ō-ce'-a-nus*, *ocean*.

9. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels is joined with the vowel following : *lā-ti-tū'-dō*, *width*.

10. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, the first is pronounced with the preceding vowel : *im-mor-tā'-lis*, *immortal*.

But a consonant followed by *l* or *r* is pronounced with the *l* or *r*, except in *ll* and *rr*: **pŭ'-bli-cus**, *public*; when *ll* or *rr* occurs, one *l* or one *r* is joined to the preceding syllable, and the other to the following syllable: **ter'-ra**, *land*.

Compound words are divided in such a way as to show the component parts: **ab'-est** (*ab*, *away*, + *est*, *he is*), *he is away*.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

12. A vowel is generally short before another vowel or *h*: **pō'-ē'-ma**, *poem*; **nī'-hil**, *nothing*.

13. A vowel is generally short before *nt* or *nd*, and before final *m* or final *t*: **vō'-cānt**, *they call*; **vo-cā'-bām**, *I was calling*.

14. A vowel is long before *nf* or *ns*: **a'-māns**, *loving*.

15. A vowel resulting from the contraction of two vowels is long: **cō'-gō** (*co-agō*), *I bring together*.

16. The quantity of vowels other than those mentioned in the preceding sections must be learned by observation.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

17. A syllable is *long by nature* when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **vic-tō'-ri-a**, *victory*; **prae'-mi-um**, *reward*.

18. A syllable is *short by nature* when it does not contain a long vowel or a diphthong: **o-pi'-ni-ō**, *opinion*.

19. A syllable is *long by position* when it has a short vowel followed by *x* or *z*, or by two or more consonants, unless these two consonants are **p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c**, **g**, followed by *l* or *r*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: **dē-tri-men'-tum**, *loss*.

ACCENT

20. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first syllable: *pa'-ter*, *father*.

21. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *dē-mōn-strā'-re*, *to point out*; *ce-le'-ri-tās*, *swiftness*; *ē-ven'-tus*, *outcome* (cf. 19).

22. Several words, of which the commonest are *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*, are appended to other words. The words so appended are known as enclitics. The words to which they are appended are accented on the syllable preceding the enclitic, whether that syllable is long or short: *a-mat'-ne?* *does he love?* *ar-mā'-que*, *and arms*.

EXERCISE IN ACCENT AND PRONUNCIATION

23. Divide the following words into syllables, state the rule for the accent, and then pronounce:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>dividunt, appellāre</i> | 6. <i>causīs, praecēdō</i> |
| 2. <i>īnstitūtis, differēbāmus</i> | 7. <i>finis, prohibitus</i> |
| 3. <i>hūmānitāte, prōvinciā</i> | 8. <i>initiō, persuāserāmus</i> |
| 4. <i>longus, animōs</i> | 9. <i>tempora, magistrātuum</i> |
| 5. <i>importābunt, bellum</i> | 10. <i>frāternus, conloquium</i> |

24. The following Latin version of "Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star" may be used for practice in pronunciation, and for illustration of the preceding statements about syllables, accent, etc.:

MICĀ, MICĀ

Micā, micā, parva stella!
 Mīror quaenam sis, tam bella!
 Splendēns ēminus in illō,
 Alba velut gemma, caelō.

Quandō fervēns Sōl discessit,
 Nec calōre prāta pāscit,
 Mox ostendis lūmen pūrum,
 Micāns, micāns per obscūrum.

Tibi noctū qui vagātur
 Ob scintillulam grātātur ;
 Nī micārēs tū, nōn sciret
 Quās per viās errāns iret.

Meum saepe thalamum lūce
 Speculāris cūriōsā ;
 Neque carpservis sopōrem
 Dōnec vēnit Sōl per auram.



THE ARCH OF TITUS, SHOWING A ROMAN INSCRIPTION

LESSON I

THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS THE NOMINATIVE CASE USED AS SUBJECT

25. The Singular and Plural of Nouns and Verbs.

NOUN	VERB
<i>Nom. Sing.</i> agricola, farmer	<i>3d Pers. Sing.</i> labōrat, works, is working, does work
<i>Nom. Plur.</i> agricolae, farmers	<i>3d Pers. Plur.</i> labōrant, work, are working, do work

a. Observe that the distinction between the singular and the plural is shown by the final letters of the noun and of the verb. These final letters of a noun are called *case endings*; the final letters of a verb are called *personal endings*.

b. Form the nominative plural of the nouns in the vocabulary, and the third person plural of the verbs.

26.

VOCABULARY

agri'cola, farmer (<i>agriculture</i>)	appropin'quat, approaches, draws near (<i>propinquity</i>)
Cornē'lia, Cornelia	can'tat, sings (<i>incantation</i>)
Iū'lia, Julia	labō'rat, works, labors, suffers (<i>laboratory</i>)
nau'ta, sailor (<i>nautical</i>)	na'tat, swims (<i>natatorium</i>)
puel'la, girl	quis, interrog. pron., who?
et, conj., and	quid, interrog. pron., what?
-ne, enclitic, sign of a question	
am'bulat, walks (<i>perambulate</i>)	

27. The Nominative Case used as Subject.

1. Puella cantat, the girl sings (*is singing, does sing*).
2. Puellae cantant, the girls sing (*are singing, do sing*).
3. Cantatne puella, does the girl sing (*is the girl singing*)?
4. Cantantne puellae, do the girls sing (*are the girls singing*)?

a. In Latin there is no article (III, *b*): **puella** may be translated *girl, a girl, or the girl*; and **puellae**, *girls or the girls*.

b. What is the subject (XI, *b*) of each of the model sentences, and what is the predicate (XI, *c*)? In what case is the subject of a Latin verb (XXIV)?

c. Observe that the verbs agree with their subjects in number.

d. Observe that **-ne** is not separately translated. Usually it is attached to the emphatic word in the sentence, and the emphasized word is placed first. When an interrogative word is used, **-ne** is omitted: see sentence 11 below. In English **-ne** is represented on the printed page by the question mark, and in oral translation by the inflection of the voice.

28. Rule for the Nominative Case as Subject. *The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.*

29. Rule for the Agreement of the Verb with its Subject. *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

EXERCISES

30. 1. Nauta cantat. 2. Nautae cantant. 3. Agricola labōrat. 4. Agricolae labōrant. 5. Puella natat. 6. Puellae natant. 7. Cornēlia appropinquat. 8. Puellaene appropinquant? 9. Cornēlia et puellae cantant. 10. Iūlia labōrat et cantat. 11. Quid appropinquat? 12. Labōrantne nautae? 13. Quis ambulat?

31. 1. The sailor is swimming. 2. The girls are singing. 3. Who approaches? 4. Are the sailors approaching? 5. Does Cornelia sing? 6. Cornelia and Julia are walking and singing. 7. The girl sings, and the farmer works. 8. Sailors and farmers are working.



TUBA

LESSON II

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE USED AS THE DIRECT OBJECT

32. The Accusative Case used as the Direct Object.

1. **Nauta puellam vocat**, *the sailor calls the girl.*
2. **Nautae puellās vocant**, *the sailors call the girls.*

a. Observe that **puellam** is the object (XIV, a) of **vocat**, and **puellās** of **vocant**; and that when a Latin noun is used as the object, the case ending is not the same as when it is the subject and so in the nominative. The case of the object in Latin is called *accusative* (XXIV) and not objective, as in English.

b. Form the accusative singular and plural of the nouns in sections 26 and 34.

33. Rule for the Accusative as the Direct Object. *The object of a verb is in the accusative case.*

34.

VOCABULARY

<p>a'qua, water (<i>aquatic</i>)</p> <p>Gal'ba, Galba</p> <p>lit'tera, letter (of the alphabet); <i>plur.</i>, a letter, epistle (<i>literary</i>)</p> <p>ter'ra, land (<i>terrace</i>)</p> <p>tu'ba, trumpet (<i>tuba</i>)</p> <p>a'mat, loves, likes (<i>amateur</i>)</p>	<p>con'vocat, calls together (<i>convoke</i>)</p> <p>ha'bet, has, holds (<i>habit</i>)</p> <p>lau'dat, praises (<i>laud</i>)</p> <p>vi'det, sees (<i>provide</i>)</p> <p>quem, <i>acc. of quis</i>, whom?</p> <p>quid, <i>acc. of quid</i>, what?</p> <p>nunc, <i>adv.</i>, now</p>
--	---

35. Order of Words. Observe that in the model sentences (32) the order of Latin words is unlike the order of the words in the English sentences. The normal position of the subject of a Latin sentence is at the beginning; that of the verb is at the end. Variations from this order put emphasis on the word moved toward the beginning of the sentence; thus, **puellam nauta vocat** means that the sailor calls *a girl*. In translating Latin sentences put the emphasis where it belongs.

EXERCISES

36. 1. Galba tubam habet. 2. Tubāsne habet Galba? 3. Puellae Cornēliam et Iūliam laudant. 4. Litterās nauta videt. 5. Nautās Galba convocat. 6. Quis Galbam videt? 7. Quem videt Galba? 8. Agricola puellās nunc convocat. 9. Videntne nautae terram? 10. Cornēliam puellae amant.

37. 1. Who is approaching? 2. The sailor and Galba are approaching. 3. What has the farmer? 4. The farmer has land. 5. Does Galba praise the farmers? 6. The girl sees the water and the land. 7. The sailors call together the farmers. 8. Julia now has the letter.



A SCENE IN A ROMAN STREET

LESSON III

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

38. The Four Conjugations. Regular verbs in Latin are divided into four classes, or conjugations (xxvii), distinguished from one another by the stem vowel before the ending *-re* of the present infinitive active.

	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
<i>First Conj.</i>	amā're	amā-	ā
<i>Second Conj.</i>	monē're	monē-	ē
<i>Third Conj.</i>	re'gere	rege-	ē
<i>Fourth Conj.</i>	audi're	audi-	i

39. The Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation.

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
<i>1st Pers.</i>	a'mō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>	-ō, <i>I</i>
<i>2d Pers.</i>	a'mās, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-s, <i>you</i>
<i>3d Pers.</i>	a'mat, <i>he, she, it loves, is loving, does love</i>	-t, <i>he, she, it</i>
	PLURAL	
<i>1st Pers.</i>	amā'mus, <i>we love, are loving, do love</i>	-mus, <i>we</i>
<i>2d Pers.</i>	amā'tis, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-tis, <i>you</i>
<i>3d Pers.</i>	a'mant, <i>they love, are loving, do love</i>	-nt, <i>they</i>

a. Observe that in amō the final *a* of the stem disappears, giving amō instead of amaō. In what forms is this *a* of the stem not long (13)?

b. When the subject of a verb is a personal pronoun, it is seldom expressed in Latin unless emphatic. Why is the omission of the subject possible? Translate **puellās convocātis** and **nautam vident**.

c. Inflect like amō the present indicative active of **ambulō**, **appropinquō**, **cantō**, **convocō**, **labōrō**, **laudō**, and **natō**.

40.

VOCABULARY

dō, *pres. stem dā-* (the *a* of *dō* is regularly short, but long in *dās*),

give (*dative*)

in'cola, inhabitant

sae'pe, *adv.*, often

sed, *conj.*, but

spec'tō, *pres. stem spectā-*, look at (*spectator*)

EXERCISES

41. 1. *Ambulat, convocat, cantat.* 2. *Convocantne? cantantne? laudantne?* 3. *Natās, labōrās, ambulās.* 4. *Amāmus, appropinquāmus, ambulāmus.* 5. *Convocātis, cantātis, amātis.* 6. *Amant, dat, laudāmus.* 7. *Quem spectās?* 8. *Incolās laudō.* 9. *Iūliam saepe laudātis.* 10. *Sed litterās laudāmus.* 11. *Quid nunc datis?*

42. 1. *I swim, he swims, I am swimming.* 2. *Are you working? we sing, does she praise?* 3. *They are approaching, they give, you walk.* 4. *You are praising, they swim, he does labor.* 5. *We call together the inhabitants, but you call together the sailors.* 6. *The girls are now looking at the water.*



RUINS OF A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

LESSON IV

THE GENITIVE CASE USED TO DENOTE POSSESSION

43. The Genitive Case used to denote Possession.

1. **Filiae Galbae cantant**, *the daughters of Galba sing*, or *Galba's daughters sing*.
2. **Filiās nautārum laudāmus**, *we praise the daughters of the sailors*, or *we praise the sailors' daughters*.

a. Observe that **Galbae** modifies **filiae** and tells whose daughters are singing. In the same way **nautārum** modifies **filiās** and tells whose daughters we are praising. This usage of **Galbae** and of **nautārum** is like that of the English possessive case (xxiv, a, 2). In Latin the case thus used is called the *genitive* (xxiv, b), and this usage of that case is called the *Genitive of Possession*.

b. Observe the case endings of the genitive. Form the genitive singular and the genitive plural of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 45.

c. Note the translations given to the genitives in the model sentences. Translate **filia agricolae** and **filiae agricolārum**.

d. The genitive normally stands after the word it modifies.

44. Rule for the Genitive of Possession. *The word denoting the owner or possessor is in the genitive case.*

45.

VOCABULARY

<p>fē'mina, woman (<i>feminine</i>)</p> <p>fi'lia, daughter (<i>filial</i>)</p> <p>fortū'na, fortune (<i>fortunate</i>)</p> <p>poē'ta, poet (<i>poetic</i>)</p> <p>rēgi'na, queen</p> <p>cu'ius, <i>gen. of quis and of quid</i>, of whom? whose? of what?</p> <p>dēlec'tō, <i>pres. stem dēlectā-</i>, delight, please (<i>delectable</i>)</p>	<p>expec'tō, <i>pres. stem expectā-</i>, wait, wait for (<i>expect</i>)</p> <p>fu'gō, <i>pres. stem fugā-</i>, put to flight, rout</p> <p>li'berō, <i>pres. stem liberā-</i>, set free, free (<i>liberate</i>)</p> <p>por'tō, <i>pres. stem portā-</i>, carry, bring (<i>portable</i>)</p> <p>et'iam, <i>adv.</i>, even</p>
--	--

EXERCISES

46. 1. Dēlectat, fugāmus, liberās. 2. Exspectāmus, portant, dēlectās. 3. Dēlectāmus, fugātis, liberant. 4. Liberatne? liberō, portāmus. 5. Filiās incolārum liberant. 6. Poētae fortūna rēgīnam dēlectat. 7. Spectāmus filiās fēminae. 8. Filiane Galbae litterās exspectat? 9. Etiam tubae nautārum incolās fugant. 10. Cuius litterās portās?

47. 1. I am calling together the sailors of the queen. 2. The poets' daughters love the land. 3. Whose daughter are you setting free? 4. Do they praise Galba's daughters? 5. We are now waiting for the farmers. 6. Whom does the fortune of the farmers delight?



A STREET IN POMPEII TO-DAY

LESSON V

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION · CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH *QUOD*

48. The Present Indicative Active of the Second Conjugation.

SINGULAR

- 1st Pers. mo'neō, *I advise, am advising, do advise*
 2d Pers. mo'nēs, *you advise, are advising, do advise*
 3d Pers. mo'net, *he, she, it advises, is advising, does advise*

PLURAL

- 1st Pers. monē'mus, *we advise, are advising, do advise*
 2d Pers. monē'tis, *you advise, are advising, do advise*
 3d Pers. mo'nent, *they advise, are advising, do advise*

a. What verbs belong to the second conjugation (38)?

b. Observe that to the stem **monē-** the same personal endings are added to inflect **moneō** that were added to the stem **amā-** to inflect **amō**. Observe the three forms in which the present tense has the e of the stem not marked long. Compare the forms of the present tense of **amō** (39).

c. To the stems **docē-**, **habē-**, **terrē-**, and **vidē-** add the personal endings and thus inflect their present indicative active.

49.

VOCABULARY

<p>pecū'nia, money (<i>pecuniary</i>) pīrā'ta, pirate (<i>piratical</i>) prae'da, booty, plunder (<i>predatory</i>) cūr, <i>adv.</i>, why? do'ceō, docēre, teach, show (<i>docile</i>) ha'beō, habēre, have, hold (<i>habit</i>)</p>	<p>mo'neō, monēre, advise, warn (<i>admonition</i>) ter'reō, terrēre, scare, frighten (<i>terror</i>) vi'deō, vidēre, see (<i>improvident</i>) quod, <i>conj.</i>, because</p>
---	---

a. The infinitive will hereafter be given with each verb in the vocabulary. Of what help will this be to you (38)?

50. Causal Clause. For the kinds of clauses in a complex sentence see XIX, XX.

Incolās monet quod pirātae appropinquant, he warns the inhabitants because the pirates are approaching.

a. Observe that **quod** introduces a dependent clause, which tells the reason, or cause, of what is stated in the independent part of the sentence. Such a **quod** clause is called a *causal clause*.

51. Rule for a Causal Clause with Quod. *The cause of an action may be expressed by a dependent clause introduced by quod.*

EXERCISES

52. 1. Pecūniam habēs. 2. Iūliam doceō. 3. Incolās saepe monēs. 4. Puellāsne terrent? 5. Quem vident? 6. Monēmus et docēmus. 7. Quid habēmus? 8. Praedam nunc vidēō. 9. Tubam vidētis. 10. Agricolāsne monētis? 11. Litterās habent. 12. Iūlia filiās poētae docet. 13. Etiam pecūniam agricolārum habent pirātae. 14. Filiārum fortūna fēminam delectat. 15. Cūr Iūliam et Cornēliam monet? 16. Quem docēs et monēs? 17. Fēminae puellās laudant quod labōrant.

53. 1. They are advising. 2. They have. 3. I am warning. 4. You frighten. 5. We see. 6. Does he teach the girls? 7. Do Cornelia and Julia look at the pirate? 8. Why do the pirates frighten the inhabitants? 9. They have the money and the booty. 10. We praise the woman because she teaches the girls. 11. What do you see? What are you looking at?



A ROMAN COIN

LESSON VI

THE DATIVE CASE USED AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT · THE ABLATIVE USED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES TO SHOW PLACE WHERE

54. The Dative and Ablative Cases. Besides the three cases that you have already studied, there are in Latin in common use two other cases, the *dative* and the *ablative*. For the general character of these cases see XXIV, *a*, 4; *b*.

55.

VOCABULARY

<p>do'mina, lady, mistress (of slaves) (<i>dominant</i>)</p> <p>fā'bula, story (<i>fable</i>)</p> <p>in'sula, island (<i>peninsula</i>)</p> <p>vi'a, way, road, street (<i>viaduct</i>)</p> <p>in, <i>prep. with abl.</i>, in, on</p> <p>dēmōn'strō, dēmōn'strāre, point out, show (<i>demonstrate</i>)</p>	<p>ha'bitō, habitāre, dwell, live (<i>inhabitant</i>)</p> <p>ma'neō, manēre, remain (<i>mansion</i>)</p> <p>nār'rō, nārrāre, tell, relate (<i>narrator</i>)</p> <p>cui, <i>dat. of quis and of quid</i>, to whom? for whom? to what? for what?</p>
---	--

56. The Dative used as Indirect Object.

Cornēliae et puellis fābulam nār'rō, I am telling a story to Cornelia and the girls, or I am telling Cornelia and the girls a story.

a. Observe that what is being told is a story, **fābulam**, the direct object; and that the *persons to whom* the story is told are *Cornelia* and the *girls*. **Cornēliae** and **puellis**, therefore, are in the dative case, as this is the case which expresses the relation of *to* or *for* (XXIV, *b*). This usage, which is like the English (XXIV, *a*, 4), is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object*.

b. The case endings of the dative are **-ae**, singular, and **-is**, plural. Form the dative, singular and plural, of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 55.

57. Rule for the Dative of the Indirect Object. *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

58. The Ablative used in Prepositional Phrases to show Place Where.

In terrā et in insulīs habitant, they live on the land and on the islands.

a. Observe that the phrases (xvi, *a*) *on the land*, **in terrā**, and *on the islands*, **in insulīs**, show *place where*. **Terrā** and **insulīs** are in the ablative case (xxiv, *b*).

b. The case endings of the ablative are **-ā**, singular, and **-īs**, plural.

c. Form the ablative, singular and plural, of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 55.

59. Rule for the Ablative of Place Where. *Place where is commonly expressed by a phrase consisting of a preposition, usually in, with the ablative case.*

60. Order of Words. The indirect object normally stands before the direct object. An ablative normally stands before the direct object. Variations from this order give emphasis to the word removed from its normal position.

EXERCISES

61. 1. Agricola dominae viam dēmōnstrat. 2. Puellis etiam Cornēlia fābulam nārrat. 3. In insulā habitāmus. 4. Quis poētis insulam dēmōnstrat? 5. Cūr pirātae in aquā manent? 6. Cui pecūniam dās? 7. Nautae agricolis praedam dēmōnstrant. 8. Incolae in viis appropinquant et rēginam spectant. 9. Dominam amant quod fābulās nārrat.

62. 1. To whom are you pointing out the lady? 2. I am pointing out the letter to Julia. 3. They are telling stories to the queen. 4. Galba's daughter gives money to the sailors. 5. Do the pirates live on the island? 6. Whose daughters are approaching in the street?

LESSON VII

THE FIRST DECLENSION · GENDER

63. The First Declension. There are five declensions (XXII) of Latin nouns. Those nouns which end in **-a** in the nominative singular and in **-ae** in the genitive singular are said to belong to the *first declension*. Learn the complete inflection of the noun **agricola** :

SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i> agri'cola	-a
<i>Gen.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Dat.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Acc.</i> agri'colam	-am
<i>Abl.</i> agri'colā	-ā
PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Gen.</i> agricolā'rum	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i> agri'colis	-is
<i>Acc.</i> agri'colās	-ās
<i>Abl.</i> agri'colis	-is

a. Observe that the inflection of a noun consists merely in adding the case endings to an unchangeable part of the word. This unchangeable part is called the *base*. Decline like **agricola** the nouns in section 55.

64. Gender. Latin nouns are masculine, feminine, or neuter in gender (xxv, *a*, *b*).

a. Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. **Nauta**, **agricola**, **Galba**, **poëta**, and **pirāta** are the masculine nouns you have learned. Hereafter the gender of nouns will be shown in the vocabularies by the letters *m.*, *f.*, or *n.*

65.

VOCABULARY

dīligen'tia, -ae, f., diligence (<i>diligent</i>)	por'ta, -ae, f., gate (<i>portal</i>)
fu'ga, -ae, f., flight, rout (<i>refuge</i>)	prōvin'cia, -ae, f., province (<i>provincial</i>)
Germā'nia, -ae, f., Germany (<i>Germanic</i>)	pug'na, -ae, f., fight (<i>pugnacious</i>)
Grae'cia, -ae, f., Greece (<i>Grecian</i>)	sil'va, -ae, f., woods, forest (<i>silvan</i>)
Ita'lia, -ae, f., Italy (<i>Italian</i>)	victō'ria, -ae, f., victory (<i>victorious</i>)

a. The ending -ae of the genitive singular is placed after the nouns in the vocabulary to indicate that these nouns belong to the first declension.

EXERCISES

66. 1. Cūr poētae in silvis manent? 2. Cui victōriam rēgīnae nārās? 3. In portā Iūliam et Cornēliam videō. 4. In Germāniā et in Graeciā saepe agricolās convocant. 5. Habitantne in prōvinciā? 6. Victōria nautārum agricolās terret. 7. Diligentia puellārum fēminam dēlectat. 8. In pugnā pirātās Italiae fugāmus. 9. Galba fugam pirātārum nārāt.

67. 1. I am living in a province of Greece. 2. The forests of the provinces delight the poets. 3. He gives money to Julia's daughter. 4. To whom do you give water? 5. Whose diligence do you praise? 6. They are waiting in the road and looking at the woods.



A WALL DRAWING. PROBABLY THE WORK OF A ROMAN SCHOOLBOY

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS I-VII

68. Give the English meanings of the following words :

agricola	dō	habitō	-ne	quis
ambulō	doceō	in	nunc	quod
amō	domina	incola	pecūnia	rēgīna
appropinquō	et	īnsula	pīrāta	saepe
aqua	etiam	labōrō	poēta	sed
cantō	expectō	laudō	porta	silva
convocō	fābula	liberō	portō	spectō
cui	fēmina	littera	praeda	terra
cuius	filia	maneō	prōvincia	terreō
cūr	fortūna	moneō	puella	tuba
dēlectō	fuga	nārrō	pugna	via
dēmōnstrō	fugō	natō	quem	victōria
diligentia	habeō	nauta	quid	videō

69. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

often	sing	approach, draw near
to whom? to what?	walk	give
labor, work, suffer	farmer	booty, plunder
whom?	call together	island
wait, wait for, expect	flight, rout	poet
put to flight, rout	land	trumpet
love, like	forest, woods	teach, show
girl	diligence	lady, mistress
gate	delight, please	remain
and	who?	way, road, street
water	but	inhabitant
have, hold	in, on	advise, warn
dwell, live	look at	sailor
story	because	province

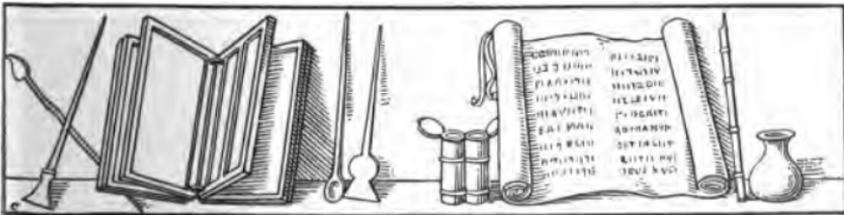
point out, show	fight	tell, relate, narrate
daughter	victory	letter
set free, free, liberate	see	praise
queen	fortune	what?
why?	carry, bring	scare, frighten
money	woman	whose?
even	pirate	swim
now		

70. Decline the nouns and conjugate the verbs in 68. Give the genitive singular of each noun; give the other cases, in the singular and in the plural. Give the third person, singular and plural, of the present indicative of each verb in 68.

71. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 68. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

72. Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a brief sentence in Latin:

1. Nominative as the subject
2. Agreement of the verb with its subject
3. Accusative as the object
4. Genitive of possession
5. Causal clause with **quod**
6. Dative of the indirect object
7. Ablative of place where
8. Questions



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

LESSON VIII

THE SECOND DECLENSION

73. The Second Declension. Most nouns of the second declension end in **-us** or **-um**. Those ending in **-us** are generally masculine; those in **-um** are neuter. **Hortus, garden,** and **dōnum, gift,** are inflected as follows:

		SINGULAR			
		CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
<i>Nom.</i>	hor'tus	-us		dō'nūm	-um
<i>Gen.</i>	hor'tī	-ī		dō'nī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	hor'tō	-ō		dō'nō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	hor'tum	-um		dō'nūm	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	hor'tō	-ō		dō'nō	-ō
PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	hor'tī	-ī		dō'na	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	hor'tō'rum	-ōrum		dō'nō'rum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hor'tīs	-īs		dō'nīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	hor'tōs	-ōs		dō'na	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	hor'tīs	-īs		dō'nīs	-īs

a. Learn the case endings first. Then learn the inflection by adding the case endings to the base of each noun. Then practice the inflection of the nouns in section 74.

b. What do you notice about the dative and the ablative plural of the first and second declensions? What cases are alike in the second declension?

74.

VOCABULARY

<p>ami'cus, -ī, <i>m.</i>, friend (<i>amicable</i>)</p> <p>do'minus, -ī, <i>m.</i>, master (of slaves) (<i>domineer</i>)</p> <p>dō'num, -ī, <i>n.</i>, gift, present (<i>donor</i>)</p> <p>e'quus, -ī, <i>m.</i>, horse (<i>equine</i>)</p> <p>frūmen'tum, -ī, <i>n.</i>, grain</p>	<p>hor'tus, -ī, <i>m.</i>, garden (<i>horticulture</i>)</p> <p>Mār'cus, -ī, <i>m.</i>, Marcus</p> <p>op'pidum, -ī, <i>n.</i>, town</p> <p>ser'vus, -ī, <i>m.</i>, slave (<i>servile</i>)</p> <p>tribū'nus, -ī, <i>m.</i>, tribune (<i>tribunal</i>)</p>
---	---

EXÉRCISES

75. 1. Oppidum videō. 2. Oppida vidēmus. 3. Dominusne servum monet? 4. Equum tribūnus spectat. 5. Equī dominōrum servōs dēlectant. 6. Mārcus amīcō fābulam nārrat. 7. Domīnī amīcis praedam dant. 8. In oppidis amīcōs saepe convocāmus. 9. Servī appropinquant et frūmentum et aquam portant.

76. 1. Who has the tribune's horse? 2. The servants now have the gifts of the masters. 3. Have you friends in the garden? 4. A servant carries the grain of the tribune. 5. Whose gift are they showing to Marcus? 6. We see the town and the gardens of the town.



RUINS OF AN AMPHITHEATER

LESSON IX

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

77. Adjectives in Latin. Latin adjectives, unlike English adjectives, are declined (XXII). There are two declensions of adjectives.

78. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. One class of adjectives has in its masculine and neuter forms the case endings of the second declension, and in its feminine forms the case endings of the first declension: as, **bonus** (masc.), **bona** (fem.), **bonum** (neut.), *good*. Learn the full declension of **bonus** (643).

79. Rule for the Agreement of Adjectives. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	hortus bonus	puella bona	dōnum bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	horti boni	puellae bonae	dōni boni
<i>Dat.</i>	horto bono	puellae bonae	dōno bono
	etc.	etc.	etc.

a. Complete the declension of the expressions given above. Decline together **amicus bonus**, *good friend*; **fābula grāta**, *pleasing story*; **oppidum magnum**, *large town*.

80. The rule given in 79 does not mean that adjectives must have the same case endings as the nouns they modify. An adjective modifying a masculine noun of the first declension will not have the same case endings as the noun. Thus,

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	nauta bonus	nautae boni
<i>Gen.</i>	nautae boni	nautarum bonorum
<i>Dat.</i>	nautae bono	nautis bonis
	etc.	etc.

a. Complete the declension of **nauta bonus**. Decline **poëta grätus**, *pleasing poet*.

81. Order of Words. An adjective normally follows the noun which it modifies.

82.

VOCABULARY

car'rus, -i, <i>m.</i> , wagon, cart (<i>car</i>)	grä'tus, grä'ta, grä'tum, pleasing, welcome (<i>gratitude</i>)
ci'bus, -i, <i>m.</i> , food	mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num, great, large (<i>magnitude</i>)
pī'lum, -i, <i>n.</i> , javelin	va'lidus, va'lida, va'lidum, strong, robust (<i>valid</i>)
rē'mus, -i, <i>m.</i> , oar (<i>trireme</i>)	at'que, <i>conj.</i> , and also
ven'tus, -i, <i>m.</i> , wind (<i>ventilate</i>)	nōn, <i>adv.</i> , not (<i>nonexistent</i>)
pro'bō, probāre, approve, approve of (<i>approbation</i>)	ubi, <i>adv.</i> , where? (<i>ubiquitous</i>)
bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, good, kind (<i>bonus</i>)	

EXERCISES

83. 1. Equōs magnōs spectāmus atque probāmus. 2. Tribūnus amicō bonō pīlum dat. 3. Dōnum grätum nautae Iūliam dēlectat. 4. Nauta validus rēmōs validōs habet. 5. Servōs bonōs videt puella. 6. Nautās ventī magnī nōn terrent. 7. Ubi frūmentum agricolārum validōrum vidētis? 8. In carrō magnō frūmentum portant. 9. Pirātae agricolās terrent quod pīla habent.

84. 1. I have a large wagon. 2. The good master has a good slave. 3. And he also gives the good slave a welcome gift. 4. Does the slave approve of the gift? 5. They do not live in a large town of Greece. 6. He is not calling together the good sailors. 7. Where do you see a large forest?



LESSON X

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM* · PREDICATE NOUN AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

85. The Present Indicative of *Sum*. The irregular verb *sum*, *I am*, is conjugated in the present indicative as follows :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>1st Pers.</i>	<i>sum, I am</i>	<i>su'mus, we are</i>
<i>2d Pers.</i>	<i>es, you are</i>	<i>es'tis, you are</i>
<i>3d Pers.</i>	<i>est, he, she, it is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>

86. Predicate Noun and Predicate Adjective. For the definition of a predicate noun and of a predicate adjective, see xv.

1. *Mārcus est agricola, Marcus is a farmer.*
2. *Nautae sunt amīci, the sailors are friends.*
3. *Hortus est magnus, the garden is large.*
4. *Puellae sunt grātae, the girls are welcome.*

a. Observe the case of *agricola*, *amīci*, *magnus*, and *grātae* (xv, c).

87. Rule for the Agreement of a Predicate Noun. *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

88. Rule for the Agreement of a Predicate Adjective. *A predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb.*

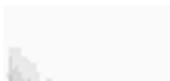
89. Order of Words. The verb *sum* generally has no emphasis (unless it begins the sentence), and it is placed in the sentence where it sounds best or where it adds clearness.

In Latin phrases consisting of a monosyllabic preposition, adjective, and noun the order of words is often adjective, preposition, noun : as, *magnō in oppidō, in the large town.*



WITHIN A ROMAN HOUSE

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY



90.

VOCABULARY

bel'lum, -ī, *n.*, war (*belligerent*)
 Britan'nia, -ae, *f.*, Britain (*Britan-
 nic*)
 de'a, -ae, *f.*, goddess (*deity*)
 de'us, -ī, *m.*, god (*deify*)
 Eurō'pa, -ae, *f.*, Europe (*European*)
 Rō'ma, -ae, *f.*, Rome
 Rōmā'nus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman
 (*Roman*)
 Ves'ta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta (*vestal*)
 lā'tus, lā'ta, lā'tum, wide, broad
 (*latitude*)

lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum, long
 (*longitude*)
 me'us, me'a, me'um, my, mine
 no'vus, no'va, no'vum, new (*nov-
 elty*)
 par'vus, par'va, par'vum, small,
 little
 tu'us, tu'a, tu'um, your, yours
 (*referring to one owner*)
 e'rat, he, she, it was
 e'rant, they were

EXERCISES

91. 1. Galba agricola est. 2. Galba est validus. 3. Iūlia et Cornēlia sunt filiae meae. 4. Fīlia mea est parva. 5. Estne oppidum tuum magnum? 6. Britannia est insula Eurōpae. 7. Vesta erat dea Rōmae. 8. Carrī Rōmānōrum bonī et validī erant. 9. Nōn grātum est bellum. 10. Bella nōn grāta sunt. 11. Graecia est terra parva Eurōpae. 12. Sumus amīcī tribūnī. 13. Magnō in oppidō viās lātās vidēmus.

92. 1. The streets of the town are long. 2. The streets of Rome were not broad. 3. The roads of Britain are broad and long. 4. Where are you? 5. The new gifts of the tribune are pleasing. 6. We praise the gods because they give gifts. 7. We are Romans, but we are living in Britain.



PUERI PUELLAEQUE

LESSON XI

APPOSITION

93. Apposition.

1. **Galba, tribūnus, pīlum habet,** *Galba, the tribune, has a javelin.*
2. **Mārcum amicum amō,** *I love (my) friend Marcus.*

a. Observe that **tribūnus** denotes the same person as **Galba**, and is joined to **Galba** as a descriptive or explanatory noun; and that **amicum** is related in the same way to **Mārcum**. Such words are called *appositives*.

94. Rule for Apposition. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

95.

VOCABULARY

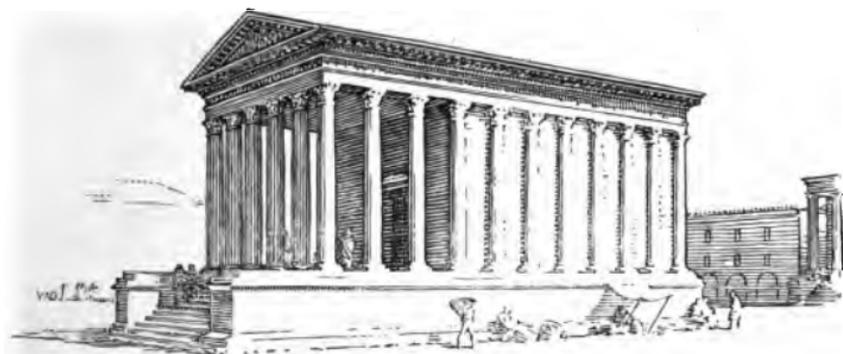
<p>clā'rus, -a, -um, famous, clear (<i>clarify</i>)</p> <p>dē, prep. with abl., from, concerning (<i>depend</i>)</p> <p>ōce'anus, -ī, m., ocean (<i>oceanic</i>)</p>	<p>pa'rō, parāre, prepare, get ready (<i>prepare</i>)</p> <p>pa'tria, -ae, f., native land, country (<i>patriotism</i>)</p> <p>tem'plum, -ī, n., temple</p>
---	--

CORNELIA ET IULIA

96. **Cornēlia et Iūlia** puellae parvae sunt. Ubi habitant? Nōn in Graeciā, sed clārō in oppidō Italiae habitant. Incolae Rōmae sunt. Italia patria Rōmānōrum est. Rōma viās lātās et templa magna habet. Rōmāni bella amant et probant.

Poētae filia est Cornēlia. Poēta lātis in hortis saepe ambulat. Atque dē bellō longō et fugā incolārum Germāniae cantat, quod victōriam Rōmānōrum probat.

Iūlia filia agricolae validi est. Agricola equōs et carrōs novōs habet. Cibum et frūmentum equi agricolae portant.



TEMPLUM

Servi agricolae equis aquam dant. Iūlia equōs amat et servōs laudat. Bonus dominus est agricola.

Mārcus et Galba, tribūni, amīci puellārum sunt. Mārcus poētae amicus est et fābulās grātās Cornēliae nārrat. Gałba Iūliae silvās et insulās ōceani dēmōnstrat.

Fēmina bona puellās docet. Diligentia Cornēliae fēminam dēlectat. In hōrtō poētae puellās convocat et fābulās nārrat. Fābulae dē bellō puellās parvās terrent.

Saepe Vestae dōna parant. Quis est Vesta? Vesta dea Rōmānōrum est et templum habet. Saepe in viis Rōmae puellae ambulant et praedam Germāniae et Britanniae spectant.

LESSON XII

THE SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN *-ER*, *-IR*, *-IUS*, AND *-IUM*

97. Nouns of the Second Declension in *-er* and *-ir*. Some nouns of the second declension end in *-er* and *-ir*. They are slightly different from *hortus* in their inflection :

SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	pu'er	a'ger	vir
<i>Gen.</i>	pu'erī	a'grī	vi'rī
<i>Dat.</i>	pu'erō	a'grō	vi'rō
<i>Acc.</i>	pu'erum	a'grum	vi'rum
<i>Abl.</i>	pu'erō	a'grō	vi'rō
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	pu'erī	a'grī	vi'rī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerō'rum	agrō'rum	virō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	pu'erīs	a'grīs	vi'rīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pu'erōs	a'grōs	vi'rōs
<i>Abl.</i>	pu'erīs	a'grīs	vi'rīs

a. Observe that these nouns are declined in the same way as *hortus* except that they lack the ending *-us* in the nominative singular. *Ager* is like *puer* except that *e* before *r* occurs only in the nominative singular.

98. Nouns of the Second Declension in *-ius* and *-ium*. Nouns of the second declension ending in *-ius* and *-ium* contract the genitive ending *-ii* to *-i*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: *auxi'lium*, gen. *auxi'i*. Learn the declension of *filius* and *proelium* (637).

99. Gender of Nouns of the Second Declension. Nouns of the second declension ending in *-um* are neuter; most others are masculine.

100.

VOCABULARY

a'ger, agrī, <i>m.</i> , field (<i>agriculture</i>) ¹	prae'mium, praemī, <i>n.</i> , reward (<i>premium</i>)
auxi'lium, auxi'li, <i>n.</i> , aid, help (<i>auxiliary</i>)	proe'lium, proeli, <i>n.</i> , battle
fi'lius, fili, <i>m.</i> , son (<i>filial</i>)	pu'er, puerī, <i>m.</i> , boy (<i>puerile</i>)
gla'dius, gladi, <i>m.</i> , sword (<i>gladiator</i>)	so'cius, soci, <i>m.</i> , comrade, ally (<i>associate</i>)
nūn'tius, nūntī, <i>m.</i> , messenger (<i>pronunciation</i>)	vir, virī, <i>m.</i> , man (<i>virile</i>)

EXERCISES

101. 1. Filii virōrum in Britannīa sunt. 2. Viri erant socii. 3. Nūntius sociōrum sum. 4. Puerōs parvōs, filiōs tribūnī, exspectāmus. 5. Pueri gladium et pilum Mārci habent. 6. Quis virō viam dēmōnstrat? 7. Proelium est longum et socii auxiliū exspectant. 8. In agrō labōrant vir et filii nūnti. 9. Cūr viris praemia nunc datis?

102. 1. The son of the messenger is a small boy. 2. We see your sword, but we have not your javelin. 3. They frighten the little boys and the woman. 4. The men are putting the allies to flight. 5. Where do the messengers live? 6. I have my son's sword. 7. Wars and battles delight the Romans.

¹ The spelling of the English derivatives *agriculture*, *puerile*, and *virile* will help you to recall the spelling of the genitives of *ager*, *puer*, and *vir*.



LESSON XIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS ENDING IN -ER

103. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in -er. Some adjectives of the first and second declensions end in *-er* in the nominative singular masculine. Their inflection resembles that of *puer* and of *ager*.

a. Learn the declension of *liber* and *noster* (643).

b. Observe that *liber* retains the *e* in all forms, as *puer* does, while *noster*, like *ager*, has no *e* after the nominative.

c. Decline *miser*, *wretched*, like *liber*. The other adjectives in this book that end in *-er* are declined like *noster*.

d. Decline together *vir liber*, *free man*; *fēmina misera*, *poor woman*; *bellum miserum*, *wretched war*; *poēta liber*, *free poet*; *amicus noster*, *our friend*.

104.

VOCABULARY

li'ber, *li'bera*, *li'berum*, free (*liberal*)

mi'ser, *mi'sera*, *mi'serum*, poor, unhappy, wretched (*miserable*)

mul'tus, *mul'ta*, *mul'tum*, much (*multitude*)

mul'ti, *mul'tae*, *mul'ta*, many

nos'ter, *nos'tra*, *nos'trum*, our (*nostrum*)

su'perō, *superāre*, surpass, defeat, overcome, conquer (*insuperable*)

ves'ter, *ves'tra*, *ves'trum*, your (of more than one owner)

vo'cō, *vocāre*, call (*vocation*)

EXERCISES

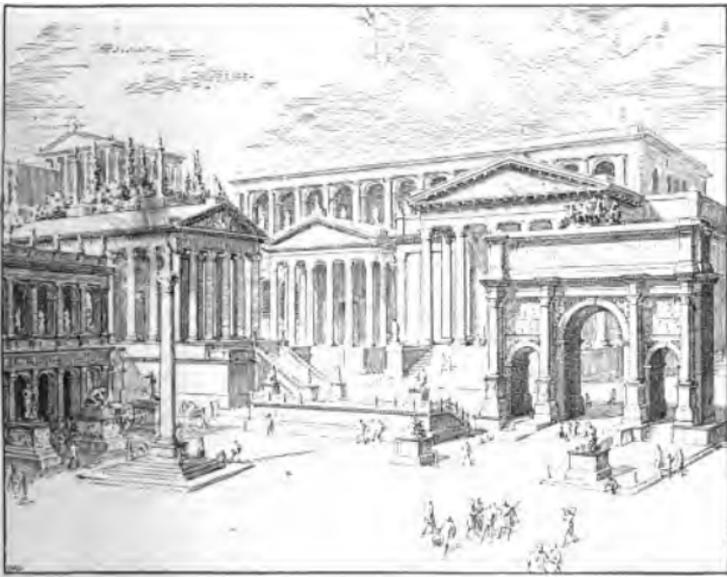
105. 1. Equōs in agrō Mārci amīcī videō. 2. Nūntius miser fābulam miseram dē fugā sociōrum nārrat. 3. Vestris amīcis praemia dant. 4. Pecūnia, dōnum Cornēliae, filium nostrum dēlectat. 5. Sumus viri liberī in oppidō liberō. 6. Deae Graeciae multae erant. 7. Socius noster est miser, quod gladium

nōn habet. 8. Rōmānōs in proeliō superant. 9. Vocatne filius tuus? 10. Dominō servus miser cibum parat.

106. 1. Our friends, Marcus and Galba, are wretched. 2. There are many cārts in the streets of our town. 3. She calls together the unhappy sons of the messengers. 4. Where do you see your horse? 5. The winds do not frighten the sailors. 6. We are sons of free men. 7. I have a javelin, the gift of a friend.

DE GRAECIA

107. Graecia, terra parva, prōvincia Rōmānōrum erat. Athēnae, Sparta, Thēbae, Corinthus clāra oppida Graeciae erant. In oppidīs erant templa multa deōrum et deārum. In viīs oppidōrum statuae (*statues*) multae virōrum clārōrum erant. Incolae nōn erant miserī. Quis incolās Graeciae nōn laudat?



A RESTORATION OF THE ROMAN FORUM

LESSON XIV

THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM* · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

108. The Imperfect Indicative of *Sum*. The imperfect indicative of *sum* is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. e'ram, <i>I was</i>	erā'mus, <i>we were</i>
2. e'rās, <i>you were</i>	erā'tis, <i>you were</i>
3. e'rat, <i>he, she, it was</i>	e'rant, <i>they were</i>

109. The Future Indicative of *Sum*. The future indicative of *sum* is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. e'rō, <i>I shall be</i>	e'rimus, <i>we shall be</i>
2. e'ris, <i>you will be</i>	e'ritis, <i>you will be</i>
3. e'rit, <i>he, she, it will be</i>	e'runt, <i>they will be</i>

110. The Dative with Adjectives.

Dōnum puerō erit grātum, *the gift will be pleasing to the boy.*

a. Observe that *puerō* is translated with the adjective *grātum*, *pleasing to the boy*. Certain Latin adjectives, particularly those meaning *near, fit, friendly, pleasing, like*, and their opposites, are thus followed by the case expressing *to* or *for*, exactly as they are followed in English by a phrase beginning with *to* or *for*: as, *fit for war, unfriendly to us*. This usage is known as the *Dative with Adjectives*.

111. Rule for the Dative with Adjectives. *Certain adjectives meaning near, fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites, may be accompanied by a dative to show the person or the thing toward which the quality of the adjective is directed.*

112.

VOCABULARY

amī'cus, -a, -um, friendly

cer'tē, adv., certainly

fīnī'timus, -a, -um, neighboring,
near (*affinity*)

idō'neus, -a, -um, fit, suitable

inimī'cus, -a, -um, unfriendly,
hostile (*inimical*)iniū'ria, -ae, f., injustice, wrong
(*injury*)in'terim, adv., meanwhile (*in-
terim*)li'ber, librī, m., book (*library*)propin'quus, -a, -um, near (*pro-
pinquity*)pro'ximus, -a, -um, nearest, next,
very near (*proximity*)

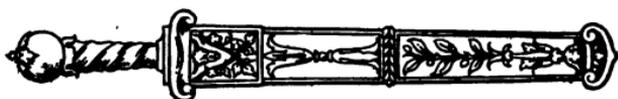
EXERCISES

113. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, eram, erō. 5. Es, erās, eris. 6. Estis, erātis, eritis. 7. Certē erāmus inimicī Mārcō, vestrō filiō. 8. Proximi oppidō erant multi agrī. 9. Iniūriae sociōrum multae erunt. 10. Īnsulam terrae propinquam videō. 11. Ventī nautis nōn erunt grāti. 12. Agricolae bellō longō idōneī nōn erant. 13. Interim vestrīs filiīs erimus amicī. 14. Gladii atque pila proeliō idōnea¹ sunt.

114. 1. I am, we are. 2. Where were we? I was in the town. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. Is he a tribune? They are allies. 5. Meanwhile you will be a free man. 6. Our towns are near Greece. 7. In our towns the men are unfriendly to Rome. 8. There will be² a great battle in Britain. 9. The books will certainly be welcome to my friend Marcus.

¹ The predicate adjective *idōnea* is neuter because the two subjects are things without life.

² Express *there will be* by *erit*, and place *erit* at the beginning of the sentence. How do you say *there are? there is? there were?*



GLADIUS

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS VIII-XIV

115. Give the English meanings of the following words :

ager	deus	interim	nūntius	rēmūs
amicus, <i>noun</i>	dominus	lātus	ōceanus	servus
amicus, <i>adj.</i>	dōnum	liber	oppidum	socius
atque	equus	liber	parō	superō
auxilium	filius	longus	parvus	templum
bellum	finitimus	magnus	patria	tribūnus
bonus	frūmentum	meus	pīlum	tuus
carrus	gladius	miser	praemium	ubi
certē	grātus	multus	probō	validus
cibus	hortus	multī	proelium	ventus
clārus	idōneus	nōn	propinquus	vester
dē	inimicus	noster	proximus	vir
dea	iniūria	novus	puer	vocō

116. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

garden	from, concerning	strong, robust
many	where ?	native land, country
oar	son	great, large
man	war	your (<i>sing.</i>)
call	comrade, ally	slave
god	meanwhile	aid, help
long	horse	near
sword	wind	nearest, next
goddess	boy	javelin
food	good, kind	unfriendly
much	not	new
grain	messenger	battle
approve, approve of	famous	get ready
injustice, wrong	friendly	certainly

friend	field	book
tribune	small, little	fit, suitable
your (<i>plur.</i>)	gift	free
temple	pleasing, welcome	our
my, mine	surpass, defeat, overcome, conquer	town
master	wide, broad	reward
cart	neighboring, near	ocean
and also	poor, unhappy, wretched	

117. Decline each noun and adjective in 115. Conjugate each verb in the present indicative active. Give the genitive singular of each noun; give the other cases, in the singular and the plural. Conjugate **sum** in the imperfect and future indicative.

118. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 115. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

119. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

1. Agreement of adjectives
2. Predicate noun
3. Predicate adjective
4. Apposition
5. Dative with adjectives



A ROMAN BOY

A ROMAN GIRL

LESSON XV

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

120. The Imperfect Indicative Active, First and Second Conjugations. The imperfect indicative active of the first and second conjugations is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amā'ba m , <i>I was loving</i>	amābā' mus , <i>we were loving</i>
2. amā'bā s , <i>you were loving</i>	amābā' tis , <i>you were loving</i>
3. amā'ba t , <i>he was loving</i>	amā'ba nt , <i>they were loving</i>

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. monē'ba m , <i>I was advising</i>	monēbā' mus , <i>we were advising</i>
2. monē'bā s , <i>you were advising</i>	monēbā' tis , <i>you were advising</i>
3. monē'ba t , <i>he was advising</i>	monē'ba nt , <i>they were advising</i>

a. Observe that in this tense the personal ending of the first person singular is **-m**, not **-ō**.

b. Observe that **amābam** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense sign **-bā-**, and to that tense sign the personal endings: **amā-ba-m** etc. Divide **monēbam** into three parts in the same way.

c. Inflect the imperfect of the verbs in 68 and 115.

d. The imperfect tense expresses action going on in past time.

121. The Ablative of Means.

Rōmānī gladiīs et pīlīs pugnābant, *the Romans were fighting with swords and javelins.*

a. Observe that **gladiīs** and **pīlīs** are in the ablative, since they express the relations of *with* and *by*. They answer the questions *with what? by means of what?* The ablative so used is called the *Ablative of Means*. It is limited to nouns that denote things, and is translated by a phrase beginning with *by, with, or by means of*.

122. *Rule for the Ablative of Means.* The means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (XXIV, b).

123.

VOCABULARY

ar'mō, armāre, arm, equip (*armor*)com'plēō, complēre, fill (*complete*)

dēfes'sus, -a, -um, tired out, weary

Helvē'tiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Helvetianslēgā'tus, -ī, *m.*, lieutenant, ambassador (*legation*)pug'nō, pugnāre, fight (*pugilist*)scū'tum, -ī, *n.*, shield (*escutcheon*)vī'cus, -ī, *m.*, village (*vicinity*)

EXERCISES

124. 1. Dēmōnstrābant, parābat, complēbātis. 2. Nārrābam, vidēbās, habitābāmus. 3. Superābās, habēbātis, probābat. 4. Cantābās, liberābam, manēbātis. 5. Terrēbam, vocābat, dēlectābātis. 6. Lēgātōs convocābam. 7. Agricolae frūmentum et cibum carris parvis portābant. 8. Interim gladiis in silvis pugnābant. 9. Scūtis amicōs nostrōs armābāmus. 10. Lēgātum, amicū meū, vocābam. 11. Pilis tribūnum et lēgātum in pugnā superābant. 12. Deis dōna vestra erunt grāta. 13. Vicus proximus ōceanō erat.

125. 1. I was walking, but you (*sing.*) were waiting in the field. 2. We were arming, they were remaining. 3. You (*plur.*) were approaching, and they were fighting. 4. He was working in the village. 5. We were teaching by means of stories and books. 6. With your swords you were liberating your friends. 7. Food was welcome to the tired Helvetians. 8. The men were fighting with long javelins. 9. The lieutenant was filling the village with food and grain.

LESSON XVI

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

126. The Future Indicative Active, First and Second Conjugations. The future indicative active of the first and second conjugations is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amā'bō, <i>I shall love</i>	amā'bimus, <i>we shall love</i>
2. amā'bis, <i>you will love</i>	amā'bitis, <i>you will love</i>
3. amā'bit, <i>he will love</i>	amā'bunt, <i>they will love</i>

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. monē'bō, <i>I shall advise</i>	monē'bimus, <i>we shall advise</i>
2. monē'bis, <i>you will advise</i>	monē'bitis, <i>you will advise</i>
3. monē'bit, <i>he will advise</i>	monē'bunt, <i>they will advise</i>

a. Observe that the future of **amō** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense sign **-bi-**, and to the tense sign the personal endings; but the **i** is dropped in the first person, and in the third person plural is changed to **u**.

1. How is the future of **monēō** formed?

b. Inflect the future of the verbs in 68 and 115.

127.

VOCABULARY

aedi'ficō, aedificāre, build (*edifice*)
 ae'ger, ae'gra, ae'grum, sick
 cum, *prep. with abl.*, with
 cū'ra, -ae, *f.*, care, anxiety (*curator*)
 in, *prep. with acc.*, into, to

nāvi'gium, nāvi'gī, *n.*, boat
 pro'perō, properāre, hasten
 quō, *adv.*, whither?
 stu'dium, studī, *n.*, zeal, eagerness (*study*)
 te'neō, tenēre, hold, keep (*tenant*)

128. The Ablative of Manner.

1. **Mārcus cum studiō labōrat**, *Marcus works with zeal (zealously).*
2. **Mārcus magnō cum studiō labōrat**, *Marcus works with great zeal.*
3. **Mārcus magnō studiō labōrat**, *Marcus works with great zeal.*

a. Observe that *manner* is expressed in these sentences by the use of the ablative case. Observe that 2 and 3 are translated in the same way, and that **cum** may be omitted when there is an adjective in the phrase. The ablative thus used answers the questions *how? in what way? in what manner?* and is called the *Ablative of Manner*. The ablative of manner may often be translated by an adverb: **cum studiō**, *zealously*.

129. *Rule for the Ablative of Manner.* *The ablative with cum is used with abstract nouns (1, f) to denote the manner of an action; but cum may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun of the phrase.*

EXERCISES

130. 1. Vocābunt, complēbunt, properābunt. 2. Armābitne? superābit, tenēbimus. 3. Manēbuntne? dēmōnstrābimus, ter-rēbō. 4. Labōrābis, docēbitis, habēbō. 5. Quō properābit agricola validus? 6. In agrōs properābunt agricola et pueri. 7. In agris labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 8. Cum cūrā frū-mentum in vicum portābunt. 9. Magnā diligentīā nāvīgium aedificābitis. 10. Servi aegri parvō studiō labōrant.

131. 1. You (*sing.*) will build. 2. He will hasten. 3. Who will not remain? 4. You (*plur.*) will hold. 5. We shall carry the sick men with great care. 6. Whither will the lieutenant hasten? 7. He will hasten into Greece and also will arm the inhabitants. 8. Where will our friends fight zealously? 9. The men were diligently filling the boats.

LESSON XVII

PRINCIPAL PARTS · THE PERFECT STEM · THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

132. Principal Parts. The principal parts of the verb **amō** are as follows :

PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. IND. ACT.	PERF. PASS. PART.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus

a. The principal parts of the verb are so called because all forms of the verb can be made from them, or from the three stems shown in the principal parts. These three stems are as follows :

1. Present stem : **amā-**, found by dropping the **-re** of the present infinitive active.

2. Perfect stem : **amāv-**, found by dropping the personal ending **-ī** of the first person singular of the perfect indicative active.

3. Participial stem : **amāt-**, found by dropping the nominative ending **-us** of the perfect passive participle.

133. The Perfect Stem. By the use of the present stem you have conjugated the present, imperfect, and future tenses. By the use of the perfect stem **amāv-** the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are conjugated.

134. The Perfect Indicative Active of the First Conjugation. The perfect indicative active of **amō** is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS OF PERFECT TENSE
1. amā'vī , <i>I have loved, I loved</i>	-ī
2. amāvis'tī , <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-istī
3. amā'vit , <i>he has loved, etc.</i>	-it
PLURAL	
1. amā'vimus , <i>we have loved, etc.</i>	-imus
2. amāvis'tis , <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-istis
3. amāv'ērunt , <i>they have loved, etc.</i>	-ērunt

a. Observe that the perfect tense has two meanings: *I have loved* and *I loved*. Both express completed action. *I have loved* indicates that the action is completed at the present time; and the perfect tense so used is known as the *perfect definite*. *I loved* indicates merely that the action was completed at some indefinite time in the past; and the perfect tense so used is known as the *perfect indefinite*. The imperfect tense, in contrast with the perfect, expresses an action going on in the past (120, d).

b. Give the principal parts of each verb of the first conjugation in 68 and 115; they are formed in the same way as those of *amō* (except *dō, dare, dedī, datus*). Inflect the perfect tense of each.

EXERCISES

135. 1. Vocāvitne? convocāvit, superāvit. 2. Pugnāvērunt, exspectāvērunt, labōrāvērunt. 3. Properāvimus, aedificāvimus, armāvimus. 4. Laudāvine? vocāvistī, properāvistis. 5. Portāvit, dēlectāvit, dedit.

136. 1. You have praised, you showed, you related. 2. I have given, I brought, I set free. 3. They approved, they have sung, they swam. 4. We gave, we dwelt, we showed.

137.

VOCABULARY

ar'ma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, arms

dī'ū, *adv.*, for a long time, long

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, for;
in defense of (*proceed*)

Rō'mulus, -i, *m.*, Romulus

Sabī'nī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Sabines

vul'nerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vul-
nerātus, wound (*vulnerable*)

DE SABINIS

138. Rōmulus Rōmam, clārum oppidum Italiae, aedificāvit. Validī virī erant Rōmānī et patriam amābant. Saepe prō patriā pugnābant et saepe Sabīnōs armīs in bellō superābant. Sabīnī bona arma habēbant et magnō cum studiō pilis longīs diū pugnāvērunt. Sed Rōmānī Sabīnōs fugāvērunt et multōs virōs gladiis vulnerāvērunt.

LESSON XVIII

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, SECOND CONJUGATION THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

139. Principal Parts of Verbs of the Second Conjugation. The principal parts of verbs of the second conjugation are not so regular as those of the first conjugation. You have already had some verbs of the second conjugation. Their principal parts are as follows :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētus
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsūrus
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	_____
terrēō	terrēre	terruī	territus
videō	vidēre	vidī	visus

a. Learn the principal parts of these verbs. What is the perfect stem of each?

b. Learn the inflection of the perfect tense of **moneō** (659), and practice the inflection of the perfect tense of the other verbs.

EXERCISES

140. 1. Monuit, monuērunt, docuit. 2. Docuērunt, habuit, habuērunt. 3. Terruistī, terruistis, tenuistīne? 4. Vidī? vidēruntne? mānsimus. 5. Tenuit, tenuērunt, terruērunt.

141. 1. I have filled, you have seen, we have held. 2. He frightened, it had, they have filled. 3. She has remained, I have taught, you (*plur.*) have warned.

142. The Ablative of Accompaniment.

Cum filiō meō ambulābat, he was walking with my son.

a. Observe that the phrase **cum filiō** answers the questions *with whom? in whose company?* This use of the ablative with the preposition **cum** is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

143. Rule for the Ablative of Accompaniment. *The ablative with cum is used to show accompaniment.*

144.

VOCABULARY

cap'tivus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , captive (<i>captive</i>)	lo'cus, -ī, <i>m.</i> (<i>plur. loca, n.</i>), place (<i>location</i>)
cau'sa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , cause, reason	per'i'culum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , peril, danger (<i>peril</i>)
hi'emō, hiemāre, hiemāvi, hiemā- tūrus, ¹ spend the winter	

EXERCISES

145. 1. Puerī carrum nostrum frūmentō complēvērunt.
2. Cum cūrā puellam aegram certē portāvērunt. 3. Scūta et gladiōs captivōrum prō portis vidī. 4. Locus proeliō idōneus nōn erat. 5. Lēgātus cum multis viris in Germāniam prope-rāvit. 6. Causam belli dēmōnstrābit. 7. In Graeciā cum amicis vestris hiemāvi. 8. Magnō cum periculō mānsērunt.

146. 1. The swords and the javelins frightened the cap-tives. 2. They fought with the tribune in the long war. 3. The women were spending the winter in Italy. 4. Who will tell the lieutenant the cause of the war? 5. They have filled the place with arms. 6. The Romans have fought with the allies in defense of Rome.

¹Future active participle (441, *a*). This form, if it occurs, is given in the principal parts where the perfect passive participle is not in use.

LESSON XIX

THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS · THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF SUM

147. **The Demonstrative Is.** The demonstrative *is*, *this*, *that*, plur. *these*, *those*, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	e'a	id	iī (e'ī)	e'ae	e'a
<i>Gen.</i>	e'ius	e'ius	e'ius	e'ō'rum	eā'rum	e'ō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	e'ī	e'ī	e'ī	iīs (e'īs)	iīs (e'īs)	iīs (e'īs)
<i>Acc.</i>	e'um	e'am	id	e'ōs	e'ās	e'a
<i>Abl.</i>	e'ō	e'ā	e'ō	iīs (e'īs)	iīs (e'īs)	iīs (e'īs)

a. *Iī* and *iīs* are pronounced as monosyllables, *ī* and *īs*.

148. **The Uses of Is.** There is no word in English like *is*. Although it is a demonstrative pronoun (II, *f*) and means *this* and *that*, it does not point emphatically to what is near, as does *hic*, or to what is remote, as does *ille* (228). Generally it refers to somebody or to something that has just been mentioned. Sometimes it approaches in meaning the English definite article *the*. It is translated by *this* or *that* as the meaning of the sentence may require.

1. *Is agricolās convocāvit, this (or that) man called the farmers together.*
2. *Is servus cum diligentīā labōrat, this (or that) slave works diligently.*

a. Observe that *is* is used in the first sentence as a pronoun, and in the second sentence as an adjective (III, *e*). *Is*, when an adjective, usually precedes its noun.

b. Decline together *id dōnum*; *is nūntius*; *ea patria*.

149. The Perfect Indicative of *Sum*. The perfect indicative of *sum* is conjugated as follows :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fu'ī, <i>I have been, was</i>	fu'imus, <i>we have been, were</i>
2. fuis'tī, <i>you have been, were</i>	fuis'tis, <i>you have been, were</i>
3. fu'it, <i>he has been, was</i>	fuērunt, <i>they have been, were</i>

EXERCISES

150. 1. Id scūtum vidi. 2. Is gladius est meus. 3. Ea pugna erit longa. 4. Eō gladiō pugnābō. 5. Ei captivō cibum dedit. 6. Id erat tuum. 7. Periculum eōrum lēgātōrum dēmōstrābat. 8. In Germāniā et in terrā Helvētiōrum fuimus. 9. Fuitne tua filia aegra? 10. Dominus eius servi fuit dēfessus. 11. Ea victōria Rōmānōs dēlectāvit. 12. Cum eō amicō in Britanniam properābam. 13. Ubi fuistis?

151. 1. By means of these arms we shall overcome the pirates on the ocean. 2. That help is pleasing to the Romans. 3. I have often been in those woods. 4. I have taught the sons of these farmers. 5. You have seen and praised these allies because they fought with zeal. 6. Whither were you hastening with this boy? 7. The causes of this war have been many.



SCUTA

LESSON XX

THE INTERROGATIVE *QUIS*

152. The Uses of the Interrogative *Quis*. The interrogative *quis* (*quī*), *who? which? what?* may be used as a pronoun or as an adjective (II, *e*; III, *e*): *quis vocat? who calls? quod dōnum habēs? what gift have you?*

153. The Declension of the Interrogative Pronoun. The interrogative pronoun *quis* is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cu'ius</i>	<i>quō'rum</i>	<i>quā'rum</i>	<i>quō'rum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>qui'bus</i>	<i>qui'bus</i>	<i>qui'bus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>qui'bus</i>	<i>qui'bus</i>	<i>qui'bus</i>

a. Which forms have you already learned?

154. The Declension of the Interrogative Adjective. The interrogative adjective *quī* is declined as follows in the singular (the plural is the same as that of *quis*):

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cu'ius</i>	<i>cu'ius</i>	<i>cu'ius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>

a. Decline together *quī captivus*; *quae causa*; *quod periculum*.

EXERCISES

155. 1. Quī id templum aedificāverunt? 2. Quī lēgātī eōs virōs armāverunt? 3. Quid in eō agrō est? 4. Cui dat Mārcus id praemium? 5. Quibus terris est Britannia proxima? 6. Quem laudātis? 7. Quem librum laudāvit Cornēlia? 8. Quō gladiō captivum vulnerāverunt? 9. Quod periculum nārrās?



MARS

156. 1. Who was the messenger of the gods? 2. What gift did he give to this boy? 3. Whose shield did that slave have? 4. To whom have they shown the causes of this war? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have they overcome the Helvetians? 7. In which village did they live?

157.

VOCABULARY

adōrō, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātus, imperium, impe'rī, *n.*, command, pray to, worship (*adoration*) power (*imperial*)
 animus; -ī, *m.*, feeling, mind (*animus*) i'taque, *conj.*, and so, therefore

DE DEIS ROMANORUM

158. Mars, prōavus (*the ancestor*) Rōmānōrum, arma et proelia et bella amābat. Rōmulus et Remus, filii deī armōrum, Rōmam aedificāverunt. Itaque proelia et bella animōs Rōmānōrum dēlectāverunt. Mercurium et Neptūnum et Vestam Rōmānī adōrābant. Mercurius, nūntius deōrum, imperia deōrum incolis terrārum (*the earth*) nārrābat. Neptūnum, deum aquārum et oceanī, nautae adōrābant. Fēminae Vestam, deam focī (*hearth*), adōrābant et eī deae multa dōna parābant.

LESSON XXI

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AND PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

159. The Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect Indicative Active of the Third Conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of the verb *regō* (660). What are the present and perfect stems?

a. Observe that the personal endings, except in the first person singular of the future, are the same as in the first and second conjugations.

b. Observe that the differences between this conjugation and the first and second conjugations are in the present and future tenses.

c. Observe that in the present tense the *e* of the present stem *rege-* disappears before *ō* in the first person, just as happened in *ama-ō*; and that it becomes *u* in the third person plural, while in the other persons it is *i*. The inflection is like that of *erō*, future of *sum*.

d. Observe that the future does not use *-bi-* as a tense sign, but has *-a-* in the first person singular, and *-e-* in the other persons.

e. Give heed to the quantities and the accents. Inflect like *regō* the verbs in the following vocabulary.

160.

VOCABULARY

bene, adv., well (*benevolent*)

hodiē, adv., to-day

ōlim, adv., once, formerly

tum, adv., then

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, lead
(*conduct*)

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy
(*preëmption*)

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, send
(*remit*)

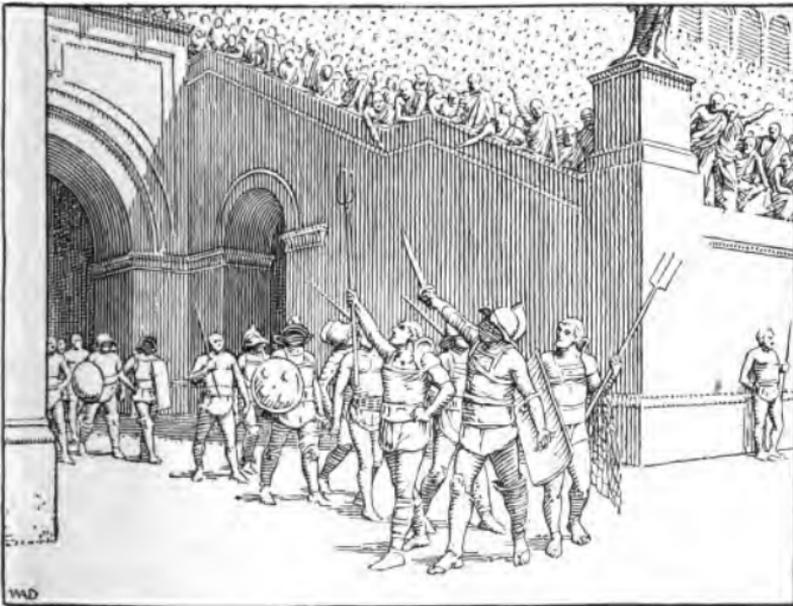
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, rule,
manage (*regent*)

EXERCISES

161. 1. *Regit, regēbat, reget.* 2. *Emō, emēbam, emam.*
3. *Dūcunt, dūcent, dūcēbat.* 4. *Rēxit, rēxērunt, dūxit.* 5. *Dūxērunt, ēmistī, ēmistis.* 6. *Mīsī, mīsimus, mīsīt.* 7. *Mittimus,*

mittunt, mittent. 8. Is agricola multōs agrōs habet. 9. Frūmentum in oppidum magnum nāvigiis mittet. 10. Frūmentum in vicum equis validis mittet. 11. Quis eōs equōs in viā dūcet? 12. Filiū agricolae, Mārcus et Galba, equōs dūxērunt et hodiē dūcent. 13. Tum arma nova ement. 14. Ōlim Rōmānī Italiam bene rēxērunt.

162. 1. They rule, they were ruling, they will rule. 2. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 3. I have bought, we bought, they bought. 4. I am sending, I shall send, I have sent. 5. You send, you will send, you have sent. 6. The Romans once had many lands. 7. Often they did not rule these lands well. 8. Then the allies sent assistance. 9. What girls spent the winter in Italy? 10. I shall send a lieutenant with these captives into Italy.



GLADIATORS ENTERING THE ARENA

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XV-XXI

163. Give the English meanings of the following words:

adōrō	causa	hiemō	mittō	regō
aedificō	compleō	hodiē	nāvigium	scūtum
aeger	cum	imperium	ōlim	studium
animus	cūra	in	periculum	teneō
arma	dēfessus	is	prō	tum
armō	diū	itaque	properō	vīcus
bene	dūcō	lēgātus	pugnō	vulnerō
captivus	emō	locus	quō	

164. Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

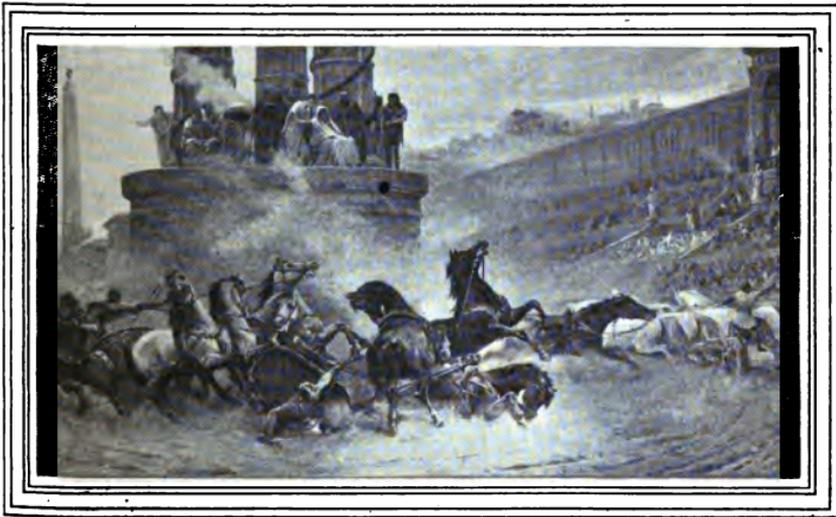
lead	rule	zeal, eagerness
once, formerly	place	care, anxiety
peril	equip, arm	arms
with	sick	pray to, worship
before, for, in defense of	shield	hold, keep
then	spend the winter	hasten
whither?	this, that	captive
village	into, to	to-day
tired out, weary	send	cause, reason
feeling, mind	well	buy
fight	lieutenant, envoy	command, power
wound	fill	and so, therefore
for a long time, long	build	boat

165. Decline each noun and each adjective in 163. Conjugate each verb in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active. Give the principal parts of each verb in 68, 115, and 163. Conjugate each verb in 163 in the perfect indicative active. Decline *is* and *quis*.

166. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 163. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

167. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. Ablative of means
2. Ablative of manner
3. Ablative of accompaniment



A RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

LESSON XXII

READING LESSON

168.

VOCABULARY

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing

cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete

Daedalus, -i, *m.*, Dædalus, father
of Icarus

iam, *adv.*, now, already

↳ **Īcarus**, -i, *m.*, Icarus

↳ **-que**, *conj.*, *enclitic* (22), and

quoque, *adv.*, also, too

aptō, **aptāre**, **aptāvī**, **aptātus**, fit,

fit to, adjust (*adapt*)

cōnfirmō, **cōnfirmāre**, **cōnfirmāvī**,

cōnfirmātus, strengthen, en-
courage (*confirmation*)

dēcidō, **dēcidere**, **dēcidī**, —, fall
off, fall down (*deciduous*)

finḡō, **finḡere**, **finxī**, **fictus**, fash-
ion, devise (*fiction*)

postulō, **postulāre**, **postulāvī**, **pos-
tulātus**, demand (*postulate*)

solvō, **solvere**, **solvi**, **solūtus**, loose
(*solve*)

volō, **volāre**, **volāvī**, **volātūrus**, fly
(*volatile*)

169.

DE ICARO

MARCUS. Fābulam bonam amicus meus hodiē nārrāvit.

IŪLIA. Dē quō nārrāvit amicus tuus ?

MARCUS. Dē Īcarō, Daedali filiō, puerō miserō.

IŪLIA. Ubi habitābat Īcarus ? In Britannīā ?

MARCUS. Nōn in Britannīā habitābat, sed in Crētā; insulā magnā et clārā. Daedalus filiō ālās finxit et parāvit. Eās ālās Īcarō magnā cum cūrā cērā aptāvit. Ālae Īcarō grātae erant. Tum Daedalus puerum volāre (*to fly*) docuit, sed altius (*too high*) volāvit Īcarus. Itaque sōl (*the sun*) cēram solvit, et ālae dēcidērunt.

IŪLIA. Sed quid dē Īcarō ?

MARCUS. Īcarus quoque dēcidit in ōceanum.

IŪLIA. Ēheu (*alas*), miserum Īcarum !

ROMANI PRO SOCIIS PUGNANT

170. Quod iniūriæ multæ fuērunt, socii nostrī auxiliū postulant. Itaque Rōmāni lēgātum cum viris in terram Helvētiōrum mittent. Is lēgātus iam virōs convocāvit in oppidum. Cibum et carrōs ēmit et virōs gladiis scūtisque armāvit. Socii interim frūmentum parāvērunt. Hodiē lēgātus animōs virōrum cōfirmābit. Tum in agrōs finitimōs virōs dūcet et proelium exspectābit. Locus eius proeli propinquus Helvētiis est. Nostrī viri magnō cum studiō prō sociis pugnābunt et Helvētiōs superābunt. Multōs captivōs in oppidum dūcent. Eī captivi in vicis nostris hiemābunt.



ICARUS IN OCEANUM DECIDIT

LESSON XXIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION

171. The Third Declension. Nouns of the third declension end variously in the nominative singular. They are of masculine, feminine, or neuter gender. Their inflection is illustrated by the following words :

	rēx, m. <i>king</i>	mīles, m. <i>soldier</i>	virtūs, f. <i>valor</i>	caput, n. <i>head</i>	CASE ENDINGS M. AND F. N.	
	SINGULAR					
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	mīles	virtūs	ca'put	-s or —	—
<i>Gen.</i>	rē'gis	mī'litis	virtū'tis	ca'pitis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rē'gī	mī'litī	virtū'tī	ca'pitī	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rē'gem	mī'litem	virtū'tem	ca'put	-em	—
<i>Abl.</i>	rē'ge	mī'lite	virtū'te	ca'pite	-e	-e
	PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i>	rē'gēs	mī'litēs	virtū'tēs	ca'pita	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	rē'gum	mī'litum	virtū'tum	ca'pitum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rē'gibus	mī'lītibus	virtū'tibus	capī'tibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rē'gēs	mī'litēs	virtū'tēs	ca'pita	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	rē'gibus	mī'lītibus	virtū'tibus	capī'tibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. To decline a noun of the third declension it is necessary to know the gender, and the spelling of the nominative and the genitive singular. These things, therefore, must be learned about every noun of this declension. Often an English derivative will suggest the spelling of the genitive singular : as, *capital*, *capitis* ; *military*, *militis*.

b. No adequate rule for the gender of nouns of the third declension can be given. But

Nouns ending in **-tor** are masculine.

Nouns ending in **-tās**, **-tūs**, or **-tūdō**, and most nouns ending in **-iō** are feminine.

Nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar** are neuter.

c. Learn the case endings. Then practice the declension of the nouns above and of those in the vocabulary. Observe that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

d. Decline together *mīles bonus*, *good soldier*; *virtūs nostra*, *our valor*; and *caput parvum*, *small head*.

172.

VOCABULARY

<i>caput, capitis, n.</i> , head (<i>capital</i>)	<i>lapis, lapidis, m.</i> , stone (<i>dilapidate</i>)
<i>dux, ducis, m.</i> , leader, general (<i>conductor</i>)	<i>mīles, militis, m.</i> , soldier (<i>military</i>)
<i>eques, equitis, m.</i> , horseman (<i>equestrian</i>)	<i>pedes, peditis, m.</i> , foot soldier (<i>pedestrian</i>)
et . . . et, <i>conj.</i> , both . . . and	<i>rēx, rēgis, m.</i> , king (<i>regal</i>)
<i>fortiter, adv.</i> , bravely	<i>virtūs, virtūtis, f.</i> , valor, courage (<i>virtue</i>)

EXERCISES

173. 1. Rēgem et ducem hodiē vidī. 2. Capita multōrum peditum vidimus. 3. Et rēgēs et ducēs militēs nostrōs dūxērunt. 4. Etiam equitēs prō rēge et duce fortiter pugnābant. 5. Virtūte et studiō¹ sociōs superāvērunt. 6. Lapidibus et pilis multōs agricolās vulnerāvērunt. 7. Virtūs equitum atque studium peditum lēgātum certē dēlectābit.² 8. Quis iis equitibus scūta emet? 9. Nostrōs militēs in silvās quoque misimus.

174. 1. The commands of the king have been many. 2. We shall approve of the commands of the kings. 3. By the valor of these soldiers we shall overcome the Helvetians. 4. I shall spend the winter with the general. 5. In a town I saw a king. 6. This king was a good general and ruled well. 7. He bought food for the wretched foot soldiers. 8. He sent both arms and grain into that town.

¹ Observe that the ablative of an abstract noun may express means.

² Observe that a singular verb may be used with two subjects, if the subjects are abstract nouns and considered as a single whole.

LESSON XXIV

THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN -IO · THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH · THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

175. The Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō. Certain verbs of the third conjugation differ in inflection from the regular verbs of that conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of **capiō**, *take* (661).

a. Wherein does the inflection of **capiō** differ from that of **regō** in the present? in the imperfect? in the future?

b. Verbs in -iō, with the infinitive in -ere, are conjugated like **capiō**. Like **capiō** inflect in the same tenses **fugiō** and **iaciō** (176).

176.

VOCABULARY

<p>ā (ab), <i>prep. with abl.</i>, away from, from, by (<i>avert</i>)</p> <p>ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>, to, toward (<i>adhere</i>)</p> <p>conloquium, conlo'quī, <i>n.</i>, conference, interview (<i>colloquial</i>)</p> <p>ē (ex), <i>prep. with abl.</i>, out of, from (<i>exit</i>)</p> <p>mūrus, -ī, <i>m.</i>, wall (<i>mural</i>)</p>	<p>pēs, pedis, <i>m.</i>, foot (<i>pedal</i>)</p> <p>capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, take, capture, receive (<i>captive</i>)</p> <p>dimitto, dimittere, dīmisi, dīmissus, send away (<i>dismiss</i>)</p> <p>fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, run away (<i>fugitive</i>)</p> <p>iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, throw, hurl, cast, fling (<i>reject</i>)</p>
---	--

a. **Ab** and **ex** are used instead of **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a vowel or **h**; before consonants either **ā** or **ab**, **ē** or **ex** may be used.

177. The Ablative of Place from Which.

1. **Militēs ab vicō properant**, *the soldiers are hastening away from the village.*
2. **Militēs ex vicō properant**, *the soldiers are hastening out of the village.*
3. **Militēs dē vicō properant**, *the soldiers are hastening from (down from) the village.*

a. Observe that the phrases **ab vicō**, **ex vicō**, and **dē vicō** denote the *place from which* the motion is directed. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Place from Which*. **Ab vicō** (1) indicates that the soldiers started *from the vicinity of* the village; while **ex vicō** (2) indicates that they started from some point or place *within* the village.

178. Rule for the Ablative of Place from Which. *Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

179. The Accusative of Place to Which.

1. **Lēgātōs in oppidum misērunt**, *they sent ambassadors into the town.*

2. **Lēgātōs ad oppidum misērunt**, *they sent ambassadors to the town.*

a. Observe that the phrases **in oppidum** and **ad oppidum** denote the *place to which* the motion is directed. This usage is known as the *Accusative of Place to Which*.

180. Rule for the Accusative of Place to Which. *Place to which is expressed by the accusative with ad or in.*

EXERCISES

181. 1. **Capiet, capit, capiunt.** 2. **Iaciō, iaciam, iaciēbam.**
 3. **Cēpērunt, iēcit, iēcimus.** 4. **Fūgimus, fugimus, dimisimus.**
 5. **Ex conloquiō fugiunt.** 6. **Ab vicō in agrōs fugient.** 7. **Dē oppidō ad oceanum fūgit.** 8. **Quī litterās ad rēgem misērunt?**
 9. **Dē mūrīs eius oppidi pīla iēcērunt.** 10. **Dēfessōs militēs ex proeliō dimisit.** 11. **Cūr ab eō locō fugis?** 12. **Carrōs nostrōs capient.**

182. 1. He will hurl, they will hurl, they hurl. 2. You throw, you will throw, you have thrown. 3. They wounded the feet of the horsemen. 4. I shall hasten from Italy into the province. 5. Both women and girls were fleeing from the fields. 6. They have hastened from Germany into Italy. 7. He led the tribune to the conference.

LESSON XXV

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE · PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES EXPRESSING CAUSE

183.

VOCABULARY

<p>centuriō, centuriōnis, <i>m.</i>, centurion</p> <p>corpus, corporis, <i>n.</i>, body (<i>corporal</i>)¹</p> <p>doleō, dolere, dolui, dolitūrus, grieve (<i>doleful</i>)</p> <p>explōrātor, explōrātōris, <i>m.</i>, scout (<i>explore</i>)</p> <p>homō, hominis, <i>m.</i>, man (<i>homicide</i>)</p>	<p>inopia, -ae, <i>f.</i>, want, lack</p> <p>ob, <i>prep. with acc.</i>, on account of</p> <p>pater, patris, <i>m.</i>, father (<i>paternal</i>)</p> <p>propter, <i>prep. with acc.</i>, on account of</p> <p>soror, sorōris, <i>f.</i>, sister (<i>sorority</i>)</p> <p>vulnus, vulneris, <i>n.</i>, wound (<i>vulnerable</i>)</p>
---	---

a. Decline centuriō miser, corpus magnum, homō dēfessus, id vulnus.

184. The Ablative of Cause.

1. Lēgātus militem virtūte laudāvit, *the lieutenant praised the soldier for (because of, on account of) his valor.*
2. Peditēs viā longā sunt dēfessī, *the foot soldiers are tired out with (from, because of) the long march.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **virtūte** and **viā** denote *cause* or *reason*. Observe the various prepositions used in translating these ablatives: *for, with, from, because of, on account of*. This ablative answers the question *why?* and is known as the *Ablative of Cause*.

185. Rule for the Ablative of Cause. *The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause.*

186. Prepositional Phrases expressing Cause. Cause may also be expressed by a prepositional phrase consisting of **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, or of **dē** or **ex** with the ablative:

¹ See 171, *a.*

1. **Lēgātus militem ob (propter) virtūtem laudāvit**, *the lieutenant praised the soldier on account of his courage.*
 2. **Multis dē causis in Italiam properābunt**, *for many reasons they will hurry into Italy.*
- a. Observe the translation of **dē** in the phrase **dē causis**.

EXERCISES

187. 1. **Multis dē causis Rōmāni auxilium nōn misērunt.**
 2. **Lapidibus pilisque eōs hominēs vulnerāvērunt.** 3. **Multa vulnera in capitibus et in corporibus habent.** 4. **Hodiē patrēs vulneribus filiōrum dolēbunt.** 5. **Dux noster magnā victōriā centuriōnēs laudābit.** 6. **Perīculum explōrātōrum militēs terruit.** 7. **Tum in mūrōs oppidi ob iniūriās nōn fugiēbātis.** 8. **Propter inopiam cibi¹ magnō in periculō fuimus.** 9. **Lēgātus equitēs et peditēs ad conloquium dūxit.**



CENTURIO

188. 1. We have often been tired because of wounds. 2. I shall praise our soldiers because of their courage and zeal. 3. Our fathers will fight for a long time and will capture much booty. 4. Which centurion was throwing javelins down from the wall? 5. On account of a lack of food and water Marcus and Galba, the centurions, did not fight with courage. 6. My sister is now grieving because the women of Britain are wretched. 7. In the meantime the scouts related the commands of the general.

¹ This is a new usage of the genitive case. As used here, the genitive denotes that of which something consists or is made. It is called the *Genitive of Material*.

LESSON XXVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION: I-STEMS

189. The Third Declension: *i*-Stems. Certain nouns of the third declension have *i*-stems. These include:

1. Nouns which end in **-is** or **-ēs** in the nominative singular and have no more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative.

2. Neuters ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.

3. Nouns ending in **-ns** or **-rs**.

4. Monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x**, with a consonant preceding the **-s** or **-x**.

These nouns show the following peculiarities of declension:

1. The genitive plural ends in **-ium**.

2. The accusative plural of masculines and of feminines ends in **-is** or **-ēs**.

3. The nominative and the accusative plural of neuters end in **-ia**.

4. The ablative singular of neuters and of a few other words ends in **-ī**.

The declension of nouns having *i*-stems is illustrated by the following paradigms:

	hostis, m., <i>enemy</i> STEM <i>hosti-</i>	mare, n., <i>sea</i> STEM <i>mari-</i>	cohors, f., <i>cohort</i> STEM <i>cohorti-</i>	mōns, m., <i>mountain</i> STEM <i>monti-</i>
	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	hos'tis	ma're	co'hors	mōns
<i>Gen.</i>	hos'tis	ma'ris	cohor'tis	mon'tis
<i>Dat.</i>	hos'ti	ma'ri	cohor'tī	mon'ti
<i>Acc.</i>	hos'tem	ma're	cohor'tem	mon'tem
<i>Abl.</i>	hos'te	ma'ri	cohor'te	mon'te

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hos'tēs	ma'ria	cohor'tēs	mon'tēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hos'tium	ma'rium	cohor'tium	mon'tium
<i>Dat.</i>	hos'tibus	ma'ribus	cohor'tibus	mon'tibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hos'tīs (-ēs)	ma'ria	cohor'tīs (-ēs)	mon'tīs (-ēs)
<i>Abl.</i>	hos'tibus	ma'ribus	cohor'tibus	mon'tibus

a. For the guidance of the learner, in the succeeding vocabularies nouns having i-stems will be followed by the stem.

b. Decline each noun in 190.

190.

VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis (civi-), <i>m.</i> , citizen (<i>civil</i>)	mare, maris (mari-), <i>n.</i> , sea (<i>maritime</i>)
cohors, cohortis (cohorti-), <i>f.</i> , cohort	mōns, montis (monti-), <i>m.</i> , mountain (<i>mount</i>)
collis, collis (colli-), <i>m.</i> , hill	nāvis, nāvis (nāvi-), <i>f.</i> , ship (<i>navigate</i>)
finis, finis (fini-), <i>m.</i> , end; <i>plur.</i> , territories (<i>finish</i>)	urbs, urbis (urbi-), <i>f.</i> , city (<i>urban</i>)
hostis, hostis (hosti-), <i>m.</i> , enemy (<i>hostile</i>)	
ignis, ignis (igni-), <i>m.</i> , fire (<i>ignite</i>)	

EXERCISES

191. 1. Victōria hostium cīvis urbis Rōmae terruit. 2. Collis et montis Italiae nōn vidī. 3. Explōrātōrēs et centuriōnēs ex finibus Sabīnōrum fūgērunt. 4. Rōmānī multās nāvis et nāvīgia in marī habuērunt. 5. Magnō periculō civēs cibum frūmentumque in urbem portant. 6. Cohortēs quoque mittēmus et hostis superābimus. 7. Propinquum montī erat oppidum. 8. Virtūs civium grāta ducī fuit.

192. 1. Have we many ships to-day? 2. Formerly they lived on the hills and mountains. 3. The territories of the Romans were wide. 4. These citizens are not fit for war. 5. Our soldiers have captured many cities of Greece. 6. Who are throwing javelins down from the walls of the cities? 7. Boys see great fires in the city.

LESSON XXVII

THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

193. Prepositions with the Accusative. The following prepositions are used with the accusative :

<p>ad, to, toward, against (<i>adverse</i>)</p> <p>ante, before, in front of (<i>antecedent</i>)</p> <p>apud, near, with, among</p> <p>contrā, against (<i>contradict</i>)</p> <p>in, into, against (<i>inspire</i>)</p> <p>inter, between (of two objects),</p>	<p>among (of more than two objects) (<i>intervene</i>)</p> <p>ob, on account of, because of</p> <p>per, through (<i>perennial</i>)</p> <p>post, after, behind (<i>postpone</i>)</p> <p>propter, on account of, because of</p> <p>trāns, across (<i>transatlantic</i>)</p>
--	--

194. Prepositions with the Ablative. The following prepositions are used with the ablative :

<p>ā, ab, away from, from, by (<i>ablative</i>)</p> <p>cum, with (<i>compete</i>)</p> <p>dē, down from, concerning (<i>depose</i>)</p> <p>ē, ex, out of, from (<i>expose</i>)</p>	<p>in, in, at, on (<i>insist</i>)</p> <p>prō, in front of, in behalf of (<i>protect</i>)</p> <p>sine, without (<i>sinecure</i>)</p>
---	--

a. Which preposition is used with both cases? With what difference in meaning?

b. Learn the meanings of all these prepositions.

195. Methods of saying "to," "on account of," "because of," and "with" in Latin :

a. To : If the phrase expresses the *indirect object*, use the dative.

If the phrase occurs with a verb of *motion* (as **mittō**), use **ad** or **in** with the accusative.

b. On account of, because of : Use either **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, or use the ablative.

Remember that the preposition **dē** or **ex** is used in certain phrases (as, **multis dē causis**, *for many reasons*).

c. With: If the phrase expresses *means*, use the ablative.

If the phrase expresses *manner*, use the ablative with **cum**; omit **cum**, if you wish, when there is an adjective in the phrase.

If the phrase expresses *accompaniment*, use the ablative with **cum**.

If the phrase expresses *cause*, use either **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, or use the ablative of cause.

196. Adjectives used as Nouns.

Adjectives are often used as nouns (III, *f*); as, **amicus**, -i, m.,

a friend, from **amicus**, a, -um, *friendly*; **multa**, -ōrum, n., *many things*, from **multi**, -ae, -a, *many*. So also **finitimī**, *neighbors*, and **nostrī**, *our men*.



EQUES ROMANUS

EXERCISES

197. 1. Nostrī centuriōnem inter captivōs vidērunt. 2. Finitimī propter eam victōriam Rōmānōrum dolent. 3. Cūr cohortēs per silvās ad oppidum fugiēbant? 4. Cum cūrā vestrās filiās libris docuistis. 5. Equitēs et peditēs ante portam sunt. 6. Sine periculō in urbe manēbimus. 7. Atque multa ex eā urbe portāvērunt. 8. Trāns agrum lātum explorātōrēs dūcīt. 9. In prōvinciā cum multis militibus fuit.

198. 1. After this battle he will send our men into Germany. 2. They captured the town without help. 3. The neighbors were fighting bravely against the enemy. 4. In front of the town was a hill. 5. Near the lieutenant a messenger was waiting. 6. We shall hurry through Italy and shall spend the winter among those mountains.

LESSON XXVIII

READING LESSON

199.

VOCABULARY

exemplum , -i, <i>n.</i> , example	tergum , -i, <i>n.</i> , back ; ā tergō , in the rear
factum , -i, <i>n.</i> , act, deed (<i>fact</i>)	terror , terrōris ; <i>m.</i> , terror, fear
Horātius , Horāti , <i>m.</i> , Horatius, a Roman	Tiberis , -is (<i>acc. -im</i>), <i>m.</i> , Tiber, a river
nam , <i>conj.</i> , for	timidus , -a, -um, fearful (<i>timid</i>)
paucī , -ae, -a, <i>plur.</i> , few, only a few (<i>paucity</i>)	dēfendō ; dēfendere , dēfendī , dēfēnsus , defend (<i>defense</i>)
pōns , pontis (ponti), <i>m.</i> , bridge (<i>pontoon</i>)	obsideō , obsidēre , obsēdī , obsessus , besiege
Porsena , -ae, <i>m.</i> , Porsena, a king of Etruria	servō , servāre , servāvī , servātus , save, protect (<i>preserve</i>)
Sublicius , -a, -um, Sublician (resting on piles)	sustineō , sustinēre , sustinuī , sustentus , hold up, sustain, hold in check
tandem , <i>adv.</i> , at last, finally	

HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

200. Porsēna, Rōmānōrum hostis, rēx fuit clārus. Ōlim urbem Rōmam obsidēbat. Magnus erat terror Rōmānōrum, quod Porsena multōs militēs habēbat. Timidae fēminae in templis deōs adōrābant. Sed virtūs validi viri Rōmam dēfendit. Nam paucis cum sociis prō ponte Subliciō Horātius hostis sustinuit. Cīvēs interim ā tergō pontem solvunt et rescindunt (*break down*). Tum sociōs Horātius dimittit et pontem contrā hostis dēfendit. Tandem dēcidit pōns, et inter pīla hostium Horātius in Tiberim dēsilit (*jumps down*) et ad sociōs natat. Id exemplum virtūtis Rōmam servāvit. Hodiē facta Horāti laudāmus.

201.

VOCABULARY

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, struggle (*contend*)

cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily

ferē, *adv.*, almost

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul (*Gallic*)

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul (inhabitant of Gaul)

Germānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Germans

Hispānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Spaniards

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain

incolō, incolere, incolui, —, dwell in, inhabit

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly

nātiō, nātiōnis, *f.*, race, people, tribe (*national*)

nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, Rhine (*Rhenish*)

timeō, timēre, timui, —, fear, dread

DE NATIONIBUS EUROPAE

202. Hispānia et Gallia et Germānia erant nātiōnēs Eurōpae. Proxima oēanō erat Hispānia. Galli inter Hispāniam et Germāniam, Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant. Germānī paucōs vicōs etiam in Galliā habēbant. Quod eae nātiōnēs hostēs erant, Rōmānī cum Hispānīs et Gallīs et Germānīs saepe pugnāvērunt.

Inter Galliam et mare erat nova prōvincia Rōmae. Incolae eius prōvinciae iniuriās Gallōrum diū sustinuērunt. Tandem ab Rōmānīs auxilium postulāvērunt; nam Helvētiōs finitimōs magnopere timēbant. Helvētīi nōn solum prōvinciae sed etiam Germānīs inimicī erant et cum Germānīs cotidiānīs ferē proeliis contendēbant.



HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XXII-XXVIII

203. Give the English meanings of the following words :

ā, ab	dēcidō	homō	nāvis	rēx
ad	dēfendō	hostis	nōn solum . . .	servō
ante	dimitto	iaciō	sed etiam	sine
apud	domō	iam	ob	solvō
capīō	dux	ignis	obsideō	soror
caput	ē, ex	incolō	pater	sustineō
centuriō	eques	inopia	paucī	tandem
cīvis	et . . . et	inter	pedes	tergum
cohors	exemplum	lapis	per	terror
collis	explōrātor	magnopere	pēs	timeō
cōnfirmō	factum	mare	pōns	timidus
conloquium	ferē	miles	post	trāns
contendō	fingō	mōns	postulō	urbs
contrā	finis	mūrus	propter	virtūs
corpus	fortiter	nam	-que	volō
cotidiānus	fugiō	nātiō	quoque	vulnus

204. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

sister	back	after	on account of, because of
few, only a few	wall	and	near, with, among
fly	without	father	conference, interview
both . . . and	bridge	head	to, toward, against
across	enemy	daily	from, away from
hill	now	defend	not only . . . but also
foot soldier	horseman	stone	throw, hurl, cast
ship	at last	before	valor, courage
grieve	soldier	centurion	leader, general
fear, dread	bravely	for	fashion, devise
mountain	citizen	fall down	dwell in, inhabit
city	terror	loose	between, among

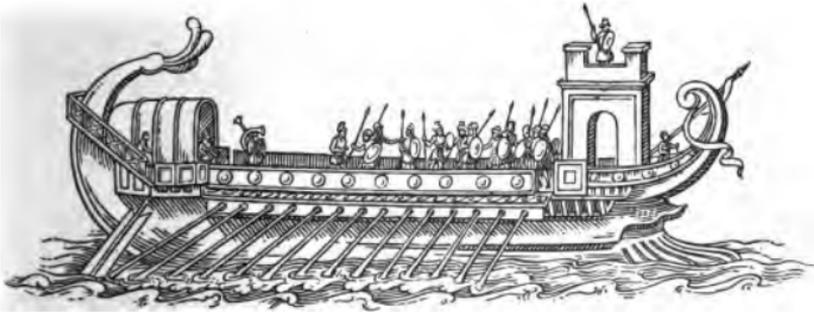
take, capture	king	sea	race, people, tribe
fire	greatly	foot	end, territories
struggle	scout	flee	strengthen, encourage
man	against	body	hold up, sustain, hold in check
wound	lack, want	besiege	act, deed
send away	demand	cohort	example
out of, from	through	almost	save, protect
fearful			

205. Decline each noun in 203. Give the principal parts of each verb. Conjugate each verb of the third conjugation in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active. Use each preposition in a Latin phrase. Which nouns have *i*-stems?

206. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 203. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

207. Give the rule, if there is one, for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

1. Ablative of place from which
2. Accusative of place to which
3. Ablative of cause
4. Prepositional phrases expressing cause
5. Prepositions with the accusative
6. Prepositions with the ablative
7. Adjectives used as nouns



NAVIS

LESSON XXIX

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

208. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Besides the adjectives of the first and second declensions there are also adjectives of the third declension. They use the endings of the third declension of nouns.

a. Some of these adjectives have the same form for the nominative singular of all three genders: as, **audāx**, *bold*. Others have the same form for the masculine and feminine nominative singular, but a different form for the neuter nominative singular: as, **brevis**, *breve*, *short*. Still others have a different form in the nominative singular for each gender: as, **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *keen*, *eager*.

b. Learn the declension of **audāx**, **brevis**, and **ācer** (644).

c. Observe that the adjectives having two or three endings in the nominative singular have only -ī in the ablative singular. Adjectives of one ending more often have -ī than -e in the ablative. Compare the endings of these adjectives with the endings of nouns having i-stems (189). What differences are there?

d. Decline **proellum ācre**, *keen battle*; **corpus breve**, *short body*; **hostis audāx**, *bold enemy*; **vir ācer**, *bold man*.

209.

VOCABULARY

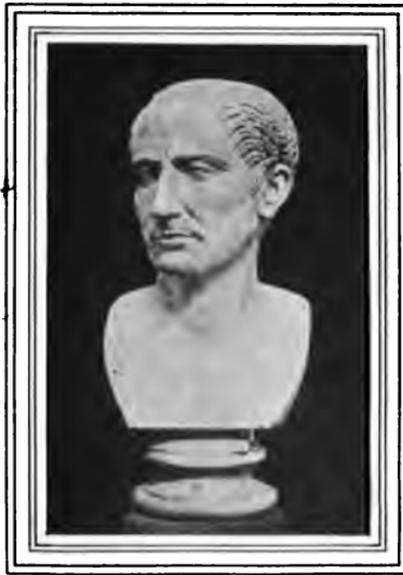
<p>ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen</i>, <i>eager</i>, <i>sharp</i> (<i>acrid</i>)</p> <p>audāx, audācis, <i>bold</i> (<i>audacious</i>)</p> <p>brevis, -e, <i>short</i>, <i>brief</i> (<i>brevity</i>)</p> <p>Caesar, Caesaris, <i>m.</i>, <i>Cæsar</i></p> <p>commūnis, -e, <i>common</i> (<i>community</i>)</p>	<p>fortis, -e, <i>brave</i>, <i>strong</i> (<i>fortitude</i>)</p> <p>gravis, -e, <i>heavy</i>, <i>severe</i> (<i>gravity</i>)</p> <p>labor, labōris, <i>m.</i>, <i>toil</i>, <i>hardship</i> (<i>laborious</i>)</p> <p>omnis, -e, <i>all</i>, <i>every</i>, <i>the whole</i> (<i>omnipresent</i>)</p> <p>potestās, pōtestātis, <i>f.</i>, <i>power</i></p>
---	---

NOTE. In the vocabularies the genitive singular will be given of adjectives of one ending; but in the case of adjectives of two or of three endings all the forms of the nominative singular will be given.

EXERCISES

210. 1. Caesar dux audāx Rōmānōrum erat. 2. Magna fuit potestās eius ducis. 3. Omnēs militēs Caesarem magnopere amābant, quod hostis saepe superāvit. 4. Labōrēs militum in bellō saepe erant gravēs. 5. Hostēs multi et ācrēs erant et multa pīla contrā Rōmānōs iaciēbant. 6. Sed nostrae cohortēs propter commūne periculum nōn fūgērunt. 7. Prō Rōmā fortiter pugnāvērunt. 8. Breve erat id bellum.

211. 1. The sword of the Romans was both short and heavy. 2. The foot soldier had a bold comrade. 3. Our men were carrying many heavy things. 4. To all my friends I shall give gifts. 5. The leader of the eager horsemen was grieving because of many hardships. 6. He dismissed all the tribunes from the conference.



CÆSAR

LESSON XXX

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

212. The Fourth Conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of **audiō** (662).

a. Compare the inflection of **audiō** with that of **capiō**. Observe that three forms of **audiō** in the present differ in quantity from the corresponding forms of **capiō**: **audis**, **audimus**, **auditis**. In other respects the inflection is identical with that of **capiō**.

b. Inflect like **audiō** in the same tenses **reperiō**, *find*, and **veniō**, *come*.

213.

VOCABULARY

flūmen, **flūminis**, *n.*, river (*fluent*)
nōbilis, *-e*, noble, of high birth
(nobility)
audiō, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus**, hear
(audible)

oppugnō, **oppugnāre**, **oppugnāvī**,
oppugnātus, attack (*impugn*)
reperiō, **reperire**, **repperī**, **reperitus**,
find (repertory)
veniō, **venire**, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, come
(invent)

EXERCISES

214. 1. **Audiō**, **audiēbam**, **audiam**. 2. **Auditne?** **audiēbat**, **audiet**. 3. **Audiunt**, **audiēbant**, **audient**. 4. **Audimus**, **audīvimus**, **audiētis**. 5. **Audīvī**, **audis**, **audivērunt**. 6. **Venis**, **venit**, **vēnistī**. 7. **Vēnit**, **venīmus**, **vēnimus**. 8. **Reperisne?** **repperistis**, **reperitis**. 9. **Repperī**, **reperit**, **repperit**.

215. 1. He has found, they have found, they came. 2. You are hearing, you did come, he heard. 3. We have heard, we were finding, we came. 4. You are coming, they were finding, we shall come. 5. I shall hear, we hear, they heard. 6. He came, he has come, they hear. 7. They will defend, they have attacked, he has defended.

216.

CONLOQUIUM

MĀRCUS. Hodiē fābulam dē Porsenā et Horātiō audivī.

IŪLIA. Quis fuit Porsena? Rōmānusne erat?

MĀRCUS. Porsena, rēx nōbilis, Rōmānōrum hostis ōlim fuit. Cum militibus audācibus in finis Rōmānōrum vēnit, et urbem Rōmam oppugnābat.

IŪLIA. Fūgēruntne Rōmānī ob periculum?

MĀRCUS. Magnum erat periculum urbis et civium, quod hostēs erant fortēs et ācrēs, sed Rōmānī nōn fūgērunt.

IŪLIA. Cēpitne Porsena Rōmam?

MĀRCUS. Urbem nōn cēpit, quod virtūs validi viri civis dēfendēbat. Paucis cum sociis Horātius prō urbe fortiter pugnābat.

IŪLIA. Diūne hōstēs sustinuit Horātius?

MĀRCUS. Nōn diū, quod hostēs erant multi, et multa pila iaciēbant. Tandem trāns flūmen ad sociōs natāvit. Rōmānī Horātium ob eam virtūtem laudāvērunt.



SOLDIERS MARCHING

LESSON XXXI

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

217.

VOCABULARY

aestās, aestātis, <i>f.</i> , summer	secundus, -a, -um, second (<i>secondary</i>)
annus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , year (<i>annual</i>)	tempus, temporis, <i>n.</i> , time (<i>temporal</i>)
decem, <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i> , ten (<i>decimal</i>)	gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, manage, carry on (<i>vicegerent</i>)
hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i> , winter	primā luce, at dawn
hōra, -ae, <i>f.</i> , hour (<i>horoscope</i>)	bellum gerere, carry on war, wage war
lūx, lūcis, <i>f.</i> , light (<i>translucent</i>)	
nox, noctis (<i>nocti-</i>), <i>f.</i> , night (<i>nocturnal</i>)	
primus, -a, -um, first (<i>primary</i>)	

218. The Ablative of Time.

1. Hominēs aestāte et hieme labōrant, *men toil in summer and in winter.*
2. Decem annis Caesar multa bella gessit, *within ten years Caesar carried on many wars.*

a. Observe that these ablatives are expressions of time. They answer the questions *when?* *in* or *within what time?* This usage of the ablative is known as the *Ablative of Time*. It may be translated by a phrase beginning with *in*, *at*, *within*, or *during*.

219. Rule for the Ablative of Time. *The time at which or within which a thing happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

EXERCISES

- ✓ **220.** 1. Hieme ventī in marī sunt gravēs. 2. Aestāte agricolae in agrīs labōrābant. 3. Primā luce ad Caesarem venient. 4. Caesar bellum fortibus cum hostibus gessit. 5. Omnēs

prōvinciās paucis annis superāvit. 6. Quō tempore noctis in urbem vēnisti? 7. Secundā hōrā proeli decem explorātōrēs capiunt. 8. Nūntius eō tempore lēgātō litterās dēmōnstrāvit.

221. 1. Welcome summer will come in a short time. 2. At the second hour of the night we heard these commands. 3. He found ten wounds on the body of the foot soldier. 4. At dawn Cæsar sent this cohort between the hill and the mountain. 5. They all fled from the province in the first year of the war. 6. Why did they not carry on war with the Romans in the winter?

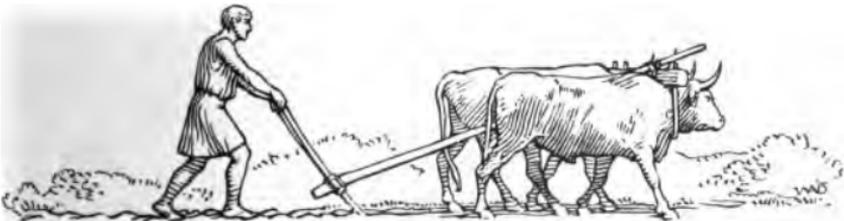
LACONIC SPEECHES¹

222. 1. Amicus olim Spartānum rogāvit: "Cūr mūrōs nōn habet Sparta?" Spartānus respondit: "Nostra urbs mūrōs optimōs (*the very best*) habet, virtūtem incolārum fortium."

2. Rēx Spartānus olim dixit: "Mei civēs numquam rogāverunt, 'Quot sunt hostēs?' sed 'Ubi sunt?'"

3. Hostis ante pugnam Spartānō dixit: "Sōlem propter pilōrum multitudinem et sagittārum nōn vidēbitis." "In umbrā igitur pugnābimus," respondit Spartānus.

¹ The meanings of words that are not given in the vocabularies of the lessons may be found in the general vocabulary.



AESTATE AGRICOLA IN AGRIS LABORAT

LESSON XXXII

THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

223. The Formation of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses. The pluperfect (XXXIII, *b*) and the future perfect (XXXIII, *b*) indicative active of **amō** are inflected as follows:

PLUPERFECT

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. amā'veram, <i>I had loved</i> | amāverā'mus, <i>we had loved</i> |
| 2. amā'verās, <i>you had loved</i> | amāverā'tis, <i>you had loved</i> |
| 3. amā'verat, <i>he had loved</i> | amā'verant, <i>they had loved</i> |

FUTURE PERFECT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. amā'verō, <i>I shall have loved</i> | amāve'rimus, <i>we shall have loved</i> |
| 2. amā'veris, <i>you will have loved</i> | amāve'ritis, <i>you will have loved</i> |
| 3. amā'verit, <i>he will have loved</i> | amā'verint, <i>they will have loved</i> |

a. Observe that the pluperfect is formed by adding the imperfect of **sum** (108) to the perfect stem; and the future perfect by adding the future of **sum** to the perfect stem. One form, however, is not spelled as it is in the inflection of **sum**. Which form?

b. The tense sign of the pluperfect is **-erā-**; of the future perfect, **-eri-**.

c. What are the perfect stems of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**? Inflect the pluperfect and future perfect tenses of these verbs, and of the verbs in 203.

d. What auxiliary verbs (IV, *f*) are to be used in translating these tenses? What English tense is the same as the pluperfect?

e. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect use the perfect stem, and so belong to the perfect system of the verb. Make synopses (671) in this system of the model verbs.

224.

VOCABULARY

civitas, civitatis, *f.*, state, clan
 Labienus, -i, *m.*, Labienus, a Roman officer
 populus, -i, *m.*, people (*population*)

princeps, principis, *m.*, chief (*principal*)
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman
 tēlum, -i, *n.*, weapon

EXERCISES

225. 1. Ēmerint, gesseram, hiemāverātis. 2. Dēmōnstrāverant, audiveris, superāverāmus. 3. Tenuerō, complēveram, armāverās. 4. Habitāveris, vocāverat, mānserō. 5. Nārrāverātis, miserās, fūgerimus. 6. Exspectāveram, doluerō, cōfirmāverit. 7. Sustinuerat, rēxeram, properāveris.

8. Labienus prīncipem virtūte laudāverat. 9. Fortis homō amicōs multōs et ācris habuerit. 10. Caesar bella nōn solum in Galliā sed etiā in Britanniā gesserat. 11. Quō tempore noctis arma cēperis? 12. Galli oppida magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 13. Populus Rōmānus civēs eius civitātis liberāverat.



A GALLIC CHIEFTAIN

226. 1. We shall have frightened, you (*sing.*) had come, you (*plur.*) will have dismissed. 2. He will have fought, he had captured, they had defended. 3. We had led, they will have wounded, he will have thrown. 4. You (*sing.*) will have built, we had found, they will have carried.

5. The Roman people had long held the Gauls in check. 6. The chiefs had called together all the clans. 7. Labienus will have found many weapons in that place. 8. The Gauls had waited for aid. 9. At last we had attacked that hill.

LESSON XXXIII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC* AND *ILLE* · PLACE FROM WHICH AND TO WHICH, IN NAMES OF TOWNS

227. The Demonstratives *Hic* and *Ille*. Review the declension of *is* (654), and learn the declension of *hic* and *ille* (654).

a. Decline *hic princeps, haec civitās, hoc tēlum, ille Gallus, illa nox, and illud tempus.*

228. The Distinction between *Is, Hic, and Ille*. *Is* is used indifferently for *this* or *that* without emphasis (148). *Hic* means *this*, and *ille* *that*, with a certain emphasis. *Hic* is applied to what is *near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. *Ille* is applied to what is *not near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. *Hic* and *ille*, like *is*, are used both as demonstrative adjectives and as demonstrative pronouns: as, *hoc dōnum meum, illud tuum est, this gift is mine, that is yours.* Demonstratives, when used as adjectives, regularly precede their nouns.

229. Place from Which and to Which, in Names of Towns. You have already learned that *place from which* is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*) (178); and that *place to which* is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in* (180). If, however, the *place from which* or *to which* is the name of a town, the prepositions are omitted: as, *Rōmā vēnit, he came from Rome; Rōmam vēnit, he came to Rome.* *Domus, home,* also omits the preposition: *domum vēnit, he came home (homeward).*

230. Complete Rules for Place from Which and to Which.
a. *Place from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*); but with the names of towns, and with *domus*, the preposition is omitted.

b. Place to which is usually expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; but with the names of towns, and with *domus*, the preposition is omitted.

231.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, <i>f. plur.</i> , Athens	frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i> , brother (<i>fraternal</i>)
Capua, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Capua	hic, haec, hoc, <i>dem. pron. or adj.</i> ,
Carthāgō, -inis, <i>f.</i> , Carthage	this
Corinthus, -ī, <i>f.</i> , Corinth ¹	ille, illa, illud, <i>dem. pron. or adj.</i> ,
Delphi, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i> , Delphi	that
domum, <i>acc.</i> , home, homeward	
domō, <i>abl.</i> , from home	

EXERCISES

232. 1. Dux illōs equitēs peditēsque Capuam misit. 2. Tandem ex Italiā Carthāginem propter commūne periculum properāvit. 3. Hī militēs Athēnis vēnerant et in Galliā pugnābant. 4. Secundā illius noctis hōrā nūntium Corinthum misit. 5. Illi lēgātī praedam Rōmam portāverant. 6. Populus audāx in hāc insulā habitāverat. 7. Huic centuriōnī amicus fueram. 8. Ex his finibus omnēs principēs Delphōs fūgerant, quod illō tempore hostēs bellum parābant.

233. 1. From Delphi they had come to Athens. 2. From home my brother hastened to Corinth. 3. Cæsar had sent messengers through those states. 4. In these years the Gauls had been friendly to the Roman people. 5. These enemies will have fought with Cæsar with great courage. 6. This is a javelin, that is a sword.

¹ Most names of towns are feminine.

LESSON XXXIV

READING LESSON

VICTORIA CAESARIS

234. In Galliā multae et fortēs civitatēs erant. Principēs hārum civitātum potestātem imperiaque Rōmānōrum timuērunt. Multōs milites igitur convocāverant et inter montis et collis Rōmānōs exspectābant.

Primō annō belli populus Rōmānus Caesarem contrā Gallōs mīsit. Is dux, cum Labiēnō et peditibus et paucis equitibus,



MILITES ROMANI

ex Italiā aestāte properāvit et sine periculō in finis Gallōrum vēnit. His in locis explorātōrēs Caesaris hostēs repperērunt.

Primā lūce milites Rōmāni Gallōs oppugnāvērunt. Acre erat proelium. Galli lapidibus et tēlis gravibus locum dēfendēbant. Nostrī pila iaciēbant et gladiis hostis sustinēbant. Tandem Galli dēfessi ob inopiam tēlōrum et vulnera trāns flūmen fūgērunt.

Decem annis Caesar multa bella in Galliā gessit et multōs captivōs Rōmam mīsit.

235.

VOCABULARY

Britannī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Britons

Cassivellaunus, -i, *m.*, Cassivellaunus

obses, obsidis, *m.*, hostage

tamen, *adv.*, yet, but, nevertheless

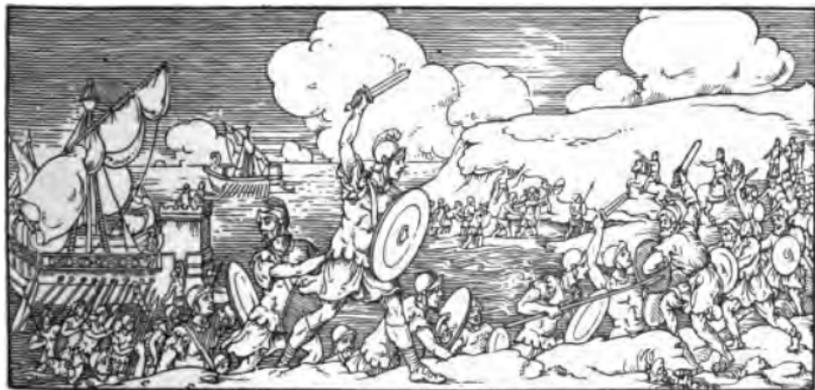
nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus, sail (*navigation*)

occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus, seize, take possession of (*occupy*)

vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus, lay waste (*devastate*)

DE CAESARE ET BRITANNIS

236. Quod Britannī ad Gallōs auxilium saepe miserant, Caesar in insulam Britanniam nāvigāvit. Territi (*although frightened*) magnō numerō nāvium et virōrum, Britannī fortēs magnā cum virtūte prō patriā pugnāvērunt. Tandem tamen ab litore fūgērunt. Post hoc proelium Rōmānī agrōs hostium vāstāvērunt et oppida occupāvērunt et multam praedam cēpērunt. Cassivellaunus, princeps Britannōrum, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misit. Caesar obsidēs postulāvit. Cum his obsidibus et captivīs multīs ex Britannīā in Galliam vēnit. Propter hanc victōriam magna erat potestās Rōmānōrum in Britannīā.



IN BRITANNIAM CAESAR NAVIGAT

LESSON XXXV

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

237. The Passive Voice. In the active voice the subject of the verb is *acting*; in the passive voice it is *acted on* (XXVIII): as,

The general praises the soldier (active).

The soldier is praised by the general (passive).

238. The Present Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation. The present indicative passive of **amō** is inflected as follows:

SINGULAR	PERS. ENDINGS	PLURAL	PERS. ENDINGS
1. a'mor, <i>I am loved</i> (<i>I am being loved</i>)	-r	amā'mur, <i>we are loved</i>	-mur
2. amā'ris, <i>you are loved</i>	-ris	amā'minī, <i>you are loved</i>	-minī
3. amā'tur, <i>he, she, it is loved</i>	-tur	ama'n'tur, <i>they are loved</i>	-ntur

a. Observe that these passive forms differ from the active only in the personal endings. The endings are added to the present stem **amā-** exactly as they were in the active voice.

239. The Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation. Compare the imperfect and the future active and passive of **amō** (658). Observe that the passive endings are added to the tense stems **amābā-** and **amābi-**, exactly as in the active voice, except in the second person singular of the future, where **-bi-** is changed to **-be-**. Learn these tenses of **moneō** (659).

EXERCISES

240. 1. Amat, amātur. 2. Amābat, amābātur. 3. Amābit, amābitur. 4. Amant, amantur. 5. Amābant, amābantur. 6. Amābuntne? amābuntur? 7. Amāmus, amāmur. 8. Moneō,

moneor. 9. Monēbam, monēbar. 10. Monēbō, monēbor.
11. Monēbitis, monēbiminī. 12. Monētis, monēminī.

241. 1. You praise, you are praised. 2. They were praising, they were being praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised.
4. I teach, I am taught. 5. We teach, we are taught. 6. We shall teach, we shall be taught. 7. They teach, they are taught.

242. The Ablative of Agent.

1. **Labiēnus militem laudat**, *Labiēnus praises the soldier.*
2. **Miles ab Labiēnō laudātur**, *the soldier is being praised by Labiēnus.*

a. Observe the changes made in turning the active sentence into the passive: (1) the object in the active becomes the subject in the passive; (2) the subject of the active is expressed in the passive by the ablative with **ab**. This ablative is known as the *Ablative of Agent*.

b. The *agent* is the person doing something. The ablative of *agent* should not be confused with the ablative of *means* (122), which has no preposition: as, **miles lapide vulnerātur**, *the soldier is wounded by a stone*; **miles ā Gallō vulnerātur**, *the soldier is wounded by a Gaul*.

243. *Rule for the Ablative of Agent. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

EXERCISES

244. 1. Hic puer ā frātre meō laudābātur. 2. Haec praeda Rōmam ā Caesare portābitur. 3. Ā quō nōn amātur potestās?
4. Fābulae multae dē Britannīā ab iis nūntiis nārrābuntur.
5. Oppidum ab militibus oppugnātur. 6. In hāc pugnā decem hominēs ā Gallis vulnerantur. 7. Nāvibus frūmentum portābitur.

245. 1. All these Gauls will be held in check by those horsemen. 2. My brothers were praised by that boy. 3. Aid is being awaited by the enemy. 4. A few cohorts were seen by the chief. 5. Rome was loved by all the Romans.

LESSON XXXVI

THE RELATIVE QUI

246. The Relative Quī. The relative *quī*, *who*, *which*, *that*, is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. Compare the declension of the relative *quī* with that of the interrogative *quī* (154).

247. Agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent.

1. *Puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant, the girls whom we praised were good.*
2. *Praemium quod ille homō portat laudātur, the reward which that man is bringing is praised.*
3. *Homō cuius gladium habet est nauta, the man whose sword I have is a sailor.*

a. Observe that the relative (II, *d*) in each sentence refers to a certain word. This word is called its *antecedent* (II, *b*). Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, but that its case is different. Thus, in sentences 1 and 2 it is accusative because it is the object of *laudāvimus* or of *portat*; in sentence 3 it is genitive because it indicates the possessor of *gladium*.

b. A relative clause modifies its antecedent as an adjective modifies its noun.

248. Rule for the Agreement of the Relative. *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the way it is used in its own clause.*

249.

VOCABULARY

cōsiliū, cōnsi'li, *n.*, advice,
plan (*counsel*)

frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain (*frustrate*)

legiō, legiōnis, *f.*, legion (*legionary*)

māter, mātris, *f.*, mother (*maternal*)

mercātor, mercātōris, *m.*, trader,
merchant (*merchandise*)

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who,
which, that, as

turris, turris (turri-), *f.*, tower
(*turret*)

EXERCISES

250. 1. Illa fēmina quam vidēs est māter Cornēliae. 2. Mercātōrēs multa in Germāniam portant. 3. Hostēs ācrēs, ā quibus nostra patria vāstātūr, sunt Rōmānī. 4. Ii hominēs, quōrum virtūte et cōsiliis urbs tenēbātūr, domum ē bellō venient. 5. Turrēs, quae cum cūrā aedificābantūr, ab hostibus vāstābuntūr. 6. Obsidēs quī ā Rōmānis liberantūr Athēnās properābunt. 7. Dux legiōnis quam Caesar trāns flūmen misit erat Labiēnus.

251. 1. The weapons which we have brought are not good. 2. This summer you will fight with Caesar, who is defending the province. 3. I shall praise the plan by which that town is being laid waste. 4. Caesar had ten legions in the wars which he carried on with the Gauls. 5. The woman to whom I showed the way is the mother of this unhappy hostage.



MATER CUM PUERIS

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XXIX-XXXVI

252. Give the English meanings of the following words :

ācer	decem	hōra	nox	qui
aestās	fūmen	ille	obses	reperiō
annus	fortis	labor	occupō	secundus
audāx	frāter	legiō	omnis	tamen
audiō	frūstrā	lūx	oppugnō	tēlum
brevis	gerō	māter	populus	tempus
civitās	gravis	mercātor	potestās	turris
commūnis	hic	nāvigō	prīmus	vāstō
cōnsilium	hiems	nōbilis	prīnceps	veniō

253. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

legion	this	find
come	brother	toil, hardship
that	who, which, that, as	sail
ten	all	advice, plan
summer	mother	in vain
hostage	second	short, brief
time	brave, strong	trader
year	hour	power
river	night	chief
winter	bold	tower
first	manage, carry on, wage	yet, nevertheless
common	state, clan	heavy
light	noble, of high birth	people
weapon	attack	seize, take possession of
hear	keen, eager, shārp	lay waste

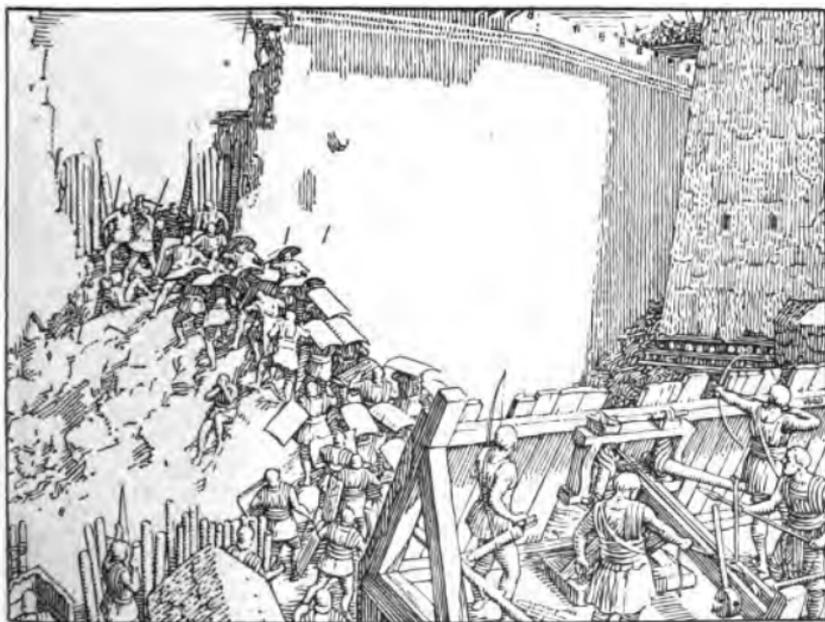
254. Decline each noun and each adjective in 252. Give the principal parts of each verb. Conjugate each verb of the fourth

conjugation throughout the indicative mood. Make synopses (671) of each verb in the third person singular and plural. Decline *hic*, *ille*, and *quī*.

255. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 252. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

256. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. Ablative of time
2. Place from which, in names of towns
3. Place to which, in names of towns
4. Ablative of agent
5. Agreement of the relative



HOSTES CONTRA ROMANOS OPPIDUM DEFENDUNT

LESSON XXXVII

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGO* AND *CAPIO*

257. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *Regō* and *Capiō*. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of *regō* and *capiō*, and learn the passive of the same tenses (660, 661).

a. Observe that to form the passive you have only to substitute the passive personal endings for the active, except in one form. Which one is that, and what is the change?

b. Like *regō* inflect in both voices the same tenses of *dūcō*, *mittō*, and *gerō*; inflect *iaciō* and *recipiō* like *capiō*.

EXERCISES

258. 1. *Regit, regitur.* 2. *Regēbat, regēbātur.* 3. *Reget, regētur.* 4. *Regunt, reguntur.* 5. *Regent, regentur.* 6. *Regis, regeris.* 7. *Regēbās, regēbāris.* 8. *Regēs, regēris.* 9. *Regimus, regimur.* 10. *Regitis, regimini.* 11. *Regam, regar.* 12. *Capiunt, capiuntur.* 13. *Capiēbat, capiēbātur.* 14. *Capiet, capiētur.* 15. *Capient, capientur.* 16. *Capiēs, capiēris.* 17. *Capis, caperis.* 18. *Capiēbās, capiēbāris.*

259. 1. He leads, he is led. 2. They will lead, they will be led. 3. They lead, they are led. 4. You lead, you are led. 5. We shall lead, we shall be led. 6. We send, we are sent. 7. Is he sent? are they sent? 8. He will send; he will be sent. 9. You are sent, you will be sent. 10. They were waging, I was waging. 11. We wage, we shall wage. 12. We throw, we are thrown. 13. We threw, we were being thrown. 14. Who receives? who was being received?

260.

VOCABULARY

castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, camp
(*Lancaster*)

cōsul, cōsulis, *m.*, cōsul (*con-
sular*)

nōn iam, *adv.*, no longer

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace (*pacify*)

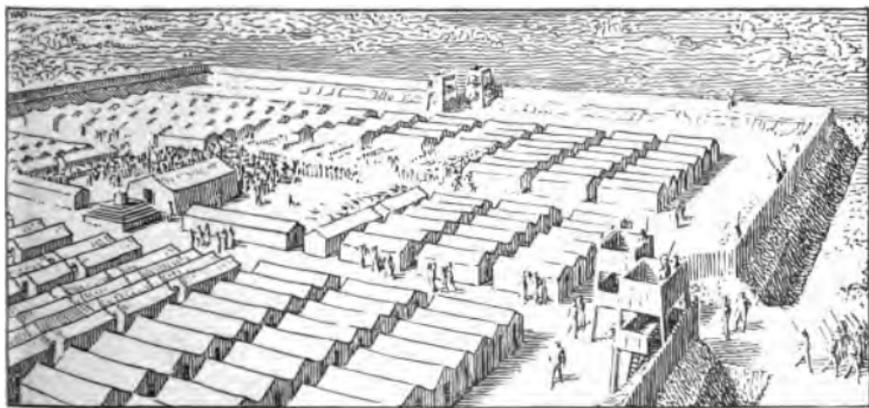
recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus,
receive, welcome (*recipient*)

vincō, vincere, vici, victus, defeat,
conquer (*invincible*)

EXERCISES

261. 1. Lēgātī dē pāce in castra cōsulis vēnērunt. 2. Iam ad cōsulem dūcuntur hī lēgātī. 3. Bene ā cōsule recipientur. 4. Nōn iam urbs hostium dēfenditur. 5. Tēla quae dē mūrīs iaciēbantur multōs vulnerābant. 6. Militēs cōsulis nōn saepe ā Gallis vincuntur. 7. Pāx populō Rōmānō grāta erit.

262. 1. Labienus with only a few cohorts will be sent from Rome into Gaul. 2. Those towns of Gaul will be defended bravely. 3. The legion is being led out of the camp. 4. Many states of Gaul are being conquered to-day. 5. The new plans of our allies were being announced to the neighbors. 6. They will be received by Cæsar, who has conquered the Helvetians.



CASTRÀ ROMANA

LESSON XXXVIII

THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

263. The Personal Pronouns. The personal pronouns (II, *l*) are *ego, I; tū, you; is, he; ea, she; id, it.*

In reality there is no pronoun of the third person in Latin. The demonstrative *is* (148, 228) is so often used as a personal pronoun that it may be classed as the pronoun of the third person. Sometimes the demonstratives *hic* and *ille* are similarly used. Learn the declension of the personal pronouns (652).

264. The Personal Pronouns as Subjects of Verbs. The personal pronouns are expressed as subjects only for emphasis, especially the emphasis of contrast: as, *ego tē laudō, tū mē nōn laudās, I praise you, you do not praise me.*

265. The Reflexive Pronouns. A reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of its clause (II, *h*). Learn the declension of the reflexive pronouns (653).

266. The Use of the Reflexive Pronouns. The use of the reflexive pronouns is illustrated by the following sentences:

1. *Tū tē amās, you love yourself.*
2. *Omnēs hominēs sē amant, all men love themselves.*

a. Observe that *tē* and *sē* refer to the subjects of their sentences.
b. Remember that *is, he; ea, she; and id, it,* are used as personal pronouns, but not as reflexive pronouns; and that *suī* is always a reflexive pronoun, and not a personal pronoun.

267. Relative Clauses referring to Personal Pronouns.

Tū, quī venīs, es amicus meus, you, who are coming, are my friend.

a. Observe that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

268.

VOCABULARY

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily

ego, *pers. pron.*, I (*egotistic*)

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus, kill

is, ea, id, *pers. pron.*, he, she, it

reliquus, -a, -um, rest of, remaining (*relic*)

reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the rest

sui, *reflex. pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves

tempestās, tempestātis, *f.*, weather, storm (*tempest*)

tū, *pers. pron.*, you

EXERCISES

269. 1. Scūtum eius erat grave. 2. Amicī eōrum fuerant militēs. 3. Studium eārum laudātur. 4. Vōbiscum¹ propter tempestātem manēbō. 5. Contrā eōs bellum geritur. 6. Estne Mārcus tēcum? 7. Cum eā ambulābat. 8. Sine vōbis Athēnās properābunt. 9. Nōs sumus miserī, vōs aegrī et dēfessī estis. 10. Omnia vestra cōnsilia nōbīs sunt grāta. 11. Pater et māter eius ab vōbis bene recipiēbantur. 12. Reliquī principēs, quī sē armābant, ad conloquium nōn vērunt. 13. Itaque ad sē centuriōnem vocat et eī cōnsilium nārrat. 14. Cotidiē Caesar peditēs ē castris dūcēbat.

270. 1. His mother and my father saw you. 2. They are now with me. 3. To him, to her, to them I shall give rewards. 4. Their camp is being attacked. 5. I shall hurry into town with you. 6. We shall free ourselves with severe hardship. 7. She has wounded herself with her father's sword. 8. The rest will kill themselves. 9. Their towns are being laid waste by the Gauls this summer.

¹ The preposition **cum** is appended to the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns in the manner of an enclitic (22); so usually to relative and interrogative pronouns.

LESSON XXXIX

THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

271. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *Audiō*. Review the active voice of *audiō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and learn the passive of the same tenses (662)

a. Like *audiō* inflect *impediō*, *hinder*, and *reperiō*, *find*, in the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

EXERCISES

272. 1. Audit, auditor. 2. Audiēbat, audiēbātur. 3. Audiet, audiētur. 4. Audimus, audimur. 5. Audiēmus, audiēmur. 6. Audiam, audiar. 7. Auditis, audīmini. 8. Audiētis, audiēmini. 9. Audis, audiris. 10. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 11. Audiunt, audiuntur. 12. Audiēbant, audiēbantur.

273. 1. I hinder, I am hindered. 2. I was hindering, I was being hindered. 3. I shall hinder, I shall be hindered. 4. They hinder, they are hindered. 5. They will hinder, they will be hindered. 6. He finds, he is found. 7. He found, he was found. 8. He will find, he will be found.

274.

VOCABULARY

aedificium, *aedifi'cī*, *n.*, building
(*edifice*)

Coriolānus, *-ī*, *m.*, Coriolanus
maximē, *adv.*, greatly, very much
(*maximum*)

statim, *adv.*, at once

Veturia, *-ae*, *f.*, Veturia

Volscī, *-ōrum*, *m.*, Volscians

dicō, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictus*, say (*dic-
tion*)

impediō, *impedire*, *impedīvi*, *im-
peditus*, hinder (*impede*)

incitō, *incitāre*, *incitāvī*, *incitātus*,
arouse, impel (*incite*)

praebeō, *praebere*, *praebuī*, *prae-
bitus*, cause, furnish, show

EXERCISES

VETURIA, MATER CORIOLANI

275. Urbī Rōmae ōlim magnum periculum ā Volscīs, quī erant populi Rōmānī hostēs audācēs, praebēbātur. Volscī ā Coriolānō, Rōmānō, incitābantur et dūcēbantur. Iam aedificia multa in agrīs ab hostibus vāstābantur. Civēs sē armābant. Urbs cibō complēbātur ā cōsule. Frūstrā hostēs impediēbantur. Tum periculō magnō Rōmānī mātrem Coriolānī dē pāce ad eum misērunt, quod ea ab filiō maximē amābātur. Veturia, māter Coriolānī, in castra ad filium vēnit. In castris eum repperit. Coriolānus eam vidit et dixit, "Mea patria mē et sociōs meōs vīcit." Statim ab urbe fūgit cum hostibus.

276.

VOCABULARY

autem, *postpositive*¹ conj., but, however, besides

enim, *postpositive* conj., for

perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvi,

perturbātus, disturb, throw into confusion (*perturbation*)

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, put, place (*postpone*)

DE PERSEO

277. Dē Perseō multae fābulae nārrantur ā poētis. Perseus filius fuit Iovis (642), rēgis deōrum. Avus eius Ācrisius fuit. Ille Perseum interficere volēbat²; nam propter imperia deōrum puerum timēbat. Cēpit igitur eum adhūc infantem, et cum mātrem in arcā posuit. Tum in mare arcam iēcit. Danaē, Persei māter, maximē timēbat, tempestās enim magna mare perturbābat. Perseus autem in sinū (*in the arms*) mātris dormiēbat.

¹ Never the first word in the sentencé or clause.

² *interficere volēbat*, *wished to kill*. The infinitive used in this way is called a complementary infinitive (394).

LESSON XL

THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

278. The Possessive Adjectives. The possessive adjectives are as follows :

meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>your</i> (sing.)
noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i>	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> (plur.)
suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i> (own), used reflexively	

a. To show possession the possessive adjectives are used instead of the genitives **meī**, **tui**, **nostrum**, **vestrum**, and **suī**. They may also be used as possessive pronouns : as, **mea**, *mine* ; **nostrī**, *our men*.

279. The Distinction between Suus and the Possessive Genitive of Is.

1. **Miles scūtum eius habet**, *the soldier has his shield* (i. e. somebody else's shield).
2. **Miles suum scūtum habet**, *the soldier has his own shield*.

a. **Eius** (sentence 1) does not refer to the subject ; **suum** (sentence 2) does refer to the subject. **Suus** is always reflexive, but the genitives of **is**, **ea**, **id** are never reflexive.

280. When Possessive Adjectives are used in Latin. When the meaning is clear, a possessive adjective is omitted unless emphatic : as,

1. **Caesar militēs in castra redūxit**, *Cæsar led his soldiers back into camp*.
2. **Caesar suōs militēs in castra redūxit**, *Cæsar led his (own) soldiers back into camp* (but the others he left outside).

281. The Ablative of Separation.

1. **Hic homō cibō caret**, *this man lacks* (is separated from) *food*.
2. **Germānī Rōmānōs ā finibus suis prohibēbant**, *the Germans were keeping the Romans away from their lands*.

a. Observe that the ablative is here used to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the questions *from what? of what?* and is called the *Ablative of Separation*. It is of the same nature as the ablative of *place whence*.

282. Rule for the Ablative of Separation. *Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative without a preposition, or with the prepositions ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

283.

VOCABULARY

postea, adv., afterwards

suus, -a, -um, his (own), her (own),
its (own), their (own)

careō, carere, carui, cariturus, lack,
want (*caret*)

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, dēstitū-
rus, leave off, cease (*desist*)

interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī,

interclūsus, cut off, shut off
(*conclude*)

privō, privāre, privāvī, privātus,
keep from, deprive of (*privati-*
tion)

prohibeō, prohibere, prohibuī, pro-
hibitus, keep away (from), re-
strain (*prohibit*)

EXERCISES

284. 1. Caesar autem suōs militēs trāns flūmen misit.
2. Caesar eius frātre in castris reperiet. 3. Ille vir aeger
aquā privābātur. 4. Postea ea civitās cibō et frūmentō carēbat.
5. Ab aedificiis et pecūniā huius populī militēs diū prohibuit.
6. Ob inopiam armōrum proeliō Germāni dēstitērunt. 7. Nostrī,
quī in castra Germānōrum properāverant, eōs tēlis privāvērunt.
8. Flūmen nostrōs viā interclūdēbat. 9. Apud flūmen
nāvigia ab hostibus eō tempore aedificābantur.

285. 1. Our friends lacked money. 2. The enemy will de-
fend their own buildings. 3. You will free us from care.
4. Cæsar announced to his (men) his plans concerning peace.
5. They will afterwards deprive the Germans of all power.
6. The rest of the chiefs were being shut off from their towns.

LESSON XLI

THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

286. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of All Conjugations.

a. Review the principal parts of **amō**, and notice especially the perfect passive participle. Examine the formation of the perfect indicative passive (658). Observe that it is formed by using the present tense of **sum** with the perfect passive participle **amātus**. Those tenses which are formed with the help of the perfect passive participle belong to the participial system of the verb (671).

b. Examine the pluperfect and the future perfect indicative passive. Observe that they are formed by using the imperfect and the future of **sum** with the perfect passive participle.

c. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of all verbs are formed in the same way.

d. The participle **amātus** is declined like **bonus**; and so in the nominative singular and plural it is changed to agree with the subject of the verb in number and gender. These changes are made because a participle is an adjective in its nature. Observe these changes as illustrated in 287.

e. Recall the principal parts of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of these verbs and of those in 252.

EXERCISES

287. 1. Vir amātus est, fēmina amāta est, bellum amātum est. 2. Virī amātī sunt, fēminae amātae sunt, bella amāta sunt. 3. Militēs moniti erant, puer monitus erit, oppidum monitum erat. 4. Agricola captus est, urbs rēcta est, prōvincia rēcta erat. 5. Captus sum, captus eram, captus erō. 6. Auditus es, auditus erās, auditus eris. 7. Auditi sumus, auditi erāmus, auditi erimus.

288. 1. The Gaul was warned, had been warned, will have been warned. 2. The buildings have been taken, had been taken, will have been taken. 3. The territories had been ruled by the Germans. 4. The cities will have been defended. 5. And so we (*fem.*) shall have been heard.

289.

VOCABULARY

concilium, concil'li, <i>n.</i> , meeting (<i>council</i>)	imperātor, imperātōris, <i>m.</i> , gen- eral, commander (<i>emperor</i>)
ibi, <i>adv.</i> , there	mora, -ae, <i>f.</i> , delay (<i>moratorium</i>)
impedimentum, -i, <i>n.</i> , hindrance; <i>plur.</i> , baggage (<i>impediment</i>)	verbum, -i, <i>n.</i> , word (<i>verbal</i>)

EXERCISES

290. 1. Multa in Italiā oppida ā Rōmānis aedificāta sunt. 2. Paucī Germānī ibi tēlis nostrōrum interfectī sunt. 3. Tua verba ā mē audita erunt. 4. Eō tempore imperātor ab impedimentis carrisque interclūsus erat. 5. Bellum, quod ā Caesare gestum est, longum fuit. 6. Militēs, quī ab eō in Galliam missī sunt, frūmentō caruērunt. 7. Praeda, quae ab imperātōre nostrō capta erat, sine morā Rōmam portāta est. 8. In conciliō suis Caesar dixit, "Cōnsilia mea ab hostibus nōn impedita sunt."

IUPPITER PERSEUM SERVAT (CONTINUED FROM 277)

291. Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vidit, et filium suum servāre cōstituit (*determined to save*). Tranquillum igitur fēcit mare, et arcam ad insulam Seriphum dūxit. Huius insulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam¹ arca ad litus ducta est, Danaē in harēnā dormiēbat. Post breve tempus ā virō reperta est, et ad rēgem adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum bene recēpit, et eis sēdem tūtā in finibus suis praebuit.

¹ Postquam introduces a subordinate clause of time (xx, e).

LESSON XLII

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

292. The Fourth Declension. Nouns of the fourth declension end in the nominative singular in **-us** or **-ū**. Those ending in **-us** are masculine, with a few exceptions; those ending in **-ū** are neuter. These nouns are inflected as follows:

	exercitus, m. <i>army</i>	cornū, n. <i>horn, wing</i>	CASE ENDINGS	
	SINGULAR		MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	exercit <u>us</u>	cor'n <u>ū</u>	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	exercit <u>ūs</u>	cor'n <u>ūs</u>	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	exercit <u>uī</u> (-ū)	cor'n <u>ū</u>	-uī (-ū)	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	exercit <u>um</u>	cor'n <u>ū</u>	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	exercit <u>ū</u>	cor'n <u>ū</u>	-ū	-ū
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	exercit <u>ūs</u>	cor'n <u>ua</u>	-ūs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercit <u>uum</u>	cor'n <u>uum</u>	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercit <u>ibus</u>	cor'n <u>ibus</u>	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercit <u>ūs</u>	cor'n <u>ua</u>	-ūs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercit <u>ibus</u>	cor'n <u>ibus</u>	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus

a. A few nouns of this declension may have the dative and the ablative plural in **-ubus**; such nouns in this book are **lacus**, *lake*, and **portus**, *harbor*.

b. **Domus**, *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are the only feminine nouns of this declension used in this book; and **cornū** is the only neuter so used. Learn the declension of **domus**, which has forms of the second declension as well as those of the fourth (642).

c. Decline **exercitus magnus**, **mea manus**, and **cornū longum**.

293.

VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, coming (*advent*)

commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (of an army) (*cornucopia*)

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home (*domicile*)

exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army (*exercise*)

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake (*lake*)

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, handful, band (of men) (*manufacture*)

palūs, **palūdis**, *f.*, marsh, swamp

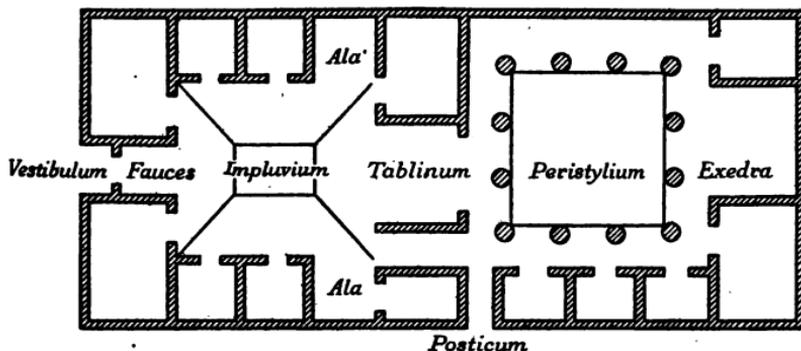
portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor (*port*)

mūniō, **mūnire**, **mūnivi**, **mūnitus**, fortify (*munitions*)

EXERCISES

294. 1. Adventus legiōnum nōs dēlectat. 2. Noster exercitus tamen Germānōs commeātibus interclūsī. 3. Inter nostrōs et hostis erat lacus. 4. Cōsulēs erant exercituum Rōmānōrum imperātōrēs. 5. In cornibus diū et fortiter pugnāverant. 6. Castra Labiēni palūde et lacū mūniēbantur. 7. Graeciae in portubus nāvēs multās hieme vidimus. 8. Manūs hostium spectāvimus.

295. 1. They fight both with feet and with horns. 2. Many lakes are seen by them among the mountains. 3. We had been delighted by the coming of the traders. 4. This house is mine, that is yours. 5. However, at daybreak they carried the supplies from the camp to the harbor. 6. Rome was at once fortified by the hands of the citizens. 7. Why are you hurrying home?



PLAN OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON XLIII

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

296. Degrees of Comparison. Latin adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative. But in Latin, as in English, there are certain adjectives which are not compared.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE
lātus, -a, -um, wide (BASE <i>lāt-</i>)	lātior, lātius, wider
brevis, -e, short (BASE <i>brev-</i>)	brevior, brevius, shorter
audāx, bold (BASE <i>audāc-</i>)	audācior, audācius, bolder
SUPERLATIVE	
lātissimus, -a, -um, widest	
brevissimus, -a, -um, shortest	
audācissimus, -a, -um, boldest	

a. Observe that the comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive the endings *-ior* for the masculine and the feminine, and *-ius* for the neuter; the superlative by adding to the base of the positive *-issimus, -issima, -issimum*.

b. Compare *cārus, grātus, longus, fortis, and gravis*.

c. The comparative may be translated *wider, more wide, rather wide, too wide*; the superlative *widest, most wide, very wide*.

297. The Declension of the Comparative. The comparative is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	lā'tior	lā'tius	lātiō'rēs	lātiō'ra
<i>Gen.</i>	lātiō'ris	lātiō'ris	lātiō'rum	lātiō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	lātiō'rī	lātiō'rī	lātiō'ribus	lātiō'ribus
<i>Acc.</i>	lātiō'rem	lā'tius	lātiō'rēs (-is)	lātiō'ra
<i>Abl.</i>	lātiō're	lātiō're	lātiō'ribus	lātiō'ribus

a. The superlative is declined like **bonus** (643).

b. Decline the positive, the comparative, and the superlative of the adjectives in 296, b.

298.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship

equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack (*impetuous*)

iter, **itineris**, *n.*, way, march, journey (642) (*itinerary*)

senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate (*senator*)

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, make;

impetum facere, to make an attack; **iter facere**, to march, travel

peto, **petere**, **petivī** (**petī**), **petitus**, seek, ask (*petition*)

EXERCISES

299. 1. Quod iter brevius est? 2. Quod iter brevissimum est? 3. Equitātus autem iter per vicōs propinquōs fēcerat. 4. Germānī dē senātū Rōmānō pācem petivērunt. 5. Amicitia sociōrum populō Rōmānō grātissima erit. 6. Noster exercitus impetum in (*against, upon*) hostēs faciet. 7. Hoc flūmen est lātum, sed mare lātius est. 8. Galli in bellō certē fortissimī erant. 9. Ubi civis fortiōrēs vidisti?

300. 1. Your house is very new. 2. The general sent the cavalry by a longer way. 3. The summer in Britain is not very short. 4. This javelin is too heavy. 5. Peace, however, will be sought by all the clans of Gaul. 6. They are making an attack against the turret with little zeal. 7. The army was marching through the woods and swamps.



ROMAN SHOES

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XXXVII-XLIII

301. Give the English meanings of the following words:

adventus	ego	iter	praebeō
aedificium	enim	lacus	privō
amicitia	equitātus	manus	prohibeō
autem	exercitus	maximē	recipiō
careō	faciō	mora	reliqui
castra	ibi	mūniō	reliquus
commeātus	impedimentum	nōn iam	senātus
concilium	impediō	palūs	statim
cōsul	imperātor	pāx	sui
cornū	impetus	perturbō	suus
cotidiē	incitō	petō	tempestās
dēsistō	interclūdō	pōnō	tū
dīcō	interficiō	portus	verbum
domus	is	posteā	vincō

302. Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

daily	horn, wing	but, however, besides
senate	put, place	cause, furnish, show
say	I	seek, ask
army	camp	greatly, very much
lack, want	lake	keep from, deprive of
no longer	kill	he, she, it, they
for	hinder	disturb, throw into confusion
peace	make	leave off, cease
hand, band	meeting	harbor
cut off, shut off	delay	his (own), her (own), its (own)
you	the rest	rest of, remaining
at once	fortify	arouse, impel
house, home	afterwards	keep away, restrain

marsh, swamp	word	cavalry
weather, storm	consul	hindrance, baggage
receive, welcome	coming	general, commander
supplies	building	way, march, journey
there	attack	of himself, of herself, etc.
defeat, conquer	friendship	

303. Decline each noun in 301. Give the principal parts of each verb. Inflect those tenses of *dicō*, *impediō*, *pōnō*, and *privō* which are formed from the present stem. Make synopses of each verb in 301 in the third person singular and plural. Decline *ego*, *is*, and *tū*.

304. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 301. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

305. Give the rule, if there is one, for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. A personal pronoun of each person as the object of a verb
2. A personal pronoun of each person as the subject of a verb
3. A reflexive pronoun of the third person as the object of a verb
4. Ablative of separation



MILITES CASTRA MUNIUNT

LESSON XLIV

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *-ER* OR *-LIS* THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

306. The Comparison of Adjectives in *-er*. Adjectives ending in *-er* are compared as follows :

miser, misera, miserum, <i>wretched</i>	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen</i>	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

a. Observe that the comparative of these adjectives is regular ; but the superlative is formed by adding *-rimus, -rima, -rimum* to the nominative masculine of the positive. Compare similarly *aeger*.

307. The Comparison of Adjectives in *-lis*. The comparative of the following adjectives ending in *-lis* is regular ; but the superlative is formed by adding *-limus, -lima, -limum* to the base of the positive. Learn their meaning and comparison.

facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um

Most other adjectives in *-lis* are compared regularly : as, *nōbilis, nōbilior, nōbilissimus*.

308. The Partitive Genitive.

1. Ille amicus cōpiam pecūniae habet, *that friend has plenty of money.*
2. Multi militum vulnerātī sunt, *many of the soldiers were wounded.*

a. Observe that each genitive denotes a whole, and the word on which it depends denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, of which a part is taken, is called a *Partitive Genitive*.

309. Rule for the Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part may have with them a genitive of the whole from which the part is taken.

a. Numerals and a few other words have the ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the partitive genitive: as, *decem ex militibus*, ten of the soldiers.

310.

VOCABULARY

<i>angustus</i> , -a, -um, narrow (<i>anguish</i>)	<i>lītus</i> , <i>lītoris</i> , <i>n.</i> , shore (<i>littoral</i>)
<i>celer</i> , -eris, -ere, swift, quick (<i>celerity</i>)	<i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i> (<i>parti-</i>), <i>f.</i> , part (<i>partition</i>)
<i>cōpia</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , plenty, supply; <i>plur.</i> , troops (<i>copious</i>)	<i>quinque</i> , <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i> , five (<i>quinquennial</i>)

EXERCISES

311. 1. Magna pars itineris est angusta sed facillima. 2. Primā lūce partem hostium in monte vidimus. 3. Illa omnium urbium viarum brevissima fuit. 4. Hominēs Britanniae hominibus Italiae dissimillimī sunt. 5. Statim decem ex militibus proeliō dēsistunt. 6. In litore fēminae dolēbant quod iter erat difficile. 7. Omnium Gallōrum ācerimī atque celerrimī erant hostēs. 8. Difficillima saepe facillima sunt. 9. Cum civitatibus proximis amicitiam cōfirmābunt.

312. 1. Have we plenty of arms? 2. The march through the mountains will not be easy. 3. Five of my friends will be sent by me by an easier way to the shore. 4. Part of the soldiers were cut off from the rest of the army. 5. Your hand is like mine. 6. This is the easiest of all the ways through the territories of the Gauls.

LESSON XLV

READING LESSON

313.

VOCABULARY

<p>adulēscēns, adulēscētis, m., young man (<i>adolescent</i>)</p> <p>vīta, -ae, f., life (<i>vital</i>)</p> <p>appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, call, name (<i>appeal</i>)</p>	<p>expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus, take by storm, capture</p> <p>iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātūrus, swear, take oath (<i>abjure</i>)</p>
---	---

SCIPIO ET HANNIBAL

314. Scipiō et Hannibal erant clārissimī imperātōrēs. Ille (*the former*) erat Rōmānus, quī victōriās magnās reportāvit; hic (*the latter*) Poenus, quī Rōmānōs multis pugnis vicit. Hannibal puer¹ ad ārās ā patre adductus est. Ibi odium iūrāvit in² Rōmānōs. Adulēscēns oppida multa in Hispāniā expugnāvit, tum Alpīs montis superāvit³ Rōmānōsque saepe vicit in Italiā. Scipiō ad⁴ Ticinum flūmen vitam patris virtūte servāvit posteaque ad⁴ Cannās contrā Hannibalem sē fortem praebuit. Bellum in Āfricam trānsportātum est ibique Scipiō Hannibalem ad⁴ Zamam superāvit. Ā Rōmānis appellātus est Āfricānus.

315.

VOCABULARY

<p>nātūra, -ae, f., nature, character (<i>natural</i>)</p> <p>omninō, adv., wholly, altogether, entirely</p> <p>primum, adv., first, at first</p> <p>accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, receive (<i>accept</i>)</p>	<p>discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrus, withdraw</p> <p>pervenio, pervenire, pervēnī, perventūrus, come through, reach, arrive</p> <p>quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesītus, seek, ask (<i>inquire</i>)</p>
---	--

¹ puer, when a boy. ² in, against. ³ superāvit, passed over. ⁴ ad, near.

PERSEUS MEDUSAM QUAERIT (CONTINUED FROM 291)

316. Perseus adulēscēns ex insulā Seriphō discessit, et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesivit. Diū frūstrā eam quaerēbat, nam nātūram loci ignōrābat. Tandem Mercurius et Minerva ei viam dēmōstrāvērunt. Primum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Hārum auxiliō tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Mercurius et Minerva ei falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum, postquam tālāria pedibus induit,¹ in āera² ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum reliquis Gorgonibus incolēbat. Gorgones mōnstra erant quārum capita anguibus omnīnō contēcta³ erant. Manūs autem ex aere⁴ erant factae.

¹ pedibus induit, *put on his feet.* ² āera, acc. of aēr. ³ contēcta, from contegō. ⁴ aere, from aes.



SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL

LESSON XLVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

317. Adjectives Compared Irregularly. Both the comparative and the superlative of several common adjectives are irregular. Commit to memory the following :

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>large</i>	maior, maius, <i>larger</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>largest</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
multī, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more</i>	plūrimī, -ae, -a, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>little,</i> <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>less,</i> <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>least,</i> <i>smallest</i>

318. The Declension of Plūs. In the singular plūs, *more*, is used only as a neuter noun. Learn the declension of plūs (648).

319. Other Adjectives Compared Irregularly. There are other adjectives that are compared irregularly, some of which have no positive, but form their comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs, and others of which have two forms in the superlative. See 649. These should be learned as they occur in the vocabularies.

320. The Ablative of Degree of Difference.

1. Pater pede altior est quam filius, *the father is a foot taller than his son.*
2. Pāx multō grātor erit quam bellum, *peace will be much more welcome than war.*

a. Observe that the ablatives pede and multō answer the question (by) *how much*? They denote the *degree of difference* between the objects compared. This usage is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

321. Rule for the Ablative of Degree of Difference. *The degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

322.

VOCABULARY

centum , <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i> , a hundred (<i>century</i>)	opera , <i>-ae, f.</i> , work, activity (<i>opera</i>)
inferus , <i>-a, -um</i> , low, below (649) (<i>inferior</i>)	quam , <i>conj.</i> , than
interdum , <i>adv.</i> , sometimes	sex , <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i> , six (<i>sextant</i>)
malus , <i>-a, -um</i> , bad (<i>malice</i>)	superus , <i>-a, -um</i> , high, above (649) (<i>superior</i>)

EXERCISES

323. 1. In inferiorem partem provinciae sex legionēs ā Caesare dūcuntur. 2. Viae urbis nostrae pedibus multis angustiorēs sunt. 3. Maximae manūs hostium convocatae erant et Rōmānōs itinere prohibēbant. 4. Dē locis superioribus plūrima tēla iēcērunt. 5. Illa turris decem pedibus altior quam mūrus est. 6. Minōra castra ā centum militibus dēfendēbantur. 7. Tua operae pars est maior quam mea. 8. Interdum amīci nōbis cōsiliū malum dant. 9. Summum montem¹ videō. 10. Italiae pars inferior propter multās Graecōrum urbēs Magna Graecia appellābātur; superior pars Italiae, quod ibi Galli incolēbant, Gallia Cisalpīna vel (*or*) Gallia Citerior appellābātur.

324. 1. The best men sometimes do not have the most friends. 2. On the journey a great many men were killed; the rest fled into a very large forest. 3. Cornelia was a foot taller than Julia. 4. The Gauls had more horsemen than the Romans. 5. Part of the army was waiting in higher places. 6. A better plan was shown to the senate. 7. The largest towns sent a hundred hostages to Cæsar.

¹ **summum montem**, *top of the mountain.*

LESSON XLVII.

THE FORMATION AND THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

325. The Formation of Adverbs. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives. From adjectives of the first and second declensions adverbs are formed by the addition of *-ē* to the base of the positive; from adjectives of the third declension they may be formed by the addition of *-iter* to the base: as, *cārē*, *dearly*, from *cārus*, *dear*; *miserē*, *wretchedly*, from *miser*, *wretched*; *ācritēr*, *eagerly*, from *ācer*, *eager*; but most adjectives of one ending add *-ter* to the base: as, *audācter*, from *audāx*.

a. Form adverbs from *grātus*, *lātus*, *longus*, *liber*, *aeger*, *brevis*, *fortis*, *gravis*.

326. The Irregular Formation of Adverbs. Some adverbs are the accusative or ablative singular neuter of the adjective: as, *multum*, *much*, from *multus*; *multō*, *much*, from *multus*; *facile*, *easily*, from *facilis*.

327. The Comparison of Adverbs.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>cārē</i>	<i>cārius</i>	<i>cārissimē</i>
<i>miserē</i>	<i>miserius</i>	<i>miserrimē</i>
<i>ācritēr</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>
<i>bene</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male</i>	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>multum</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>

a. Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular comparative of the adjective; and that the superlative, with one exception, is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē*.

328.

VOCABULARY

amplus, -a, -um, large, spacious
(*ample*)

arbor, arboris, *f.*, tree (*arboREAL*)

diligenter, *adv.*, diligently (*diligent*)

diū (diūtius, diūtissimē), *adv.*, long

hinc, *adv.*, hence, from here, from
this place

liberi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, children
(*liberty*)

multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, great number
(*multitude*)

subitō, *adv.*, suddenly

praemittō, praemittere, praemisi,
praemissus, send ahead (*promise*)

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relic-
tus, leave behind, leave (*relinquish*)

EXERCISES

329. 1. Patrēs et matrēs suōs liberōs maximē amant. 2. Eīs cōsilia optima dant et prō eis diligentissimē labōrant. 3. Tum in illam silvam amplam, quam hinc vidēmus, multitūdinem peditum praemittēmus. 4. Ex hōc summō monte facile vidēō sex urbēs centumque viās. 5. In imīs terrae partibus sunt flūmina minima. 6. Diūtius lacū quam montibus impeditae sunt cōpiae nostrae. 7. Plūrimī milītēs apud portum relictī erant; reliquī impetum in hostis subitō fēcērunt. 8. Arboribus et lapidibus mūrōs facient. 9. Hoc flūmen centum pedibus lātius est quam illud.

330. 1. Sometimes Cæsar's enemies fought much more bravely than the Roman soldiers. 2. But his soldiers fought very eagerly and boldly. 3. He carried on wars with the Gauls for a very long time. 4. Often he gave ample rewards to his centurions because they had captured much booty. 5. He was killed in the city of Rome by his personal enemies (*inimicus*).



GALLIC SWORD

LESSON XLVIII.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

331. The Fifth Declension. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *-ēs*. They are feminine, with the exception of *diēs*, *day*, which is usually masculine. They are inflected as follows:

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS	
<i>Nom.</i>	di'ēs	di'ēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	di'ē'i	di'ē'rum	re'i	rē'rum	-ēi	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	di'ē'i	di'ē'bus	re'i	rē'bus	-ēi	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	di'em	di'ēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	di'ē	di'ē'bus	rē	rē'bus	-ē	-ēbus

a. The vowel *e* of the case endings is regularly long. It is shortened, however, in the ending *-ēi* after a consonant, and in the ending *-em*: as, *rēi* and *rem*.

b. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and the accusative plural. Decline *aciēs*, *fidēs*, and *spēs*.

332. The Accusative of Extent.

1. *Decem annōs urbs oppugnābātur, the city was besieged for ten years.*
2. *Turris est centum pedēs alta, the tower is a hundred feet high.*

a. The accusative *decem annōs* denotes *extent of time*; the accusative *centum pedēs* denotes *extent of space*. Such accusatives answer the questions *how long?* *how far?* in time or in space. This usage is called the *Accusative of Extent*.

333. Rule for the Accusative of Extent. *Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative.*

334.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, <i>f.</i> , line of battle	rēs, -ēī, <i>f.</i> , thing, event, fact (<i>reality</i>)
altus, -a, -um, high, deep (<i>alto</i>)	spēs, -ēī, <i>f.</i> , hope
diēs, -ēī, <i>m.</i> , day (<i>diary</i>)	instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instrūctus, draw up, marshal (<i>instruct</i>)
fidēs, -eī, <i>f.</i> , trust, confidence (<i>fidelity</i>)	castra pōnere, to pitch camp
plānitiēs, -ēī, <i>f.</i> , plain (<i>plane</i>)	
posterus, -a, -um, next (649)	

EXERCISES

335. 1. Caesar castra summō in monte primum posuit. 2. Castra summō in monte ā Caesare posita sunt. 3. Hinc hostēs magnā in plānitiē visī sunt. 4. Inter hunc montem et illam plānitiem erat flūmen, quod centum pedēs lātum et quinque pedēs altum erat. 5. Caesar autem aciem instrūxit et impetum hostium exspectābat. 6. Eius equitēs maiōrem partem diēi in cornibus manēbant. 7. Sed hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt, quod parvam victōriæ spem habuērunt. 8. Tum adulēscentēs frūmentō plūris diēs caruērunt. 9. Collēs post castra nostra multis pedibus altiōrēs sunt.

336. 1. Cæsar heard about this fact from very many messengers. 2. The confidence of the Gauls was very slight on that day. 3. The river was ten feet deep at this place; and so they left all the baggage on the shore. 4. This fact deprived our soldiers of all hope. 5. We shall remain six days in Italy.



AN OFFERING TO THE GODS

LESSON XLIX

READING LESSON

A LETTER FROM POMPEII

337. Si tū valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō. Hās litterās ad tē laetus¹ scribō. Medici cōsiliō cum parentibus in Italiā hiemāvī. Apud² vōs nivēs (*snow*) omnia complent, sed nōs hīc nivēs rārō vidēmus. Āēr est lēnissimus; caelum rīdet. Interdum in litore ambulō vel in hortīs amplīs errō, nam grāmen arborēsque iam virent. Hinc videō Vesuvium montem, hinc tōtam ferē urbem, hinc pulchrās insulās in mari sitās.³ Linguae Lātinae cotidiē multum operae dō. Eam linguam multō facilius quam Graecam discō. Sed iam finem faciam epistulae; mox cōram omnia tibi nārrābō. Valē,⁴ mī amice.⁵

¹ *laetus, gladly.* ² *apud, with.* ³ *sitās, situated.* ⁴ *valē, farewell.* This form is the imperative singular of *valeō*. See xxxi, a. ⁵ *mī amice, my friend.* These words are in the vocative case (xxiv, b). When a person is addressed in Latin, a special case, called the vocative, is used. Generally it is the same in spelling as the nominative.



A VIEW IN POMPEII

338.

VOCABULARY

cōspectus, -ūs, *m.*, look, view,
sight (*conspectus*)

modus, -ī, *m.*, way, manner (*mood*)

saxum, -ī, *n.*, stone, rock

excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessū-
rus, go out, withdraw

prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prō-
cessūrus, go forward, advance
(*proceed*)

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn,
change (*convert*)

PERSEUS MĒDUSAM INTERFICIT (CONTINUED FROM 316)

339. Rēs difficillima erat caput Gorgonis abscidere,¹ eius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum inspiciebāt; hōc modō ad locum prōcessit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abscīdit. Reliquae Gorgones statim ē somnō excitātae sunt, et, ubi² rem vidērunt, perturbātae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum interficere volēbant.³ Ille autem dum fugit,⁴ galeam magicam induit; et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum excessit.

¹ *abscidere, to cut off.* The infinitive is here used as the subject of *erat* (393). ² What two meanings has *ubi* in this paragraph? What kind of clause does it introduce here? ³ *interficere volēbant, wished to kill.* ⁴ *dum fugit, while he was fleeing.* The present tense with *dum* is translated as if it were the imperfect tense.



HEAD OF MEDUSA

LESSON L

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD · THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH *UT* AND *NE*

340. The Subjunctive Mood. The Latin subjunctive is used in both independent and dependent clauses, but the kinds of dependent clauses in which the subjunctive is used are far more numerous than the independent. In this book only some uses in dependent clauses will be studied.

341. The Tenses of the Subjunctive. There are four tenses of the subjunctive: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. No meanings are given for the tenses of the subjunctive, because the translation varies with the use of the mood (cf. 343, 357, 372).

342. The Present Subjunctive. The present subjunctive of the several conjugations and of *sum* is inflected as follows:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE											
1. a'mem	amē'mus	a'mer	amē'mur										
2. a'mēs	amē'tis	amē'ris	amē'mini										
3. a'met	a'ment	amē'tur	amen'tur										
mone	<table style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 5px;">-</td> <td style="padding: 0 5px;">am,</td> <td style="padding: 0 5px;">-ās,</td> <td style="padding: 0 5px;">-at</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 0 5px;">-</td> <td style="padding: 0 5px;">ar,</td> <td style="padding: 0 5px;">-āris,</td> <td style="padding: 0 5px;">-ātur</td> </tr> </table>	-	am,	-ās,	-at	-	ar,	-āris,	-ātur	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant	ACTIVE
-		am,	-ās,	-at									
-		ar,	-āris,	-ātur									
reg		-āmur,	-āmini,	-antur	PASSIVE								
capi													
audi													
sim, sis, sit		sīmus, sītis, sint											

a. Observe that the mood sign of the present subjunctive of the regular verbs is *-ē-* in the first conjugation, and *-ā-* in the others.

b. Learn the present subjunctive of the verbs above. Then inflect the present subjunctive active and passive of *dūcō*, *mittō*, *recipiō*, *reperiō*, and *videō*. The present subjunctive belongs in the present system (671).

343. Purpose Clauses.

1. *Civēs sē armant ut pugnent, the citizens arm themselves that they may fight (or, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting, to fight).*
2. *Civēs sē armant nē superentur, the citizens arm themselves that they may not be overcome (or, in order not to be overcome, so that they may not be overcome, lest they be overcome).*

a. Observe that the dependent clauses express the *purpose* of the action of the principal clause, *ut, that*, introducing the affirmative clause, and *nē, that not*, the negative clause.

b. Observe the various ways of translating *ut* and *nē* and the subjunctive in these clauses. In English, purpose is most often expressed by the infinitive. In the best Latin prose, however, the purpose of an action is not expressed by the infinitive.

344. Rule for Purpose Clauses. *The subjunctive is used with ut or nē in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action stated in the independent clause.*

EXERCISES

345. 1. Nūntium mittit ut civēs moneat. 2. Adulēscēns mittitur ut civēs moneantur. 3. Legiō mittitur nē oppidum ab hostibus capiātur. 4. Legiōnēs fortiter pugnant ut oppidum capiant. 5. Puer venit ut fābulam audiat. 6. Puerī veniunt ut verba tua audiant. 7. Eōs mittimus ut prōvinciam regant. 8. Eōs mittimus ut prōvincia ab eis regātur. 9. In Galliam properātis ut bellum gerātis. 10. Centum milites praemittimus ut castra mūniant.

346. 1. He is sent to fight. 2. We send them to find the way. 3. You are sent that the enemy may not make an attack on the city. 4. The soldiers are led out of the camp that a line of battle may be drawn up. 5. I am coming to see you and your mother. 6. He fights to defend himself.

LESSON LI

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE · SEQUENCE OF TENSES

347. The Imperfect Subjunctive. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive active; but the final *-e* of the infinitive is lengthened in certain forms.

a. Learn the imperfect subjunctive of the model verbs and of *sum* (658-663). The imperfect subjunctive belongs in the present system (671).

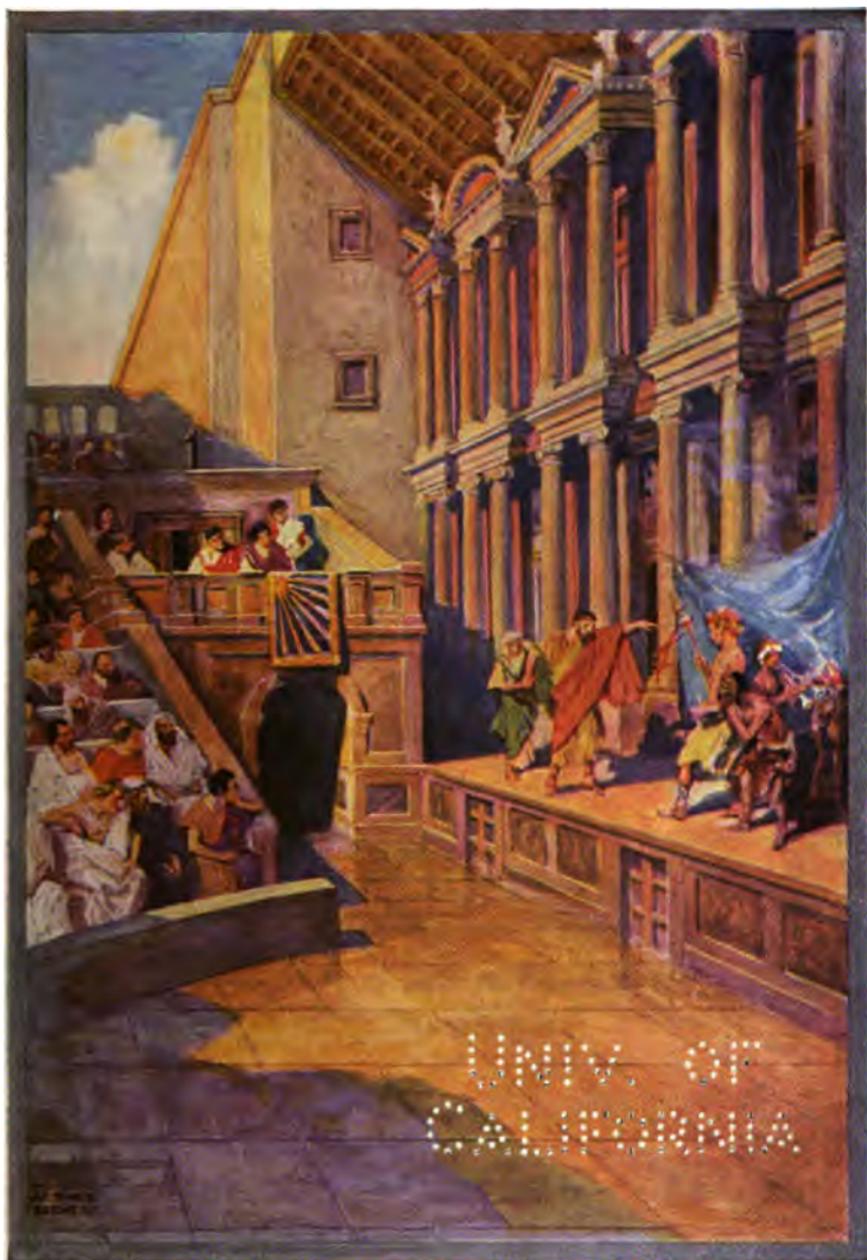
348. Sequence of Tenses. Examine the following English sentences :

1. He *comes* (*is coming*) that he *may* fight.
2. He *will come* that he *may* fight.
3. He *came* that he *might* fight.

a. Observe that in sentences 1 and 2 the verbs in the independent clauses are present and future, and that in sentence 3 the verb in the independent clause is past. Observe the change from *may* (present) to *might* (past) when a past tense takes the place of a present or a future in the verb of the independent clause. This following of one tense by another of the same kind is called *Sequence of Tenses*.

349. Primary and Secondary Tenses. Those tenses of the indicative which refer to present or to future time (present, future, and future perfect) are called *Primary Tenses*. Those tenses of the indicative which refer to past time (imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect) are called *Secondary Tenses*.

350. Rule for Primary Sequence. *When the verb of the independent clause of a sentence is in a primary tense, a verb in the dependent clause is in the present tense if its action is incomplete, but in the perfect tense if its action is completed.*



UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA

A GLIMPSE INTO A ROMAN THEATER

351. Rule for Secondary Sequence. *When the verb of the independent clause of a sentence is in a secondary tense, a verb in the dependent clause is in the imperfect tense if its action is incomplete, but in the pluperfect if its action is completed.*

a. Observe that all the verbs in the independent clauses in 345 are in the present tense, and that all the verbs in the dependent clauses are in the present subjunctive. If the verbs in the independent clauses should be changed to the future or the future perfect tense, what would be the tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clauses?

352. Rule for the Tense of the Subjunctive in Purpose Clauses. *Since a purpose clause expresses an incomplete action, its verb will be in the present subjunctive if the verb in the independent clause is in a primary tense, and in the imperfect subjunctive if the verb of the independent clause is in a secondary tense.*

EXERCISES

353. 1. Veniunt ut pācem petant. 2. Veniēbant ut pācem peterent. 3. Venient ut pācem petant. 4. Vēnerant ut pācem peterent. 5. Fortiter pugnābant nē ā Gallis vincerentur. 6. Trāns flūmen properāverant ut oppidum oppugnārent. 7. Legiōnēs mittentur ut hostēs commeātibus interclūdantur. 8. Ut portum dēfēderent nostrī praemissī sunt. 9. Cōsul audācissimē dīcet ut populum Rōmānum incitet.

354. 1. They labor that they may be praised. 2. They were laboring that they might be praised. 3. They will labor that they may be praised. 4. They had labored that they might be praised. 5. They threw weapons from the higher places in order to hinder the Romans. 6. He had called together the chiefs to hear the new plan. 7. They will desist from battle that they may not be killed.

LESSON LII

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE · RESULT CLAUSES

355. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun (xx, *d*); it may be the subject or the object of a verb. Purpose clauses with **ut** and **nē** are often used in Latin as the objects of certain verbs: as,

Petit ut obsidēs dent, *he asks them to give hostages (that they give hostages).*

a. Observe that the clause **ut obsidēs dent** is the object of **petit**. This is, therefore, a noun clause. The purpose clauses in the preceding lessons were adverbial in nature (xx, *c*).

356. Rule for Substantive Clauses of Purpose. *Verbs meaning ask, command, persuade, and urge may have for their object a clause of purpose with its verb in the subjunctive.*

a. In English an infinitive is generally used in the object clause.

357. Result Clauses.

1. **Iter tam longum est ut puer sit dēfessus**, *the journey is so long that the boy is tired out.*

2. **Puer tam malus fuit ut ā patre nōn laudārētur**, *the boy was so bad that he was not praised by his father.*

a. Observe that the dependent clauses beginning with **ut** express the result of the statements in the independent clauses, and that the subjunctive is translated by an English indicative.

b. Observe that the sequence is the same as in purpose clauses, but that the negative clause contains **ut nōn** (not **nē**).

358. Rule for Result Clauses. *The subjunctive is used with ut or ut nōn in a dependent clause to express the result of the action stated in the independent clause. The sequence of tenses is generally the same as in purpose clauses.*

359.

VOCABULARY

ita, adv., so, in such a way

tam, adv., so

tantus, -a, -um, so great

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, act, do
(*agent*)

circumveniō, circumvenīre, circum-
vēnī, circumventus, surround
(*circumvent*)

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, impe-
rātus, command, order (*imper-*
ative)

EXERCISES

360. ①. Puer ita ēgit ut ab omnibus amārētur. 2. Urbs vās-
tāta est nē ab hostibus caperētur. 3. Eum monēmus nē miles
sit. 4. Imperāvīt nē per nostram prōvinciam iter facerent.
②. Tanta est inopia cibī ut plūrimī aegrī sint. ③. Urbs tam
fortiter dēfēnsa est ut decem diēbus nōn caperētur. 7. Hostēs
in silvās fūgērunt nē ā nostrīs circumvenīrentur. 8. Caesar
p̄imum postulāvit ut nostrīs auxilium darētur.

361. ① They were so few that they fled. ② They were so
brave that they did not flee. 3. I advise him to be more bold.
4. The lieutenant led the soldiers out of the camp in order to
draw up a line of battle. 5. He demands that they pitch camp in
this place. ③ The marsh is so great that our men are hindered.



A ROMAN CUP

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS XLIV-LII

362. Give the English meanings of the following words :

accipiō	cōpia	instruō	opera	rēs
aciēs	diēs	interdūm	pars	saxum
adulēscēns	difficilis	ita	pervenīō	sex
agō	diligenter	iūrō	plānitīēs	similis
altus	discēdō	liberī	posterus	spēs
amplus	dissimilis	litus	praemittō	subitō
angustus	excēdō	malus	primum	superus
appellō	expugnō	modus	prōcēdō	tam
arbor	facilis	multitūdō	quaerō	tantus
celer	fidēs	nātūra	quam	ut
centum	hinc	nē	quinque	vertō
circumveniō	imperō	omninō	relinquō	vīta
cōnspectus	īnferus			

363. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

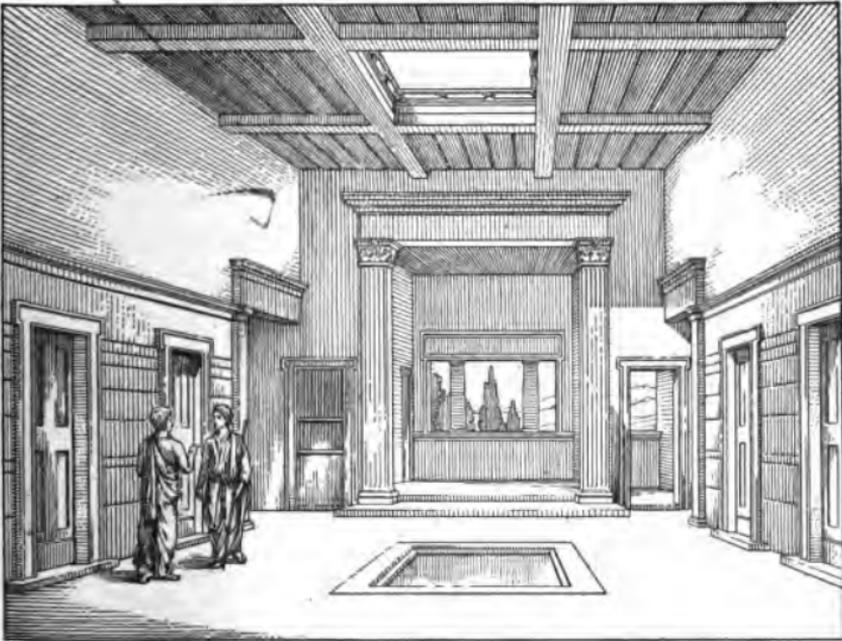
children	hundred	high, deep	swear, take oath
bad	so	turn, change	so, in such a way
hope	next	young man	nature, character
five	plain	that not, lest	thing, event, fact
suddenly	narrow	way, manner	leave behind, leave
so great	day	send ahead	look, view, sight
part	withdraw	command, order	plenty, supply; troops
easy	hard	stone, rock	trust, confidence
than	six	wholly, entirely	draw up, marshal
unlike	seek, ask	great number	take by storm, capture
tree	act, do	so that, to	go forward, advance
sometimes	high, above	large, spacious	hence, from here
diligently	call, name	first, at first	come through, reach,
shore	like	work, activity	arrive
receive	low, below	line of battle	go out, withdraw
life	surround	swift, quick	

364. Decline each noun and each adjective in 362. Conjugate each verb in the present and the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural.

365. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 362. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

366. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Partitive genitive | 4. Adverbial clause of purpose |
| 2. Ablative of degree of difference | 5. Substantive clause of purpose |
| 3. Accusative of extent | 6. Adverbial clause of result |
| | 7. Sequence of tenses |



THE ATRIUM OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LIII

READING LESSON

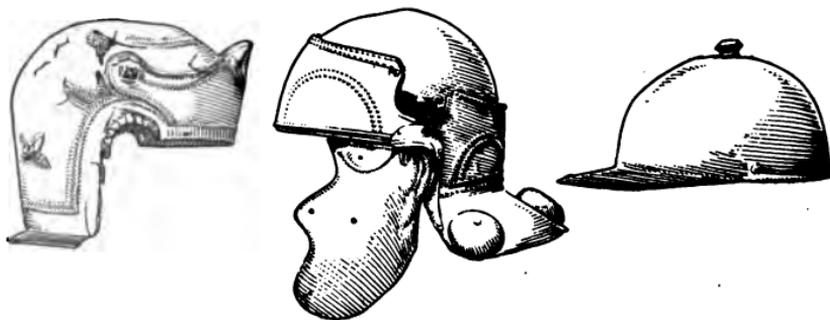
367.

VOCABULARY

<p>cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, give way, retire (<i>secede</i>)</p> <p>conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, place, station (<i>collocation</i>)</p>	<p>ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out, lead forth</p> <p>iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid (<i>adjutant</i>)</p>
--	---

CAESAR HOSTIS VINCIT

368. Posterō diē Caesar ex castris exercitum ēdūxit et iter ad flūmen fēcit. Quae (*this*) rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum peditēs ā nostris summō in colle visī sunt. Tum Caesar equitēs in cornibus conlocāvit ut peditēs iuvārent, et militum animōs ad pugnam ita incitāvit: "Omnis rei pūblicae spēs in nostrā virtūte posita est. Audācēs fortūna iuvat. Fortēs vincent." Hostēs tam ācritē in nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt ut hi cēderent. Brevī autem tempore hostēs ita superāti sunt ut ex omnibus pugnae partibus trāns flūmen fugerent. Eōrum dux captus est et Rōmam missus est.



ROMAN HELMETS

369.

VOCABULARY

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī,
cōstitutus, establish, deter-
mine (*constitution*)
cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului, cōn-

sultus, plan, deliberate, consult
(*consultation*)
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus,
give over, surrender (*tradition*)

ANDROMEDA FILIA CEPHEI (CONTINUED FROM 339)

370. Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cē-
pheus illō tempore regēbat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim
offenderat; itaque Neptūnus mōnstrum saevissimum miserat.
Hoc mōnstrum cotidiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat.
Quam (*this*) ob causam terror animōs omnium occupāverat.
Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōsuluit, et ā deō
iussus est¹ filiam Andromedam mōnstrō trādere.² Illa autem
virgō pulcherrimā erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, maximē
doluit. Volēbat tamen cīvis suōs ē tantō periculō servāre,³
et ob eam causam imperāta Hammōnis facere⁴ cōstituit.

¹ iussus est, from iubeō. ² trādere, translate with iussus est. ³ servāre,
translate with volēbat (394). ⁴ facere, translate with cōstituit (394).



A ROMAN CHARIOT

LESSON LIV

THE PERFECT AND THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE INDIRECT QUESTIONS

371. The Perfect and the Pluperfect Subjunctive. The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are formed on the perfect stem (671):

amāv	-erim, -eris, -erit,	-erimus, -eritis, -erint
amāv	-issem, -issēs, -isset,	-issēmus, -issētis, -issent

The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive passive belong to the participial system (671).

a. Learn these tenses of the model verbs and of **sum** (658-663). Inflect the entire subjunctive of **agō**, **pōnō**, **dō**, and **videō**.

372. Indirect Questions. An indirect question is a subordinate clause which contains the substance of a direct question: as,

1. **Ubi sunt?** *where are they?*
2. **Audit ubi sint,** *he hears where they are.*

a. Observe that the dependent clause in 2 begins with an interrogative word (**ubi**) and contains the substance of the direct question in 1. Observe that the subjunctive mood is used, and that the clause is substantive in nature. Every subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word is an indirect question.

b. An indirect question, with its verb in the subjunctive, may be used as the subject or the object of another verb. Indirect questions usually follow the general rule for the sequence of tenses: as,

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Audit, <i>he hears</i> 2. Audiet, <i>he will hear</i> 3. Auverit, <i>he will have heard</i> | } | <p>ubi sint, <i>where they are</i></p> <p>ubi fuerint, <i>where they were or where they have been</i></p> |
|---|---|---|

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Audiēbat, he was hearing | } ubi essent, where they were |
| 2. Audīvit, he heard | |
| 3. Audiverat, he had heard | |

373. Rule for Indirect Questions. *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. If the verb of the independent clause is in a primary tense, the verb of the indirect question is put in the present subjunctive for an incomplete action, but in the perfect for a completed action. If the verb of the independent clause is in a secondary tense, the verb of the indirect question is put in the imperfect subjunctive for an incomplete action, but in the pluperfect for a completed action.*

374.**VOCABULARY**num, *adv.*, whetherquot, *adv.*, how many (*quotient*)unde, *adv.*, whencerogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, ask
(*arrogant*)sciō, scire, scivī, scītus, know
(*science*)**EXERCISES**

375. 1. Rogat quid agant, quid ēgerint. 2. Sciēbat quid agerent, quid ēgissent. 3. Tibi dicam cūr labōrent, cūr labōrāverint. 4. Audiverant unde militēs venirent, unde vēnissent. 5. Rogāvērunt cūr laudārētur, cūr laudāti essent. 6. Scit cūr manerant, cūr mānserint. 7. Nōbīs dixit quid illi puerī fēcissent. 8. Rogāvī num saepe in Italiā fuisset. 9. Scisne quot annōs Rōmānī Britanniam tenuerint?

376. 1. I shall tell you where they were and what they did. 2. These come to see, those to be seen. 3. They are so tired that they are not working to-day. 4. He asked me why I had come. 5. I had heard where he had been. 6. The general asked whether they had all come. 7. Do you know how many soldiers are coming?

LESSON LV

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES · THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

377. Numeral Adjectives. For the definition of numeral adjectives see III, *c*. A list of Latin cardinal and ordinal numerals is given in 651.

378. The Declension of Numeral Adjectives. The cardinals *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, are declined; so, too, are the words for the *hundreds*, as, *ducenti*, *two hundred*, *trecenti*, *three hundred*, and (in the plural) *mille*, *thousand*. The other cardinals are not declined. The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions.

a. Learn the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille* (646).

379. The Use of *Mille*. The singular of *mille* is indeclinable, and is used either as an adjective or as a neuter noun: *mille* (adj.) *hominēs*, *a thousand men*, or *mille* (noun) *hominum*. The plural is used only as a noun. When used as a noun it takes the partitive genitive: *mille hominum*, *a thousand (of) men*; *quattuor milia hominum*, *four thousand(s) of men*.

380. The Objective Genitive.

Spēs praedae hominēs incitat, *hope of booty impels the men*.

a. Observe that the genitive *praedae* expresses the thing hoped for, the object of the hope. This usage of the genitive case is called the *Objective Genitive*. The difference between the possessive and the objective genitive is illustrated by *timor canis*, *fear of the dog*, which may mean the dog's fear (possessive) or fear felt for the dog (objective).

381. Rule for the Objective Genitive. *Some nouns of action and feeling may have with them a genitive to express the object of the action or feeling implied in the nouns.*

382.

VOCABULARY

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right
(*dexterous*)

duo, duae, duo, *adj.*, two (*dual*)

memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory (*memorable*)

mille, *adj. or noun*, thousand
(*million*)

mille passuum, mile (a thousand
of paces)

octō, *adj., indecl.*, eight (*October*)

passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace (*pace*)

quārtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fourth
(*quarto*)

quattuor, *adj., indecl.*, four

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left
(*sinister*)

tertius, -a, -um, *adj.*, third (*tertiary*)

timor, timōris, *m.*, fear (*timorous*)

trēs, tria, *adj.*, three (*trio*)

ūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, one (*unify*)

EXERCISES

383. 1. In itinere duo flūmīna reperientur decem pedēs alta.
2. Memoria hārum rērum exercitum incitāverat. 3. Tria milia
passuum iter fēcerant et p̄ma aciēs instruēbātur. 4. Caesar
imperāvit ut in dextrō cornū tertia, in sinistrō quārta legiō con-
locārētur. 5. Trium frātrum Mārcus erat fortissimus. 6. Propter
studium victōriæ hæc ūna legiō Gallōs sustinuit. 7. Pilum
Rōmānum fuit sex pedēs longum. 8. Posterō diē octō milia
passuum ex illō locō discessērunt. 9. Quattuor explorātōrēs,
quī praemissi erant, propter timōrem hostium fūgērunt.

384. 1. Hope of a reward impelled the children of Marcus.
2. On that hill were drawn up ten thousand foot soldiers and
two thousand horsemen. 3. The baggage of the army had
been left a mile from the shore. 4. The general will station
the second legion in front of the camp. 5. At the arrival of
two legions the enemy departed from the left flank. 6. Fear
of Cæsar and of the Romans will hinder one clan. 7. One of
the men was unfriendly to me.

LESSON LVI

ADJECTIVES HAVING THE GENITIVE IN *-ĭus*

385. Adjectives having the Genitive in *-ĭus*. The adjectives of the following vocabulary end in *-ĭus* in the genitive singular and in *-ĭ* in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of *alter* ends in *-ĭus*).

386.

VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud, other, another (<i>alias</i>)	sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole, only (<i>solitude</i>)
alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two) (<i>alterhate</i>).	tōtus, -a, -um, whole, all (<i>total</i>)
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two) (<i>neutrality</i>)	ūllus, -a, -um, any (at all)
nūllus, -a, -um, no, no one, none (<i>nullify</i>)	ūnus, -a, -um, one (<i>unite</i>)
	uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)
	uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both

a. Learn the declension of **alius** (646). Decline the other words.

b. These adjectives are usually emphatic, and so stand before their nouns. They are often used as pronouns.

387. The Idiomatic Uses of *Alius* and of *Alter*. *Alius* and *alter*, when repeated in the same sentence, have the following meanings:

- alter . . . alter, one . . . the other** (of two only)
- alius . . . alius, one . . . another** (of any number)
- alii . . . alii, some . . . others**

1. **Alterum oppidum in Italiā, alterum in Galliā est,** *one town is in Italy, the other in Gaul* (only two towns are thought of).
2. **Aliud oppidum magnum, aliud parvum est,** *one town is large, another small* (here the thought is not limited to two towns).
3. **Alii gladiis, alii pīlis pugnant,** *some are fighting with swords, others with javelins.*

EXERCISES

388. 1. In alterō flūminis litore urbs, in alterō fuit mōns.
 2. Duōrum hominum alter imperātor, alter tribūnus erat. 3. Ter-
 tiaē legiōnis sōlius virtūte tōtus exercitus dēfendēbātur. 4. Altera
 legiō in dextrō, altera in sinistrō cornū ā Caesare conlocāta est.
 5. Neutrī obsidi cibum dabō. 6. Uter puer est tuus filius? 7. Eā
 aestāte erant in marī nullae nāvēs. 8. Cūr utrumque incitās?

389. 1. Cæsar had praised the valor of the whole legion.
 2. Which of the two young men showed the greater courage?
 3. Cæsar will march without any delay with the second legion
 alone. 4. Some were pitching camp, others were drawing up
 a line of battle. 5. In no place did we find very many trees.

390.

VOCABULARY

<i>celeritās, celeritātis, f., speed</i>	<i>lacrima, -ae, f., tear (lachrymose)</i>
<i>(celerity)</i>	<i>nec, neque, conj., and not, nor</i>
<i>dolor, dolōris, m., grief, pain</i>	<i>simul, adv., at the same time</i>
<i>(dolorous)</i>	<i>(simultaneous)</i>
<i>fremitus, -ūs, m., noise</i>	

MONSTRUM APPROPINQUAT (CONTINUED FROM 370)

391. Tum rēx diem dixit et omnia parāvit. Ubi is diēs vēnit,
 Andromeda ad litus ducta est, et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem
 adligāta est. Omnēs propter fātum eius dolēbant, nec lacrimās
 tenēbant. Subitō autem, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus
 ad litus pervenit; et, ubi lacrimās vidit, causam dolōris quaerit.
 Illi rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec
 geruntur, fremitus terribilis audītur; simul mōnstrum saevissi-
 mum procul vidētur. Eius cōspectus timōrem maximum prae-
 buit. Magnā celeritāte ad litus mōnstrum properāvit, iamque
 ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

LESSON LVII

THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS COMPLEMENT

392. The Infinitive. The infinitives of **amō** are as follows:

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> amāre, to love	amāri, to be loved
<i>Perf.</i> amāvisse, to have loved	amātus esse, to have been loved
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus esse, to be about to love, to be going to love	(amātum iri, to be about to be loved)

a. Observe that the present infinitive passive is formed from the active by changing final **-e** to **-i**. But in the third conjugation final **-ere** is changed to **-i**.

b. The perfect infinitive active is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem.

c. The perfect infinitive passive is formed by using the perfect participle with **esse**, the present infinitive of **sum**.

d. The future infinitive active is formed by using the future active participle, **amātūrus**, with **esse**. The future active participle is made by changing final **-tus** or **-sus** of the perfect passive participle to **-tūrus** or **-sūrus**. Form the future active participles of **pōnō**, **instruō**, **videō**, **mittō**, and **gerō**.

e. Learn the infinitives and meanings of the model verbs and of **sum** (658-663). The future infinitive passive may be omitted. It is rare.

393. The Infinitive as Subject. Since the infinitive is a noun, it may be used as the subject or the object of a verb. Since it is a *verbal* noun, it may have a subject or an object of its own, and be modified by adverbs, adverb phrases, or adverb clauses.

1. *Laudāri est grātum, to be praised is pleasing.*
2. *Iter per finēs hostium facere erit difficile, to march through the territory of the enemy will be difficult.*

a. Observe that *laudāri* is the subject of *est*, and *iter per finēs hostium facere* of *erit*, while *iter* is the object of *facere*. Of what gender are *grātum* and *difficile*? What, then, is the gender of the infinitive?

394. The Complementary Infinitive.

1. *Vincere potest*, *he is able to conquer*.
2. *Bonī esse dēbēmus*, *we ought to be good*.

a. Observe that *vincere* and *esse* complete the meaning of *potest* and *dēbēmus*. An infinitive so used is called a *Complementary Infinitive*, and it is common in Latin, as in English, with verbs meaning *be able, decide, ought, wish, begin*, etc. You have already met this usage of the infinitive in several of the selections for reading.

b. The predicate adjective used with a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

395.

VOCABULARY

<i>coepī, coepisse</i> (<i>lacks the present system</i>), began	<i>decimus, -a, -um</i> , tenth (<i>decimate</i>)
<i>dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitus</i> , ought, be obliged to (<i>debit</i>)	<i>potest</i> , is able, can
	<i>possunt</i> , are able, can (<i>possible</i>)

EXERCISES

396. 1. *Venire, dare, discēdere potest*. 2. *Impediri, pōnī, conlocārī possunt*. 3. *Praemia recipere saepe est grātum*. 4. *Caesar reliquōs agrōs et oppida illius civitātis vāstārē coepit*. 5. *Tua verba audire est difficillimum*. 6. *Germānī Rōmānōs commeātibus interclūdere nōn possunt*. 7. *Statim multitudō pācem petere coepit*. 8. *Sē dēfendere dēbent*. 9. *Quis tōtius exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut impetum hostium sustinēret?* 10. *Hieme diēs quinque hōris breviōrēs quam aestāte sunt*.

397. 1. It will be easy to fortify the camp with a high wall. 2. You ought to offer help. 3. He is not able to arouse the soldiers of the tenth legion. 4. To carry on a war is not often best. 5. We ought to be brave and good. 6. Some have begun to fight, others to flee.

LESSON LVIII

THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT · THE ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

398. The Infinitive as Object.

Mē venīre iussit, he ordered me to come.

a. Observe that in the English sentence the object of *ordered* is *me to come*; and that *me* is in the objective case and subject of the infinitive *to come*. The Latin sentence is like the English; **mē** is in the accusative case. Verbs meaning *order* and *wish* are the commonest verbs having an infinitive as their object; but **imperō**, *order*, takes a substantive clause of purpose (356). The objective infinitive is also used in indirect statements (400-402).

399. Rule for the Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive. *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

400. Indirect Statements. A direct statement gives the exact words used by a speaker or writer: as, *He says* (or *said*), "*Soldiers are coming.*" In an indirect statement the words of a speaker or writer are made to depend on a verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., and in English may or may not be the same as they were in the original statement or thought: as, *He says that soldiers are coming, he said that soldiers were coming.* Observe the same sentences in Latin:

1. **Militēs veniunt, soldiers are coming.**
2. **Dicit militēs venīre, he says that soldiers are coming.**
3. **Dixit militēs venīre, he said that soldiers were coming.**

a. Observe that in turning a direct statement into an indirect statement in Latin the nominative is changed to the accusative (399) and the indicative to the infinitive.

401. Rule for Indirect Statements. *Indirect statements, with verb in the infinitive and subject in the accusative, are found in dependence on verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.*

402. The Use of the Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statements. The *present* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement is going on at the *same* time as the action indicated by the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. *Dicit militēs venīre, he says that soldiers are coming.*
2. *Dixit militēs venīre, he said that soldiers were coming.*
3. *Dicet militēs venīre, he will say that soldiers are coming.*

The *perfect* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement occurred *before* that of the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. *Dicit militēs vēnisse, he says that soldiers came (or have come).*
2. *Dixit militēs vēnisse, he said that soldiers came (or had come).*
3. *Dicet militēs vēnisse, he will say that soldiers came (or have come).*

The *future* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement occurs *after* that of the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. *Dicit militēs ventūrōs esse, he says that soldiers will come.*
2. *Dixit militēs ventūrōs esse, he said that soldiers would come.*
3. *Dicet militēs ventūrōs esse, he will say that soldiers will come.*

403.

VOCABULARY

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, know, understand (*recognize*)
cupiō, cupere, cupivī (cupiī), cupitus, desire, wish (*cupidity*)

iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus, bid, order, command (*jussive*)
respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus, answer, reply (*respond*)

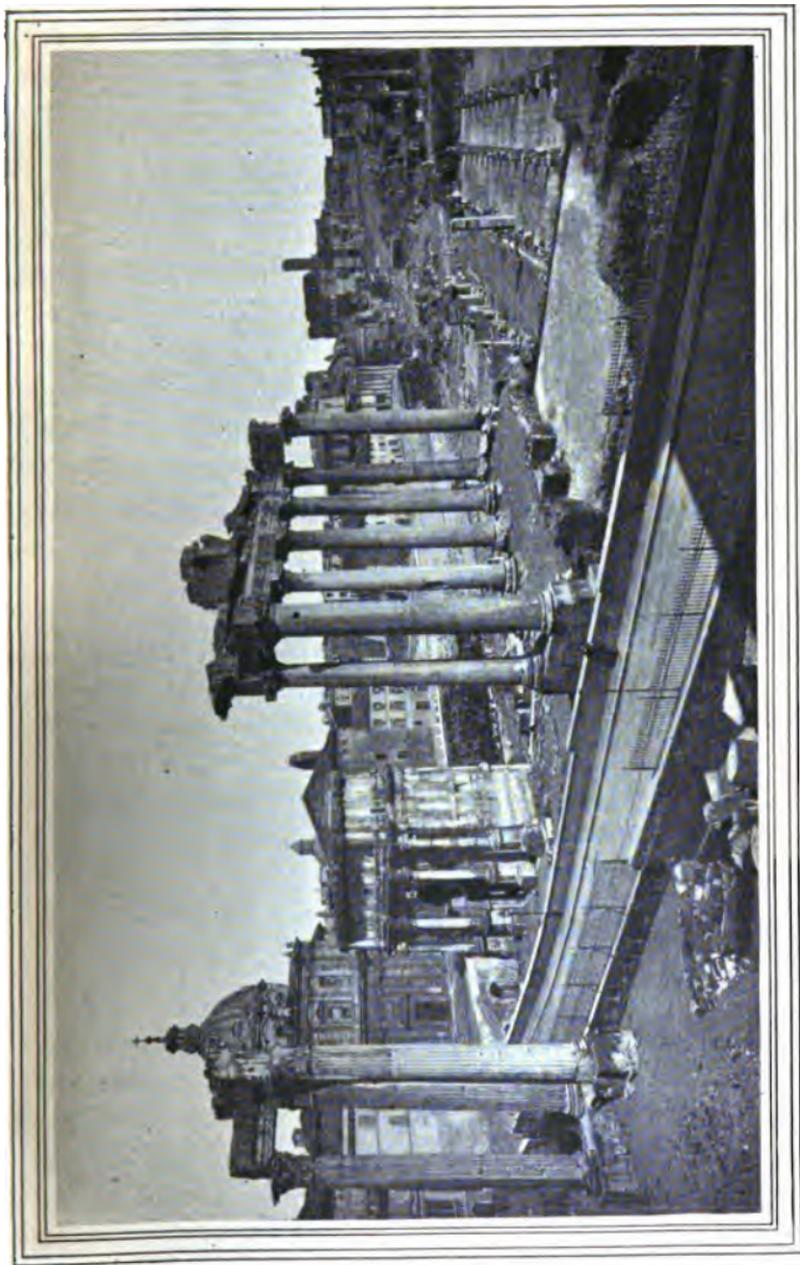
EXERCISES

404. 1. Caesar per duōs explorātōrēs cognōvit hostēs sex milia passuum iter fēcisse. 2. Socii respondent sē sine morā auxilium ad Caesarem missūrōs esse. 3. Imperātor dīxit sē suis praemia ampla datūrum esse. 4. Omnēs cupiunt esse liberi. 5. Omnēs cupiunt Italiam esse liberam. 6. Omnēs vident oppidum fortiter dēfendī. 7. Statim tertiam aciem instruī Caesar iussit. 8. Sciēbat Gallōs venire ut impetum facerent.

405. 1. That lieutenant will order his men to build towers. 2. I know that two legions have been sent ahead. 3. From the captives he learned that the enemy lacked food. 4. He ordered (iubeō) them to spend the winter in that state. 5. The traders replied that there was no grain in the territory of the Germans.



A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE



THE ROMAN FORUM TO-DAY

LESSON LIX

READING LESSON

CAESAR IN CONCILIO DICIT

406. Post hoc proelium Caesar militibus in conciliō ita dixit: Eōs fortiter pugnāvisse; itaque hostīs omnibus in partibus victōs esse et in montis et palūdēs fugere; praedam eis sē datūrum esse; sē scire eōs longō bellō esse dēfessōs et statim eōs in Italiā missūrum esse; sē velle¹ in Galliā manēre per hiemem, sed proximā aestāte suōs in Germānōs ductūrum esse; multōs captīvōs Rōmam missōs esse, et populum Rōmānum victōriā eōrum dēlectāri.

407.

VOCABULARY

paene, adv., nearly, almost (*peninsula*)

regiō, regiōnis, f., place (*region*)

undique, adv., from all sides, everywhere

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, put down, lay aside (*deposit*)

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus, show, display (*ostensible*)

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus, give back, return (*render*)

sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, know, perceive (*sentiment*)

PERSEUS CEPHEO ANDROMEDAM REDDIT

(CONTINUED FROM 391)

408. At Perseus ubi haec vidit, gladium suum ēdūxit, et postquam tālāria induit, per āera volāvit. Tum dēsUPER in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit, et gladiō suō collum eius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus in aquam mersit. Perseus dum circum litus volat, reditum eius exspectābat. Mare

¹ **velle,** infin. of **volō,** *wish.*

autem interim undique sanguine inficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūsus caput ostendit ; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē in undās mersit, neque postea vīsa est.

Perseus postquam ad litus dēscendit, primum tālāria exuit ; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīncta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et ubi Perseus pervēnit, ter-rōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō adfectus est. Itaque Andromedam Perseō in mātrimōnium dedit. Paucōs annōs Perseus cum uxōre in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnis Aethiopēs.



IMPERATOR ET CAPTIVI

LESSON LX

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *IDEM*, *IPSE*, *ISTE* · THE IRREGULAR VERB *POSSUM*

409. The Demonstratives *Īdem*, *Ipse*, and *Iste*. Review the declension of *is*, *hic*, and *ille* (654), and learn the declension of *idem*, *same*, *ipse*, *-self*, and *iste*, *this of yours*, *that of yours* (654).

a. Observe that *īdem* is declined like *is* with *-dem* added, except that in the accusative singular and the genitive plural *m* is changed to *n*, and in the nominative and accusative singular *is* is changed to *ī*, *id* to *i*.

b. Decline together *īdem diēs*, *rēs ipsa*, and *istud cōsiliūm*.

410. The Distinction between *Īdem*, *Ipse*, and *Iste*.

a. *Īdem* and *iste* may be used both as demonstrative adjectives and as demonstrative pronouns.

b. *Iste* is used of that which has some relation to the second person, and is translated *this of yours*, *that of yours*, *your*: as, *istam diligentiam laudō*, *I praise that diligence of yours (your diligence)*.

c. *Ipsē* means *-self (himself, herself, itself, themselves)*. It is an intensive word, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees as an adjective: as, *amicus ipse ad mē vēnit*, *my friend himself came to me*. It must be distinguished from *sē*, *-self*, which is reflexive, not emphatic (266). Sometimes *ipse* may be translated *even* or *very*: as, *in flūmine ipsō pugnāt*, *they are fighting in the very river*.

411. The Irregular Verb *Possūm*. The irregular verb *possum*, *I can*, is a compound of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*, *I am*; *pot-sum* changed to *possum*. Wherever, in the inflection of this verb, *t* comes before *s*, it is changed to *s*, and wherever it comes before *f*, *f* is dropped. Learn the principal parts and the complete inflection (664).

412.

VOCABULARY

difficultās, difficultātis, f., difficulty

idem, eadem, idem, same (*identity*)

idem . . . quī, same . . . as

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive*, -self

iste, ista, istud, this of yours,
that of yours

nihil, n., indecl., nothing (*annihilatione*)

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f., speech, plea
(*oration*)

rūsus, adv., again

nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvi, nūntiātus, report, announce (*annunciator*)

possum, posse, potuī, —, be
able, can (*potent*)

putō, putāre, putāvi, putātus,
think, believe, reckon (*compute*)

spērō, spērāre, spērāvi, spērātus,
hope (*prosperous*)

EXERCISES

413. 1. Potest, poterat, poterit. 2. Potuimus, potuerant, poterant. 3. Scīsne cūr ista verba audiri nōn possint? 4. Eadem erant difficultātēs belli quās vōbis nūntiāre potuī. 5. Labiēnus ipse scīvit causās belli plūrimās esse. 6. Putō mē hodiē nihil ēptūrum esse. 7. Nōn iam pōstulant ut populus Rōmānus nāvēs praebeat. 8. Centuriō, quī cum octō explōrātōribus missus erat ut viam cognōsceret, nūntiāvit sē viam cognōscere nōn potuisse. 9. Omnēs spērābant Caesarem eā aestāte Gallōs victūrum esse. 10. Virī ipsī dicunt tēla iaci nōn posse.

414. 1. They have been able, he will be able, I could. 2. He had been able, they will have been able, we could. 3. The very children no longer desired peace. 4. They say that our allies are in the same danger to-day. 5. I think that I can stay two days with that friend of yours. 6. The traders reported that many bands of horsemen had been sent into the mountains. 7. I think that you can fight. 8. You thought that I could not come.

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS LIII-LX

415. Give the English meanings of the following words:

alius	· difficultās	· nec	putō	sōlus
alter	dolor	· neque	quārtus	spērō
cēdō	duo	neuter	quattuor	tertius
celeritās	ēdūcō	nihil	· quot	timor
coepī	fremitus	nūllus	· reddō	tōtus
cognōscō	idem	· num	regiō	trādō
conlocō	ipse	nūntiō	respondeō	trēs
cōstituō	iste	octō	rogō	ūllus
cōsulō	iubeō	ōrātiō	rūsus	unde
cupiō	· iuvō	ostendō	sciō	undique
dēbeō	lacrima	pāene	sentiō	ūnus
decimus	memoria	passus	simul	uter
dēpōnō	mille	possum	sinister	uterque
dexter	mille passuum			

416. Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

two	· answer, reply	memory	give way, retire
one	· nearly, almost	the other	think, believe, reckon
left	and not, nor	know	· put down, lay aside
tear	give back, return	began	· from all sides, everywhere
speed	other, another	three	no, no one, none
eight	how many	· whence	lead out, lead forth
again	be able, can	· help, aid	· at the same time
four	· show, display	hope	bid, order, command
mile	which (of two)	difficulty	this of yours, that of yours
ask	speech, plea	place	establish, determine
third	place, station	noise	alone, sole, only
neither	desire, wish	thousand	learn, know, understand
pace	report, announce	right	ought, be obliged to
nothing	whole, all	-self	give over, surrender

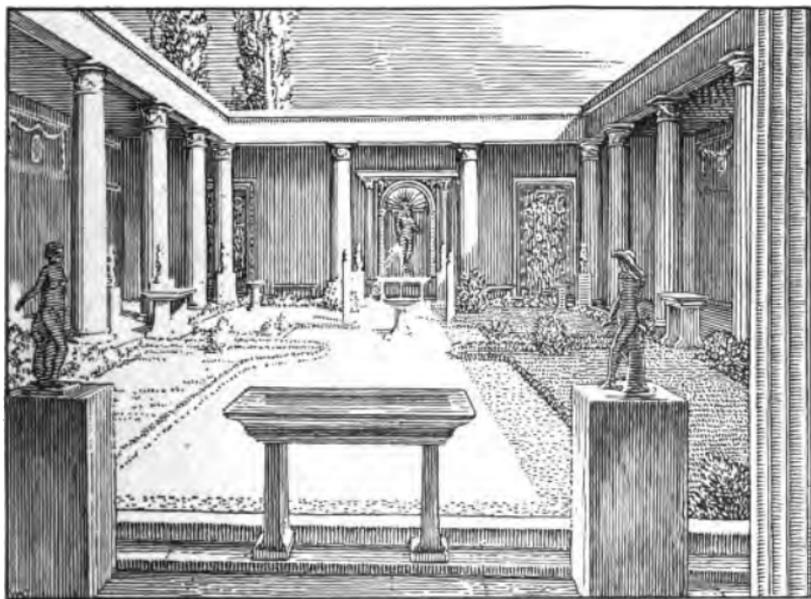
same	each, both	whether	feel, know, perceive
fourth	any (at all)	fear	plan, deliberate, consult
tenth	grief, pain		

417. Decline each noun, adjective, and pronoun in 415. Conjugate each verb in all tenses of the subjunctive mood. Make synopses. Give the infinitives of each verb.

418. Following the suggestions of 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 415. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

419. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. Indirect questions | 5. Infinitive as object |
| 2. Objective genitive | 6. Indirect statements |
| 3. Infinitive as subject | 7. Accusative as subject of the infinitive |
| 4. Infinitive as complement | |



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LXI

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

420. The Indefinite Pronouns. The indefinite pronouns (11, g) are compounds of **quis** and of **quī**. The following indefinite pronouns will be used in this book :

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, aliquod, *some, some one, any, any one*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, quoddam, *a certain one, a certain*
quisquam, —, quidquam (no plural), *any one (at all)*
quisque, quaeque, quidque, quodque, *each, each one, every, every one*

a. Learn the meanings and the declension of these pronouns (657).

b. The meanings of the neuters (*something, anything, etc.*) are easily inferred.

c. Observe how **aliqua**, which is both the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative and accusative plural of **aliquis**, differs from the corresponding forms of **quis**.

d. Observe that **quīdam** (**quī + dam**) is declined like **quī**, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** is changed to **n**; also that the neuter has **quiddam** and **quoddam** in the nominative and accusative singular.

e. In the neuter of all indefinites the **quid** forms are used as pronouns, and the **quod** forms as adjectives.

EXERCISES

421. 1. Duo nova flūmina ā quibusdam virīs audācibus re-
perta sunt. 2. Nōn iam quemquam ante domum vidēre possum.
3. Ut civēs timōre liberāret, arma statim trādi iussit. 4. Quīdam
captivus idem rūsus nūntiāvit. 5. Quisque aliquid respondēre
potuerit. 6. Aliquae fēminae nōn solum perturbātae erant, sed
etiam fūgerant. 7. Lēgātus quemque ex finibus frumentum

portāre iubēbit. 8. Quaedam legiō spē victōriāe Delphōs properābat. 9. Īnsulae similis est ista terra.

422. 1. Each says that the Gauls are approaching. 2. He does not demand anything at all. 3. That girl has something in her right hand. 4. A part of each summer we live among the mountains and hills. 5. To-day a story was told to us by somebody. 6. At the same time certain (men) came to Cæsar to demand help. 7. I know what each is able to do.

THE NATIONS OF GAUL

423. Gallia est omnis divisa (*divided*) in partis trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam ei quī Galli appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, quod prōvinciae Rōmānae propinquī nōn sunt neque mercātōrēs ad eōs saepe perveniunt; proximique sunt Germānis quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā (*for this reason*, 186) Helvētīi quoque fortiōrēs quam reliquī Galli sunt. Cotidiānis ferē proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum (*when*) aut (*either*) suis finibus eōs prohibent aut (*or*) ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Ea pars quam Galli obtinent initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā (*Garonne*) flūmine, oceanō, finibus Belgārum.



TABLE, VASE, AND LAMP STANDS

LESSON LXII

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS · THE DATIVES OF PURPOSE AND REFERENCE

424. The Dative with Compounds.

1. **Quis equitibus praefuit?** *who commanded the horsemen?*
2. **Huic legiōni lēgātum praefēcit,** *he put a lieutenant in charge of this legion.*

a. Observe that **praefuit**, which is a compound of **sum**, is intransitive. It does not admit a direct object, but does admit the indirect object **equitibus**. There are a number of Latin verbs which in their simple form take neither a direct nor an indirect object; when these verbs are compounded with a preposition, they have a meaning which may take an indirect object. Some compound verbs take both a direct and an indirect object: as, **praefēcit** in sentence 2.

425. Rule for the Dative with Compounds. *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, take a dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

426. The Datives of Purpose and Reference.

1. **Militēs ibi erant praesidiō,** *soldiers were there as (for) a defense.*
2. **Militēs auxiliō eīs mittuntur,** *soldiers are sent as (for) a help to them.*

a. Observe that the datives **praesidiō** and **auxiliō** are used to express the purpose for which something serves. This usage is called the *Dative of Purpose*. Often the dative of purpose is accompanied by another dative, called the *Dative of Reference*, denoting the person or thing served: as, **eīs** in sentence 2. This combination is known as the *Double Dative*.

427. Rule for the Dative of Purpose. *The dative is used to denote the purpose for which a thing serves.*

428. Rule for the Dative of Reference. *The dative is used to denote the person (or, rarely, the thing) affected by the action or situation expressed by the verb.*

429.

VOCABULARY

mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f., fortification, defense (*ammunition*)

praesidium, praesi'di, n., defense, protection, guard

subsidiū, subsi'di, n., help, aid
ūsus, -ūs, m., use, benefit, advantage (*useful*)

dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be lacking, be wanting, fail

occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occur-sūrus, run toward, meet (*occur*)

praeficiō, praeficere, praefēci, praefectus, place in command of (*prefect*)

praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitus, surpass, be superior to

praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus, be at the head of, command

supersum, superesse, superfui, superfutūrus, be left over, survive

EXERCISES

430. 1. Ūnum oppidum sociōrum ab hostibus diū oppugnātum erat, et mūnitiōnēs cotidiē yāstābantur. 2. Quod cibus et arma cīvibus deesse coepērunt, socii rogāvērunt ut Caesar cōpiās auxiliō mitteret. 3. Itaque Caesar Labiēnum ūni legiōni praefēcit et eum subsidiō cīvibus mīsit. 4. In itinere Labiēnus hostibus occurrit, quī omnibus ex partibus vēnerant ut oppidum caperent. 5. Pila impedimentō nostris, sed magnō ūsui gladii erant. 6. Nostri hostibus praestitērunt et eōs superāvērunt. 7. Labiēnus dixit sē cīvibus praesidiō futūrum esse. 8. Scisne quis eī oppidō praefuerit?

431. 1. Courage did not often fail Cæsar. 2. He commanded brave men. 3. He was a protection to his country. 4. He did not survive his last (*proximus*) wars many years. 5. He was superior to the chiefs of the Gauls and the Germans. 6. He placed lieutenants in charge over the nations which had been conquered. 7. The sea is many feet deeper than this lake.

LESSON LXIII

THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS · THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLO, NOLO, MALO*

432. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.

1. *Legiōni imperat, he commands a legion.*
2. *Amicō meō persuādet, he persuades my friend.*

a. Observe that *legiōni* and *amicō* are in the dative case, while the English equivalents are in the objective case. It is obvious, therefore, that the Latin verbs *imperō* and *persuādeō* are intransitive, and that they admit an indirect object. *Verbs of Attitude or Relationship*

433. Rule for the Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs. *Most verbs meaning believe, favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites, also command, obey, pardon, persuade, resist, serve, spare, and the like, take a dative of the indirect object.*

a. Such verbs used in this book are *crēdō, believe; faveō, favor; imperō, command; noceō, harm; persuādeō, persuade; placeō, please; resistō, resist; and studeō, desire, be eager for.*

b. Observe that *imperō* has an indirect object, while *iubeō* takes a direct object.

434. The Irregular Verbs *Volō, Nōlō, and Malō.* Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of *volō, wish, nōlō (nē + volō), be unwilling, and mālō (magis volō), be more willing, prefer, in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive (665).*

435.

VOCABULARY

mulier, mulieris, f., woman
neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor
occāsus, -ūs, m., setting (occasion)
sōl, sōlis, m., sun (solstice)

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus,
believe, trust (creditor)
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, favor
(favor)

mālō, mālī, mālūi, —, be more willing, prefer

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, harm, injure (*obnoxious*)

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsi, persuāsus, persuade (*persuasive*)

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitūrus, please, be pleasing to (*placidly*)

resistō, resistere, restitī, —, resist, oppose (*resistance*)

studeō, studēre, studuī, —, be eager for, desire (*student*)

volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, wish (*volition*)

m

EXERCISES

436. 1. Vultis, nolumus, māvis. 2. Mercātoribus nōn crēdidit. 3. Nōlle, māluisse. 4. Vōbis persuādēre volunt. 5. Vult mihi favēre. 6. Neque nōlunt tibi nocēre. 7. Tibi auxiliō esse mālumus. 8. Cūr nōn vīs mātrī tuae esse praesidiō? 9. Putāmus eum voluisse equitātū praeesse. 10. Sōlis occāsū militēs castra hostium capient. 11. Paucae enim ex his nātiōibus bellō student. 12. Militibus imperāvit ut fortiter Gallis resisterent. 13. Neque mulierēs neque liberī timēbant.

437. 1. They were wishing, I shall be unwilling, she will prefer. 2. They were not willing to help our men. 3. They were not able to please your friends. 4. And they did not persuade the general. 5. He will command them not to harm the women. 6. Neither the Gauls nor the Germans desired war at that time.



WALL DECORATION OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LXIV

READING LESSON

BELLING THE CAT

✓ **438.** Quīdam mūrēs aliquandō concilium habēbant, nam fēlem maximē timēbant. Cōnsilia quae prōposita sunt omnibus nōn placēbant. Tandem ūnus ex mūrībus ita dixit: "Tintinnābulum caudae fēlis adnectere dēbēmus. Sic enim sonitū eius monēbimur et fugere poterimus. Quis vestrum hoc facere vult?" Sed nūlli ex sociis persuādere potuit ut tintinnābulum fēli adnecteret, et ipse nōluit. Ea fābula docet plūrimōs in suādendō¹ esse audācēs sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.

NASICA AND ENNIUS

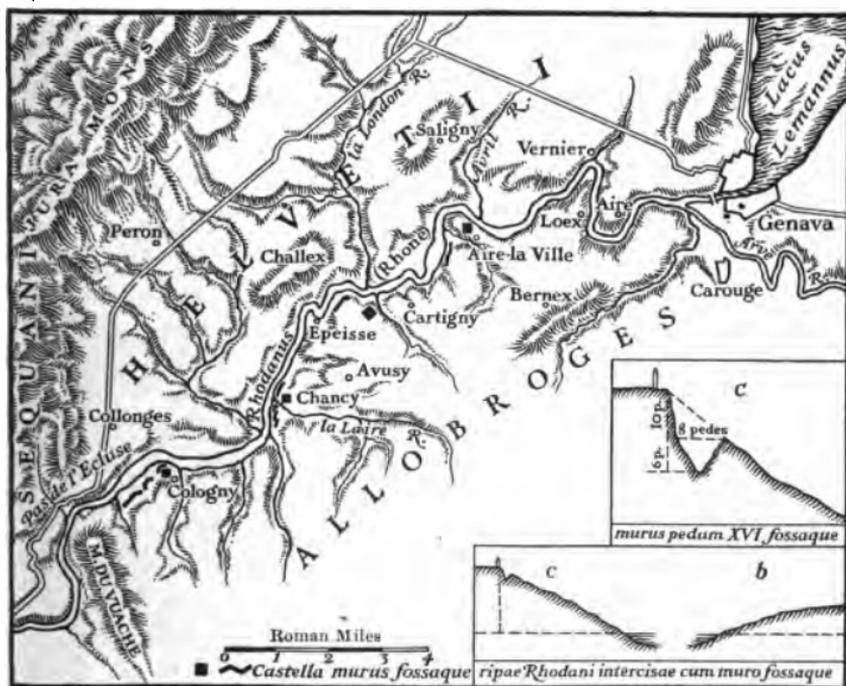
439. Nāsica aliquandō ad poētā² Ennium vēnit et dē eō quaesivit. Ancilla respondit Ennium domi³ nōn esse. Nāsica autem sēnsit illam domini iussū hoc dixisse et Ennium domi³ esse. Paucis post diēbus⁴ Ennius ad Nāsicam vēnit. Ei exclāmat Nāsica sē domi nōn esse. Tum Ennius dixit, "Quid? Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?" Hic⁵ Nāsica: "Homō es impudēs. Ego ancillae tuae crēdidī; tū mihi ipsi nōn crēdis?"

ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETIANS

440. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus erat Orgetorix. Is rēgni cupiditāte inductus est et coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Tum civitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis properārent. Facilius eis persuāsit quod undique loci nātūrā

¹ suādendō, *offering advice.* ² ad poētā, *to the house of the poet.* ³ domi, *at home.* ⁴ paucis post diēbus, *a few days later.* ⁵ hic, *adv., hereupon.*

Helvētii continentur : ūnā ex parte (*on one side*) flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētiorum ā Germānis dividit ; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētios ; tertiā (ex parte) lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiiis dividit. Propter multitudinem hominum et glōriam belli angustōs sē finēs habēre putābant, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL (ducenta quadrāgintā), in lātitudinem CLXXX (centum octōgintā) patēbant.



MAP OF HELVETIA.

pres.
 perf.
 fut.

act. -
 -nt (o. u. p. o. m. e.)
 -ndus (o. u. p. o. m. e.)
 -ūrus (o. u. p. o. m. e.)
 -us (o. u. p. o. m. e.)

LESSON LXV

PARTICIPLES

441. Participles. Learn the participles of the model verbs (658-662), and their meanings.

a. Observe that the present active and the future passive participles are formed from the present stem by the addition of **-ns** and **-ndus**, with certain changes in quantity; and the future active and the perfect passive from the participial stem by the addition of **-ūrus** and **-us**. But observe that in verbs of the fourth conjugation and of the third conjugation ending in **-iō** the present active participle has **-iēns** and the future passive participle has **-iendus**. Form the participles of **gerō**, **videō**, **iaciō**, **vāstō**, and **mūniō**.

442. The Declension of Participles. Participles in **-ns** are declined like **amāns** (645). The ablative singular ending is **-e**; but the ending is **-ī** when the word is used as an adjective. The other participles are declined like **bonus** (643). Decline the participles of **gerō**.

443. The Agreement of Participles. Since participles are verbal adjectives (xxxiv), they agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case.

444. The Tenses of Participles. The present active participle is used of an action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb: as, **tē labōrantem videō**, *I see you working*; **tē labōrantem vidī**, *I saw you working*.

The perfect passive participle is used of an action that is completed at the time of the action of the main verb: as, **miles vulnerātus domum vēnit**, *the soldier, having been wounded, came home*.

The future active and passive participles are used of actions which are to occur after the time of the action of the main

verb. In this book the future active participle is used only in the formation of the future active infinitive (392, *d*). The uses of the future passive participle will be explained later (471-473).

445. The Translation of Participles.

1. **Tē in urbe manentem vidi**, *I saw you when you were staying in the city.*
2. **Urbs diū oppugnāta nōn capta est**, *the city, though besieged for a long time, was not taken.*
3. **Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit**, *Cæsar, because he was alarmed by this circumstance, hastened into Gaul.*
4. **Dux victus sē recipiet**, *the general, if defeated, will retreat.*
5. **Dōna missa recēpit**, *he received the gifts which had been sent.*
6. **Caesar principem captum Rōmam misit**, *Cæsar captured a chieftain and sent him to Rome.*

a. Observe that in the first five sentences the participle is translated by clauses of *time*, *concession*, *cause*, and *condition*, and by a *relative clause*. In 6 the participle is translated by a *coördinate verb*. Note the words which introduce the different clauses. When you meet a participle, consider which of these six ways best brings out the thought of the sentence and translate accordingly. Do not translate a participle literally.

446.

VOCABULARY

hiberna , -ōrum, <i>n. plur.</i> , winter quarters (<i>hibernate</i>)	moveō , movēre , mōvi , mōtus , move (<i>motion</i>)
commoveō , commovēre , commōvi , commōtus , disturb, move, arouse (<i>commotion</i>)	reducō , reducere , redūxi , reductus , lead back (<i>reduce</i>)

EXERCISES

447. 1. Alii militēs fugientēs capti sunt. 2. His rēbus impediti eō diē impetum nōn fēcērunt. 3. Alter centuriō primā in aciē pugnāns vulnerātus est. 4. Ad nostrōs militēs castra oppugnantis auxilium missum erat. 5. Quaedam mulierēs in oppidō relictæ sē dēfendere cōstituērunt. 6. Pars hostium

adventū Caesaris commōta sōlis occāsū discessit. 7. In hibernis reductōs militēs relinqūbat. 8. Multitūdō servōrum territa ex urbe fugiēbat. 9. Posterō diē castra mōvērunt.

448. 1. A certain man, while resisting, was wounded by an enemy. 2. Although wounded, they fought so bravely that they could not be captured. 3. Since he was disturbed by the difficulties of the march, he decided to lead back his legions. 4. Those horsemen who were sent ahead resisted the Gauls long and bravely. 5. If asked concerning your plans, I shall say nothing. 6. The leaders will be captured and sent to Italy.



GALLI CAPTI IN CASTRA REDUCUNTUR

LESSON LXVI

READING LESSON

DICTA ANTIQUORUM

449. 1. Lacaena filiō in proelium properantī dixit, "Aut in scūtō aut cum scūtō."

2. Leōnidās militi nūntianti, "Hostēs nōbis propinquī sunt," respondit, "Etiam nōs hostibus propinquī sumus."

3. Thalēs interrogātus, "Quid hominibus commūne est?" respondit, "Spēs; hanc enim etiam illi habent quī nihil aliud habent."

4. Āgis mūrōs firmōs altōsque Corinthī spectāns rogāvit, "Quārum mulierum haec urbs est?"

5. Aristotelem quidam rogāvit, "Quid est amicitia?" Ille respondit, "Ūnus animus in duōbus corporibus."

6. Cicerō dixit, "Nōn potest exercitum is continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn continet."

450.

VOCABULARY

rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, kingdom (*interregnum*)

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, lead to, influence (*adduce*)

obtinēō, obtinēre, obtinui, obten-

tus, possess, occupy, hold (*obtain*)

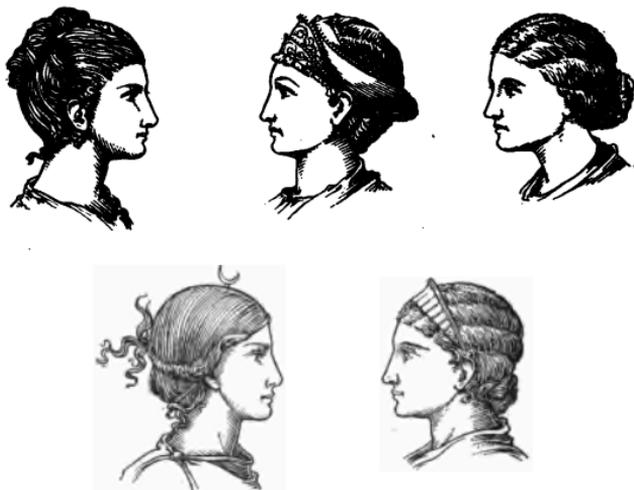
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus, take up, undertake

(*susceptible*)

ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETIANS (CONTINUED FROM 440)

451. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti Helvētīi cōstituērunt carrōrum maximum numerum emere, cōpiam frūmenti parāre, pācem et amicitiam cum proximis civitātibus cōfirmāre. Orgetorix interim lēgatiōnem ad civitātēs

suscēpit. In eō itinere persuāsit Casticō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanis multōs antōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret. Cuidam aliī principī persuāsit ut idem faceret. Ōrātiōne Orgetorigis adducti hī principēs īter sē obsidēs dant, et tōtam Galliam sēsē occupāre posse spērant. Helvētīi autem hoc cōnsilium nōn probāvērunt. Itaque multitudinem hominum ex agris coēgērunt ut cōnsilia Orgetorigis prohibērent. Sed eō tempore Orgetorix subitō mortuus est (*died*).



ROMAN STYLES OF HAIRDRESSING

LESSON LXVII

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

452. The Ablative Absolute.

1. **Cōnsul, castris mūnītis, Rōmam vēnit**, *with the camp fortified, the consul came to Rome.*
2. **Caesare dūcente, semper vincimus**, *with Cæsar leading, we always conquer.*
3. **Caesare duce, vincēmus**, *with Cæsar as leader, we shall conquer.*

a. Observe that the ablatives in these sentences are so loosely connected with the rest of the sentence that they are grammatically independent. Because of its loose connection with the sentence this usage of the ablative is known as the *Ablative Absolute* (**ab + solvō**).

453. How to translate the Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute is usually translated, not as above, but by a clause : thus,

1. *When (because, although, if) the camp had been fortified, the consul came to Rome.*
2. *When (because, although, if) Cæsar is leading, we always conquer.*
3. *When (because, although, if) Cæsar is leader, we shall conquer.*

The method of translation in any particular sentence must be determined by asking which kind of clause best expresses the thought of the sentence as a whole.

454. The Formation of the Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute may be formed by a noun or pronoun with a participle (as in 452, 1 and 2); or by a noun or pronoun with another noun or an adjective (as in 452, 3). The present active and perfect passive participles are used in this construction. Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, a participle is not expressed when the ablative absolute is formed as it is in 452, 3 : **Caesare duce, Cæsar (being) leader.**

a. An ablative absolute containing a perfect passive participle expresses an action that occurred before the action expressed by the main verb of the sentence; one containing a present participle expresses an action occurring at the same time as that of the main verb.

b. The Latin perfect participle is not found in the active voice. Accordingly such a sentence as *Cæsar, having defeated the Gauls, returned to Rome* has to be recast into the form *Cæsar, the Gauls having been defeated, returned to Rome, Caesar, Gallis victis, Rōmam rediit.*

c. The noun of the ablative absolute is always a different person or thing from the subject or object of the sentence.

455. Rule for the Ablative Absolute. *The ablative of a noun or pronoun, with a participle, a noun, or an adjective in agreement, is used to express time, cause, concession, condition, or other relations.*

456.

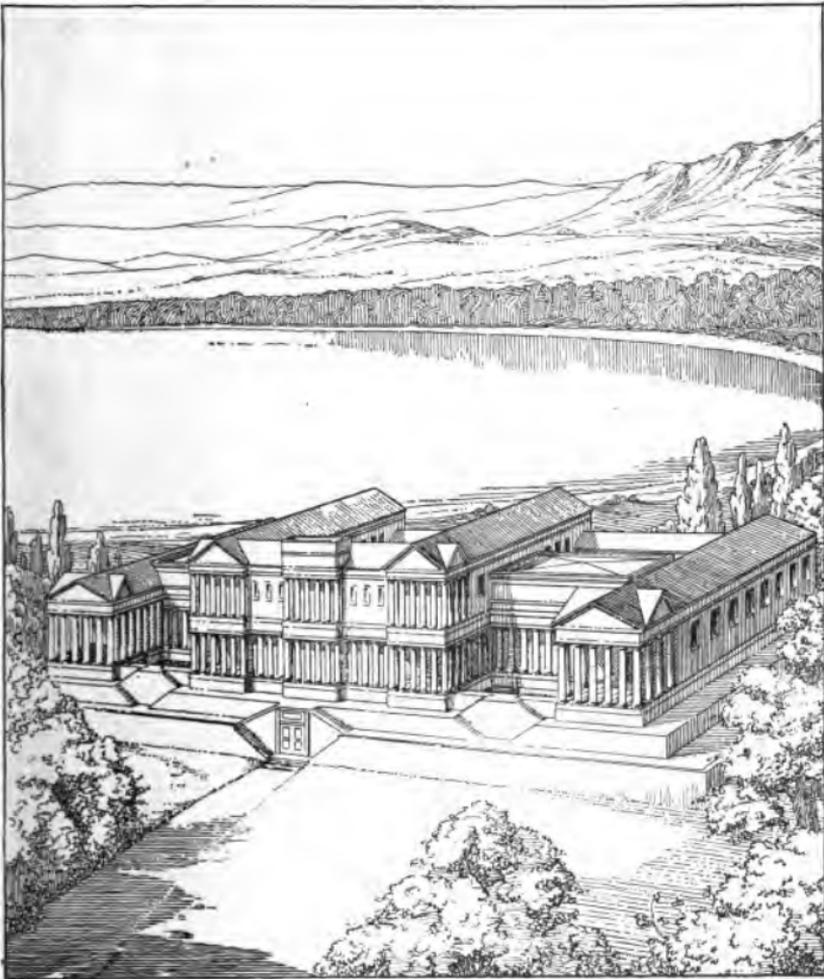
VOCABULARY

dēditio, dēditio ⁿ is, <i>f.</i> , surrender	medius, -a, -um, middle of
ēruptio, ēruptio ⁿ is, <i>f.</i> , sally, sortie (<i>eruption</i>)	(<i>medium</i>)
	ripa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , bank (<i>riparian</i>)

EXERCISES

457. 1. Hostibus victis, per mediam prōvinciam iter facere cōstituit. 2. Cæsare cōsule, cum Gallis longum erat bellum. 3. Oppidō quōdam expugnātō, castra in ripis ipsis huius flūminis posuerunt. 4. Helvētiū omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad Cæsarem miserunt. 5. His rēbus repertis, omnēs bellō studēbant. 6. Hoc oppidum, paucis dēfendentibus, Rōmāni capere nōn potuerunt. 7. Captivis in dēditōnem acceptis, dux subsidiō castris trēs cohortēs reliquit. 8. Hī captivi eidem fortissimē pugnantes capti erant. 9. Quis prae fuit equitibus quī imperātōri auxiliō missi sunt? 10. Urbe munitā, civēs nōn iam terrēbantur.

458. 1. When he had heard these words, he was much disturbed. 2. When the city had been taken, the soldiers set the prisoners free. 3. The enemy resisted our men all day. 4. If Labienus is leader, our army will be able to injure the enemy. 5. Labienus, having captured the mountain, was waiting for our men. 6. Although a sortie was made, they were not able to approach our first line.



A COUNTRY VILLA

LESSON LXVIII

THE GERUND · THE IRREGULAR VERB EO

459. The Gerund. The gerund (xxxii, c) is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. It is formed by adding *-ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō* to the present stem, with certain changes in quantity and spelling. Learn the gerunds of the model verbs (658–662).

460. What the Gerund is. The gerund is like the English verbal noun in *-ing*, as, *loving*; but it lacks a nominative case. For the nominative the infinitive is used.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>amāre, to love, loving</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>amandī, of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>amandō, for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>amandum, loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>amandō, by loving</i>

461. The Uses of the Gerund. The gerund is used in the various constructions of nouns. Since it is a *verbal* noun, it may have a direct or an indirect object: as, *vincendō hostēs, by overcoming the enemy*; *resistendō hostibus, by resisting the enemy*. Also observe the following:

1. *Ad pugnandum vēnērunt, they came for fighting, for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
2. *Pugnandī causā vēnērunt, they came for the sake of fighting, to fight.*

a. Observe that the accusative of the gerund with *ad*, or the genitive of the gerund with *causā*, is used to express purpose. *Causā* when so used follows its genitive. This method of expressing purpose is used in brief statements.

462. The Irregular Verb *Eō*. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the irregular verb *eō* (667).

a. Observe where *ī* (the root of *eō*) is changed to *e* in the present indicative and subjunctive, in the present participle, and in the gerund. In the perfect system *-v-* is regularly dropped. For the declension of the present participle see 645.

463.

VOCABULARY

<i>causā</i> , <i>abl. of causa</i> , for the sake of, to	<i>accēdō</i> , <i>accēdere</i> , <i>accessī</i> , <i>accessūrus</i> , come near, approach (<i>accession</i>)
<i>nōmen</i> , <i>nōminis</i> , <i>n.</i> , name (<i>nōminate</i>)	<i>coniciō</i> , <i>conicere</i> , <i>coniciēci</i> , <i>coniectus</i> , throw, hurl (<i>conjecture</i>)
<i>spatium</i> , <i>spatī</i> , <i>n.</i> , room, space, time, opportunity (<i>spacious</i>)	<i>eō</i> , <i>ire</i> , <i>ii</i> (<i>ivī</i>), <i>itūrus</i> , go (<i>initial</i>)
<i>vāllum</i> , <i>-ī</i> , <i>n.</i> , rampart, earthworks (<i>interval</i>)	<i>ōrō</i> , <i>ōrāre</i> , <i>ōrāvī</i> , <i>ōrātus</i> , speak, plead, beg (<i>orator</i>)

EXERCISES

464. 1. It, imus, ibant. 2. Ire, isse, ibunt. 3. Eunt, ierant, iit. 4. Difficultātem nāvigandī nūntiāvit. 5. Haec est causa mittendī. 6. Litterās mittendī causā vēnit. 7. Diligentia in agendō ducī placet. 8. Spatium pugnandī nōn datum est. 9. Caesar finem ōrandī fēcit. 10. Spatium pila in hostis coniciendī breve fuit. 11. Accessērunt ad dicendum. 12. Vōbiscum ibit ut nōmina eōrum roget. 13. Voluit cognōscere quō issent. 14. Labiēnus imperāvit ut castra vāllō mūnīrentur.

465. 1. You are going, they were going, he had gone. 2. We shall go, you will have gone. 3. Whither have they gone? 4. He persuades them to go. 5. He ordered them to go. 6. They came near for the sake of seeking peace. 7. Time was not given for pleading. 8. They went toward the sea for the purpose of sailing. 9. That day they went three miles, and at sunset pitched camp.

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS LXI-LXVIII

466. Give the English meanings of the following words :

accēdō	ēruptiō	noceō	praesidium	sōl
addūcō	faveō	nōlō	praestō	spatium
aliquis	hiberna	nōmen	praesum	studeō
causā	mālō	obtinēō	quidam	subsidiūm
commoveō	medius	occāsus	quisquam	supersum
coniciō	moveō	occurrō	quisque	suscipiō
crēdō	mulier	ōrō	reducō	ūsus
dēditō	mūnitiō	persuādeō	rēgnūm	vāllūm
dēsum	neque . . .	placeō	resistō	volō
eō	neque	praeficiō	ripa	

467. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

neither . . . nor	kingdom	use, benefit, advantage
be unwilling	bank	each, each one, every, every one
be left over, survive	throw, hurl	possess, occupy, hold
be willing, wish	favor	disturb, move, arouse
resist, oppose	sun	surpass, be superior to
believe, trust	surrender	rampart, earthworks
place in command	move	be at the head of, command
for the sake of, to	harm, injure	some, some one, any, any one
be eager for, desire	help, aid	be more willing, prefer
speak, plead, beg	middle of	defense, protection, guard
sally, sortie	name	be lacking, be wanting, fail
lead to, influence	woman	come near, approach
winter quarters	persuade	please, be pleasing to
take up, undertake	lead back	room, space, time, opportunity
run towards, meet	setting	a certain one, a certain
any one (at all)	go	fortification, defense

468. Decline the nouns in 466. Decline the indefinite pronouns. Give the principal parts of each verb. Give the participles of each verb. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural. Conjugate *volō*, *nōlō*, and *eō* throughout.

469. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 466. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

470. Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Dative with compounds | 5. Participles as the equivalent of certain clauses |
| 2. Dative of purpose | 6. Ablative absolute |
| 3. Dative of reference | 7. Gerund |
| 4. Dative with special intransitive verbs | |



WALL DECORATION OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LXIX

THE GERUNDIVE · THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERO*

471. The Gerundive. The future passive participle (441, 444) is more commonly called the *Gerundive*. It is a verbal adjective, and must be distinguished from the gerund, which is a verbal noun. The gerund, being a noun, may be used alone or with an object; but the gerundive, being an adjective, must agree with a noun.

472. The Gerundive used in Place of the Gerund.

1. *Pācem petendī causā vēnērunt, they came for the purpose of seeking peace.*
- ∨ 2. *Pācis petendae causā vēnērunt, they came for the purpose of seeking peace.*

a. Observe that the Latin sentences have the same meaning, and that 1 contains a gerund, *petendī*, with an object, *pācem*; while 2 contains a gerundive, *petendae*, in agreement with *pācis*. Instead of a gerund with an object, the Romans much preferred the gerundive construction, except occasionally in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

473. The Gerundive used in the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. The gerundive is also used with forms of *sum* as a predicate adjective. This is known as the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*. For a synopsis see 670.

1. *Miles laudandus est, the soldier is to be praised, must be praised, ought to be praised.*
2. *Cornēlia laudanda erat, Cornelia was to be praised, ought to have been praised, needed to be praised.*

a. Observe that these sentences express necessity. Observe, too, the methods of translation.

474. The Irregular Verb *Ferō*. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of the irregular verb *ferō* (666).

475.**VOCABULARY**

libertās, libertātis, f., freedom
(*liberty*)

signum, -i, n., sign, signal (*signify*)

vis, vis, f., force, strength, power,
might (642) (*violence*)

augeō, augēre, auxi, auctus, in-
crease, enlarge (*auction*)

*conveniō, convenire, convēni, con-
ventūrus*, come together, as-
semble (*convene*)

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, bring;
report, say (*transfer*)

EXERCISES

476. 1. Fert, ferimus, ferent. 2. Ferre, feret, tulisse. 3. Rūsus veniunt ut auxilium ferant. 4. Tulerant, lātus esse. 5. In petendā pāce. 6. Libertātis petendae causā. 7. Viribus augendis. 8. Pontis faciendī. 9. Legiō ad bellum gerendum sē parat. 10. Multi convēnērunt urbis novae videndae causā. 11. Signum dandum erat. 12. Signō datō, militēs impetum summā celeritātē fēcērunt. 13. Omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant. 14. Putāmus bellum parandum esse. 15. Ad pila conicienda tempus dēfuit. 16. Arma in hiberna ferenda sunt.

477. 1. You are bearing, they bear, he had borne. 2. You have borne, they were bearing, by bearing. 3. Help was being brought. 4. They said that they should bring the shields. 5. Of seeing the town. 6. For the sake of drawing up a line of battle. 7. By carrying on war. 8. In laying waste the fields. 9. The strength of the allies is being increased daily. 10. The force of the enemy must be borne. 11. The cohort must be led back with speed. 12. A lieutenant ought to have been put in command of these troops.

LESSON LXX

READING LESSON

478.

VOCABULARY

mors, mortis *f.*, death (*mortality*)
privātus, -a, -um, private, personal
(private)
vadum, -i, n., ford, shoal
vel . . . vel, conj., either . . . or
exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus, go out,
 go forth (*exit*)
incendō, incendere, incendi, incēn-
sus, burn, kindle, excite (*in-*
cendiary)

incipiō, incipere, incēpi, inceptus,
 begin (*incipient*)
pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus, sub-
 due, pacify
permittō, permittere, permisī, per-
missus, allow, suffer, give up
(permission)
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui, —,
 extend, pertain to (*pertinent*)
trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsi-
tus, go across, cross (*transit*)

THE HELVETIANS LEAVE THEIR TERRITORY

479. Post Orgetorigis mortem tamen Helvētiī id quod cōn-
 stituerant facere incēpērunt, ut ē finibus suis exirent. Ubi iam
 sē ad eam rem parātōs esse putāvērunt, oppida sua omnia et
 vicōs et privāta aedificia incendērunt. Frūmentum et cibum
 sibi quemque domō ferre iussērunt. Persuāsērunt quibusdam
 civitātibus finitimis ut oppidis suis vicisque incēnsis cum eis
 exirent.

Erant omninō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire po-
 terant: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem
 Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; mōns autem altissimus impendē-
 bat, ut facile paucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam
 Rōmānam, multō facilius, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et
 Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn-
 nullis locis vadō trānsitur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs esse vel vī coāctūrōs esse spērābant ut per suōs finēs eōs ire permitterent. Omnibus rēbus parātis diem conveniendī dicunt.

Caesar per nūntiōs audivit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere coēpisse. Statim properāvit Rōmā et quam maximis potuit itineribus¹ in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervēnit. Prōvinciae tōti quam maximum potuit militum numerum imperāvit (erat omninō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genāvam iussit rescindi. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī cognōvērunt, lēgātōs ad eum misērunt.

¹ **quam maximis (potuit) itineribus**, by as long journeys as possible. Sometimes Cæsar traveled a hundred miles a day.



DINING COUCHES

LESSON LXXI

THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION · DEPONENT VERBS

480. The Ablative of Specification.

Gallōs virtūte superant, they surpass the Gauls in courage.

a. Observe that the ablative *virtūte* tells in what respect the Gauls are surpassed. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Specification*.

481. Rule for the Ablative of Specification. *The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

482. Deponent Verbs. Deponent verbs are verbs which have passive forms with active meanings. They occur in each of the regular conjugations, and are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive: first conjugation, *-ārī*; second, *-erī*; third, *-ī*; fourth, *-irī*. Learn the principal parts, the meanings, and the conjugation of the deponent verbs in 669.

483. The Active Forms and the Participles of Deponent Verbs. A deponent verb has the following active forms:

Fut. Infin. hortātūrus esse *Gerund* hortandī, etc.

It has the participles of both voices:

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāns, <i>urging</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus, <i>having urged</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus, <i>about to</i>	<i>Gerundive</i>	hortandus, <i>to be urged</i>
	<i>urge, going to urge</i>		

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is active in meaning; the gerundive is passive. As the perfect participle is active in meaning, an ablative absolute (454, *b*) is seldom necessary with this participle; instead, the construction is the same as in English: as,

**Hortātus militēs signum dedit, having encouraged the soldiers
he gave the signal, or, when he had encouraged, etc.**

484.

VOCABULARY

cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, try, attempt (<i>conative</i>)	proficiscor, proficiāci, profectus sum, set out, march
experior, experiri, expertus sum, test, make trial of (<i>experience</i>)	prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, go forward, advance (<i>progress</i>)
hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, urge, entreat (<i>exhortation</i>)	sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow (<i>sequence</i>)
polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum, promise, offer	vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear, respect (<i>reverence</i>)

EXERCISES

485. 1. Experiēbāmini, cōnāmur, hortāberis. 2. Pollicēbantur, experiuntur, veriti erāmus. 3. Ut sequātur, verēns, sequendō. 4. Proficiscētur, sequendī causā, secūtūrus esse. 5. Veriti sunt, secūtūrus, prōgredientur. 6. Cōnātur, expertus esse, ad prōgrediendum. 7. Verēmini mortem. 8. Caesar hortātus est militēs ut ducēs sequerentur. 9. Illō diē exercitus proficiscēbātur. 10. Ipse cum celeritāte eōs sequētur. 11. His persuāserant ut eandem fortūnam belli experirentur. 12. Nātiōnēs Germāniae subsidium pollicitae erant. 13. Per finēs nostrōs ire cōnantur. 14. Puer patri virtūte similis erat.

486. 1. He was urging, they urge, they will follow. 2. She has followed, he fears, to attempt. 3. They had followed many miles. 4. You will set out, they will advance, going to follow. 5. Having followed, to have advanced. 6. Cæsar ordered the same two legions to set out. 7. They do not follow the tribune. 8. They will set out at daybreak in order to follow the enemy. 9. Although they promised grain, they were unable to bring it because of a lack of carts. 10. The poor soldiers are tired in body, but they surpass the enemy in speed.

LESSON LXXII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH CUM · THE IRREGULAR VERB FIO

487. Temporal Clauses with Cum. The Latin conjunction *cum*, *-when, while*, introduces temporal clauses (xx, e).

1. *Cum Caesar in Italiā erat, bellum in Galliā ortum est, when (while) Cæsar was in Italy, a war began in Gaul.*
2. *Caesar, cum id nūntiātum esset, in Galliam contendit, Cæsar, when this had been reported, hastened into Gaul.*
3. *Cum nūntius pervēnerit, Caesar prōgrediētur, when the messenger arrives, Cæsar will advance.*

a. Observe that the temporal clause in sentence 1 *fixes the time* at which the war began, and that its verb is in the indicative. Observe that the clause in sentence 2 *describes the circumstances* under which Cæsar was impelled to hasten into Gaul, and that its verb is in the subjunctive. Observe that the temporal clause in sentence 3 *refers to future time*, and that its verb is in the indicative.

488. Rule for Temporal Clauses with Cum. *Temporal clauses referring to past time, when introduced by cum, have their verb in the indicative if they fix the time of an action, but in the subjunctive if they describe the circumstances of an action. The indicative is used in temporal clauses introduced by cum referring to present or to future time.*

489. The Irregular Verb Fio. The verb *faciō*, which you have frequently used in the active voice, forms its present system in the passive from the irregular verb *fiō*. Learn the principal parts of *fiō* and its conjugation (668). Review the complete inflection of *faciō*. The passive voice of the compounds of *faciō* is inflected regularly.

490.

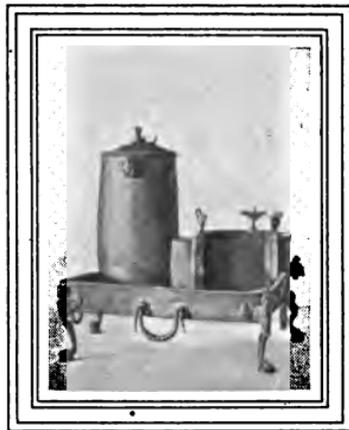
VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, certain, sure
cum, conj., when, while
frumentarius, -a, -um, of grain;
rēs frumentaria, grain supply,
 provisions
nē . . . quidem, not even (*the word
 or words between nē and quidem
 are emphasized*)

paulō, adv., a little
fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made,
 be done, happen, *become*
certiorem facere (to make more
 sure), to inform
certior fieri (to be made more
 sure), to be informed

EXERCISES

491. 1. Fit, fiunt. 2. Fieri, factus esse. 3. Fiet, fiēbant, fiō. 4. Fiētis, fiēmus. 5. Eum certiorem fēcimus. 6. Certior fit dē his rēbus. 7. Galli, cum oppidum cēpissent, omnēs captivōs interfēcērunt. 8. Cum dē inopiā rei frumentariae certior factus esset, in ulteriorem partem prōvinciae paulō ante mediam noctem profectus est. 9. Nē amīci quidem dē adventū tuō certiōrēs fient. 10. Cum proeli finem nox fēcisset, quīdam ad Caesarem vēnit. 11. Cum equitatum hostium vidērunt, nostrī in eōs impetum fēcērunt.



A ROMAN STOVE

492. 1. You are becoming, they become. 2. It happens, to be made, it will be made. 3. When you come, you will learn this. 4. They have been informed. 5. I shall inform them. 6. When he was not able to persuade them, he went to the general. 7. Not even the general had been informed about this. 8. When the lieutenant had exhorted the soldiers, he gave the signal for battle.

LESSON LXXIII

READING LESSON

493.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitūdīnis, f., height
(*altitude*)

castellum, -ī, n., fort, redoubt
(*castle*)

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdīnis, f., cus-
tom

facultās, facultātis, f., power, op-
portunity (*faculty*)

fossa, -ae, f., ditch, trench (*fosse*)

existimō, existimāre, existimāvi,
existimātus, think, judge, con-
sider (*estimate*)

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, beat,
drive, defeat (*repel*)

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfec-
tus, accomplish, finish (*perfect*)

temperō, temperāre, temperāvī,
temperātus, control, refrain,
abstain from (*temperance*)

CÆSAR REFUSES THE HELVETIANS PERMISSION TO GO THROUGH THE ROMAN PROVINCE

494. Cum lēgātī Helvētiōrum rogāvissent ut per prōvinciam ire permitterentur, Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat cōsulem Rōmānum interfectum (esse)¹ ab Helvētiis et exercitum eius pulsum (esse) et sub iugum missum (esse), concēdendum (esse) nōn putābat; neque Helvētiōs, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium militum cōgendōrum, quōs imperāverat, esset, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad conloquium dictūrum.

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum fluit, ad montem Iūram, quī finis Sēquanōrum ab

¹ Frequently **esse** is omitted in Latin infinitive forms. From which infinitives in this lesson is it omitted?

Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum XVIII. mūrū in altitudinem pedum XVI fossamque perdūxit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia conlocāvit, castella mūnivit, ut facilius eōs prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cū lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt, dixit sē propter cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī iter nūllī per prōvinciam dare posse ; et eōs prohibītūrum ostendit.



ROMAN ARMY CROSSING A BRIDGE OF BOATS

LESSON LXXIV

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT INTRODUCED BY *QUOD* THE INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

495. Substantive Clauses of Fact with *Quod*.

Quod eum laudās, mihi grātum est, the fact that you praise him is pleasing to me.

a. Observe that the clause *quod eum laudās* is the subject of *est*. Such clauses, which should be translated by *that* or *the fact that*, are called *Quod Clauses of Fact*, and have their verb in the indicative. They are found as the subject of a verb or in apposition with some word.

496. Rule for Substantive Clauses of Fact. *The indicative is used with quod in a substantive clause to state something which is regarded as a fact.*

497. Adverbial Clauses with the Verb in the Indicative.

1. *Ībunt quā iter facillimum est, they will go where the way is easiest.*
2. *Quaedam nātiōnēs Galliae, ut diximus, fortissimae erant, certain nations of Gaul, as we said, were very brave.*

a. Observe that the clauses introduced by *quā* and *ut* are adverbial in nature, and that their verbs are in the indicative. *Quā* and *ut*, so used, are adverbs.

498.

VOCABULARY

condiciō, condiciōnis, f., terms, condition (condition)

lātitudō, lātitudinis, f., breadth, width (latitude)

lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, f., mission, embassy (legation)

numerus, -i, m., number (numerical)

cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactus, gather together, force, compel (with acc. and infin., or a substantive clause of purpose) (cogent)

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out, go forth (egress)

pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open, extend, spread (patent)

EXERCISES

499. 1. Inopia commeātūs hostēs ēgredi coēgit. 2. Quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per montēs erat, cum legiōnibus ire contendit. 3. Quod maiōrēs manūs hostium coāctae sunt, ducem nōn perturbāvit. 4. Ūna rēs Caesarem impedivit, quod lātitudinem flūminis nōn cognōverat. 5. Eōrum agrī in lātitudinem centum et sex milia passuum patēbant. 6. Quod Galli vicōs nostrōs vāstābant, Caesarī persuāsit ut principēs eōrum in conloquium convocāret. 7. In Italiam contendit ut magnum numerum equitum et peditum cōgeret. 8. Quod condiōnēs pācis petunt, nūntiandum est. 9. Omnia paranda sunt ad ēgrediendum. 10. Ad cognōscendās condiōnēs dēditōnis, ut dēmōstrāvimus, lēgatiōnēs ab proximīs nātiōnibus missae erant.

500. 1. Bands of horsemen must be gathered together. 2. The fact that a great number of men are now going forth from the villages to make war disturbs us. 3. In the conference he said that the terms of surrender would be pleasing to him. 4. A great number of scouts went forth from the camp where the width of the river was least. 5. Do you know how many miles the lake extends? 6. The fact that the enemy were greatly confused was of help to us in attacking the town.



ROMAN LAMPS

LESSON LXXV

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS

501. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements.

1. *Dicunt Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolant, ex finibus ēgredi, they say that the Germans, who live across the Rhine, are going forth from their territories.*
2. *Dixerunt Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolerent, ex finibus ēgredi, they said that the Germans, who lived across the Rhine, were going forth from their territories.*

a. Observe that in each sentence there is an indirect statement containing a subordinate clause. The direct statement of both sentences is the same, **Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex finibus ēgrediuntur**. Observe that the subordinate verbs are in the subjunctive in an indirect statement, and that the tense is changed according to the rule for the sequence of tenses (348-351).

502. Rule for Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements. *The verbs of the subordinate clauses of an indirect statement are in the subjunctive. The tense of the subjunctive is decided by the rule for the sequence of tenses after the verb of saying, knowing, etc.*

a. Subordinate verbs that were in the subjunctive before they were indirectly quoted of course remain in the subjunctive.

503.

VOCABULARY

barbarus, -i, *m.*, barbarian (*barbarous*)

celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly (*celerity*)

initium, *ini'ti*, *n.*, beginning (*initial*)

satis, *adv. and n. noun*, enough, sufficiently (*satisfy*)

cōnsuēscō, **cōnsuēscere**, **cōnsuēvi**, **cōnsuētus**, become accustomed

moror, **morāri**, **morātus sum**, hinder, delay (*moratorium*)

revertō, **revertere**, **reverti**, **reversus** (*or, in the present system, revertor, deponent*), turn back, return (*revert*)

EXERCISES

504. 1. Caesar pollicētur sē celeriter reversūrum esse quod barbari initium belli faciant. 2. Caesar pollicitus est sē celeriter reversūrum esse quod barbari initium belli facerent. 3. Explōrātōrēs nūntiāvērunt hostēs vicōs quōs oppugnāvissent nōn cēpisse. 4. Per captivōs cognōscit hostēs, quod agrī et vicī omnēs vāstātī sint, nūllum frūmentum habēre. 5. Putō cōnsilia quae mihi dare cōnsuēveris bona fuisse. 6. Aliquis dicit dolōrem hostium tantum esse ut in castris Rōmānis audiātur. 7. Barbari putāvērunt Caesarem, quī in Galliam citeriōrem quōque annō reverti cōnsuēvisset, diūtius nōn morātūrum esse. 8. Habēsne satis nāvium ad nāvigandum?

505. 1. They say that the legions which are spending the winter across the river will return. 2. A scout announced that Labienus, who had captured the town, was awaiting the coming of Cæsar. 3. I think that the enemy will go forth from our territories because they have not enough food. 4. We know that many nations which contended with the Romans have been conquered. 5. The barbarians, when they had delayed three days in front of the camp, sent an embassy to our general.



ROMAN PITCHERS

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

LESSONS LXIX-LXXV

506. Give the English meanings of the following words :

altitudō	conveniō	hortor	pācō	rēs frūmentāria
augeō	cum	incendō	pateō	revertō
barbarus	ēgredior	incipiō	paulō	satis
castellum	exeō	initium	pellō	sequor
celeriter	existimō	lātitudō	perficiō	signum
certus	experior	lēgātiō	permittō	temperō
cōgō	facultās	libertās	pertineō	trānseō
condiciō	ferō	moror	polliceor	vadum
cōnor	fiō	mors	privātus	vel . . . vel
cōnsuēscō	fossa	nē . . . quidem	proficiscor	vereor
cōnsuētūdō	frūmentārius	numerus	prōgredior	vis

507. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

test, make trial of	promise, offer	barbarian
allow, suffer, give up	terms, condition	not even
come together, assemble	urge, entreat	try, attempt
enough, sufficiently	either . . . or	death
accomplish, finish	ditch, trench	sign, signal
bear, bring ; report, say	go across, cross	a little
mission, embassy	certain, sure	height
become accustomed	fort, redoubt	begin
turn back, return	breadth, width	follow
extend, pertain to	private, personal	swiftly
lie open, extend, spread	set out, march	number
control, refrain, abstain from	increase, enlarge	hinder, delay
power, opportunity	fear, respect	beginning
be made, be done, happen	burn, kindle, excite	ford, shoal
force, strength, power, might	go forward, advance	go out, go forth
gather together, force, compel	think, judge, consider	of grain
beat, drive, defeat	subdue, pacify	freedom
grain supply, provisions	when, while	custom

508. Decline each noun in 506. Conjugate each deponent verb throughout. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural. Give the infinitives and the participles of each verb. Conjugate *ferō* and *fiō* throughout.

509. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 506. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

510. Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. Gerundive with *ad* and with *causā*
2. Passive periphrastic conjugation
3. Ablative of specification
4. Temporal clauses with *cum*
5. Substantive clauses of fact with *quod*
6. Adverbial clauses with the verb in the indicative
7. Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse

511. Give Latin words suggested by the following English words :

popular	magnanimous	petition	prefect	total
temporal	audible	posterity	depredation	fidelity
real	local	intellect	malefactor	itinerary
neutral	habitable	novelty	humility	science
vulnerable	lucid	extremity	longitude	premium
ultimate	subterranean	solitude	identity	fortitude
post mortem	numerous	exhortation	altitude	egress
versatile	cognizant	tenant	deity	ignite
subsidiary	innocent	instruction	factory	satisfy
nocturnal	permanent	magnitude	postulate	assimilate
impetuous	alternate	gladiator	contention	minimize
final	urban	avocation	mission	nullify
insular	cogent	multitude	position	intervene
military	marine	pedestrian	audacity	contradict
hostile	naval	constitution	vicinity	expatriate

SUMMARY

THE USES OF NOUNS AND VERBS

512. From your study of the book to this point you are supposed to be familiar with the uses of nouns and verbs summarized below.

USES OF NOUNS

Nominative

Subject, 27, 28
 Predicate noun, 86, 87

Genitive

Possessive, 43, 44
 Material, p. 79, note 1
 Partitive, 308, 309
 Objective, 380, 381

Dative

Indirect object, 56, 57
 With adjectives, 110, 111
 With compound verbs, 424, 425
 Purpose, 426, 427
 Reference, 426, 428
 With special verbs, 432, 433

Accusative

Direct object, 32, 33
 Place to which, 179, 180, 230

With prepositions, 193
 Extent of time and space, 332,
 333
 Subject of infinitive, 399

Ablative

Place where, 58, 59
 Means, 121, 122
 Manner, 128, 129
 Accompaniment, 142, 143
 Place from which, 177, 178, 230
 Cause, 184, 185
 With prepositions, 194
 Time, 218, 219
 Agent, 242, 243
 Separation, 281, 282
 Degree of difference, 320, 321
 Absolute, 452-455
 Specification, 480, 481

513.

USES OF VERBS

Indicative

Main verb: Declaratory sentence

Main verb: Question

Subordinate verb: Causal clause with **quod**, 50, 51

Subordinate verb: Temporal clause with **cum**, 487, 488

Subordinate verb: Relative clause

Subordinate verb: Substantive clause of fact with **quod**, 495, 496

Subordinate verb: Adverbial clause with **quā** and **ut**, 497

Subjunctive

Purpose clause: Adverbial, 343, 344

Purpose clause: Substantive, 355, 356

Result clause: Adverbial, 357, 358

Indirect Question: Substantive, 372, 373

Temporal clause: with **cum**, 487, 488

Subordinate clause in indirect statements, 501, 502

Infinitive

Subject of another verb, 393

Complement of another verb, 394

Object of another verb, 398

Verb of an indirect statement, 401

Participle

As an adjective, 443

Ablative absolute, 452-455

Equivalent to a clause of time, concession, cause, condition, etc., 444, 445

Gerund

As a noun, 460

With **ad** or **causā** to show purpose, 461

Gerundive

With **ad** or **causā** to show purpose, 472

With forms of **sum** in the passive periphrastic conjugation, 473

Whenever in your translation of the subsequent Selections for Reading you meet a noun or a verb, at once ask yourself which of these uses the particular noun or verb has. Then translate accordingly.

SELECTIONS FOR READING

CÆSAR: THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETIANS

(CONTINUED FROM 494)

The Helvetians are allowed to proceed through the land of the Sequani

514. Helvētīi, eā spē dēiectī, vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsire cōnātī sunt, 'sed mūnitiōne et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. Hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mīsērunt. Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat¹ et Helvētīis erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat. Etiam cupiditāte rēgnī adductus est. Itaque Sēquanīs persuāsit ut per finēs suōs Helvētīōs ire permitterent et obsidēs inter sēsē darent: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētīōs prohibērent; Helvētīi, ut sine iniūriā trānsirent. 10

Cæsar opposes this plan of the Helvetians and crosses the Rhone

515. Cæsar certior factus est Helvētīōs cōstituisse per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus aberant, quae civitās erat in prōvinciā. Inimicōs populī Rōmānī eam regiōnem incolere nōlēbat. Ob eam causam ei mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus² contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscripsit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernis ēdūxit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi quaedam civitātēs, locis 20

¹ plūrimum poterat, had a great deal of influence. ² magnis itineribus, by long journeys. See p. 185, note 1.

superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnātae sunt. Complūribus hīs proeliis victis,¹ ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae² extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervēnit; inde in Allobrogum finēs,
5 ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūxit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

The Haedui and other tribes ask for Cæsar's help against the Helvetians

516. Helvétii interim per finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās dūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs vāstābant. Haedui sē suaque³ ab eis dēfendere nōn poterant.
10 Itaque lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt ut auxilium rogārent. Ei dixērunt paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrōs vāstārī, liberōs in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuisse.⁴ Eōdem tempore Ambarri Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt sēsē, vāstātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre.
15 Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar diūtius nōn exspectandum esse⁵ cōstituit.

Cæsar destroys one division of the Helvetians

517. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum fluit. Id Helvétii trānsibant. Ubi per
20 explōrātōrēs Cæsar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvétios id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam fere partem citrā flūmen Ararim relictam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs adgressus magnam
25 partem interfēcit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

¹ Translate *complūribus* with *proeliis* and *hīs* with *victis*. ² The Roman province on the Italian side of the Alps. ³ *suaque*, and *their possessions*. ⁴ *vāstārī . . . nōn dēbuisse*, ought not to have been etc. ⁵ *nōn exspectandum esse*, that he must not wait. The verb, however, is used impersonally.

The Helvetians send an embassy to Cæsar

518. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequi posset, pontem in Ararī¹ fēcit atque ita exercitum trādūxit. Helvētīi repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum illum ūnō diē flūmen trānsisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum misērunt; cuius lēgātīōnis Divicō princeps fuit. In conloquiō Cæsar im- 5 perāvit ut obsidēs populō Rōmānō darentur. Divicō respondit Helvētiōs obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuēvisse. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit..

Cæsar follows the Helvetians

519. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō mōvērunt. Idem fēcit Cæsar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, 10 quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduis atque eōrum sociis coēgerat, præmisit, ut vidērent quās in partēs hostēs iter facerent. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen² secūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commisērunt; et paucī dē nostrīs interfectī sunt. Quō proeliō dēlectātī Helvētīi, quod paucis 15 equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum vicerant, audācius in nostrōs impetum facere coepērunt. Cæsar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, et ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum³ quinque milia passuum interessent. 20

Cæsar prepares to attack the Helvetians

520. Tandem ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs milia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō abesse. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iussit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs 25 contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē misit. Cōnsidius cum explōrātōribus præmissus est.

¹ in Ararī, over the Arar. ² novissimum agmen, the rear. ³ primum (agmen), vanguard.

Considius becomes panic-stricken

521. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris mille passuum abesset, neque (ut postea ex captivis intellēxit) aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō¹ ad eum properāvit. Dixit mon-
 5 tem quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisset ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicis armis cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās ad proximum collem dūxit et aciem instrūxit. Labiēnus inter-
 10 vīm, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat. Multō diē² per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenēri et Hel-
 vētios castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi nūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsueverat intervāllō, hostēs secūtus est et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra posuit.

The battle between Caesar and the Helvetians

522. Posterō diē cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem
 15 dūxit equitātumque, ut sustinēret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō aciem legiōnum quattuor instrūxit. In summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximā aestāte cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia³ conlocāvit. Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carris secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum
 20 contulērunt; ipsī sub primam nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar hortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiori pīlis missis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī hostēs ad montem, quī circiter mille passuum aberat, sē recipere coepērunt. Diū atque ācritē pugnāvērunt. Diūtius
 25 cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī⁴ ad impedimenta et

¹ equō admissō, at full gallop. ² multō diē, late in the day. ³ auxilia, auxiliaries. ⁴ alterī . . . alterī, one body . . . the other.

carrōs suōs iērunť. Ad multam noctem¹ etiam ad impedimenta contendērunť, quod Helvētīi prō vāllō carrōs conlocāverant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant. Tandem nostrī impedimenta et castra cēpērunť. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. 5

The Helvetians retreat and offer to surrender

523. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominū milia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunť. In finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt. Nostrī autem propter vulnera militum eōs sequī nōn potuērunt. Caesar litterās nūntiōsque ad Lingonēs misit et imperāvit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. 10 Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs² prōiēcissent pācemque petissent atque eōs in eō locō quō tum erant suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūē- 15 runt. Eō cum Caesar pervēnisset, obsidēs et arma postulāvit. Obsidibus armisque trāditis, eōs in dēditōnem accēpit. Helvētīōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, 20 quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētīōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

¹ ad multam noctem, until late at night. ² ad pedēs, at his feet.



CARRI

CÆSAR: THE STORY OF THE ADUATUCI

The Aduatuci prepare to make a desperate resistance to Cæsar

524. Aduatuci¹ cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō² Nervii veniēbant. Hāc pugnā³ nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; omnibus oppidis castellisque dēsertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod⁴ ex omnibus in circuitū partibus⁵ altissimās rūpēs habēbat, sed ūnā ex parte aditus relinquebātur. Quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant et magna saxa in mūrō conlocābant.

From their walls they taunt the Rōmans

525. Primō adventū exercitūs nostrī⁶ crēbrās ēruptionēs faciēbant parvisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant. Postea, vāllō crēbrisque castellis ā Rōmānis circummūniti, oppidō⁷ sē continēbant. Ubi, vineis āctis⁸ aggere exstrūctō, turrim⁹ procul cōstituī vidērunt, primum inridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus¹⁰ coepērunt, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō¹¹ instruēbātur. Rogāvērunt quibus manibus aut quibus vīribus tantuli¹² hominēs tantam turrim in mūrō¹³ conlocāre possent.

¹ The Aduatuci lived about the river Mosa (Meuse), in what is now Belgium. ² *for an aid = to aid*. What use of the case? ³ The reference is to a battle in which the Nervii had been almost annihilated. ⁴ *this town*. ⁵ *ex . . . partibus, from all parts in a circuit = all around*. ⁶ *primō . . . nostrī, as soon as our army got there*. What literally? ⁷ *oppidō = in oppidō*. ⁸ *vineis āctis, the vineæ had been brought up*. These vineæ were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were building an agger, undermining a wall, or filling up a ditch in front of fortifications. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers. ⁹ *turrim = turrem*. ¹⁰ *increpitāre vōcibus, taunt*. What literally? ¹¹ *ab tantō spatiō, so far away*. ¹² To the taller Belgians the Romans looked like "little chaps." ¹³ The Aduatuci, unacquainted with Roman siege operations, supposed the Romans intended to hoist the tower upon their wall.

But they lose confidence and offer to surrender

526. Ubi turrim movērī¹ et appropinquāre mūrīs vidērunt, novā speciē commōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī² sunt: Aduatucōs nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine auxiliō deōrum bellum gerere, quod tantās māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte movēre possent; itaque sē suaque⁵ omnia eōrum potestātī permissūrōs esse. Ūnum³ petēbant, nē Caesar sē armīs privāret. Omnēs ferē finitimī erant inimicī, ā quibus sē dēfendere armīs trāditis nōn poterant. Mālēbant quamvis fortunam⁴ ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab inimicīs interficī.

Caesar says they must disarm, but promises them protection

527. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Magis cōsuētūdine suā⁵ ¹⁰ quam meritō eōrum civitātem sē cōservātūrum esse; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi⁶ armīs trāditis; id quod in⁷ Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum esse, et finitimīs imperātūrum esse nē iniūriam eis inferrent. Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur sē factūrōs esse dixērunt. Armōrum tanta multi-¹⁵ tūdō dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta est ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem⁸ acervī eōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter pars tertia, ut postea cognōvit Caesar, cēlāta⁹ atquē in oppidō retenta est.

A brave dash for freedom, with a tragic ending

528. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō ²⁰ exire iussit. Oppidānī, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs¹⁰ praesidia dēductūrōs crēdiderant, tertiā vigiliā, quā facilis ad nostrās

¹ was moving. ² From loquor. ³ one thing, namely, nē . . . privāret.
⁴ quamvis fortunam, any fate whatsoever. ⁵ according to his custom. ⁶ nisi is to be translated with the ablative absolute armīs trāditis, unless their arms were given up. ⁷ in the case of. ⁸ summam . . . altitūdinem, top. ⁹ Supply est. ¹⁰ nostrōs, our commanders.

mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis subitō ex oppidō
 ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut Caesar ante imperāverat,
 ignibus¹ signō factō, ex proximis castellis eō nostrī properā-
 vērunt. Acrīter hostēs pugnābant in extrēmā spē salūtis²
 5 iniquō locō contrā nostrōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iaciē-
 bant. Interfectis ad³ hominum milibus quattuor, reliquōs in
 oppidum nostrī reīcērunt. Posterō diē, intrōmissis militibus
 nostris, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēdidit.⁴ Ab
 eis quī ēmerant capitum⁵ numerus ad eum relātus est milium
 10 quinquāgintā trium.⁶

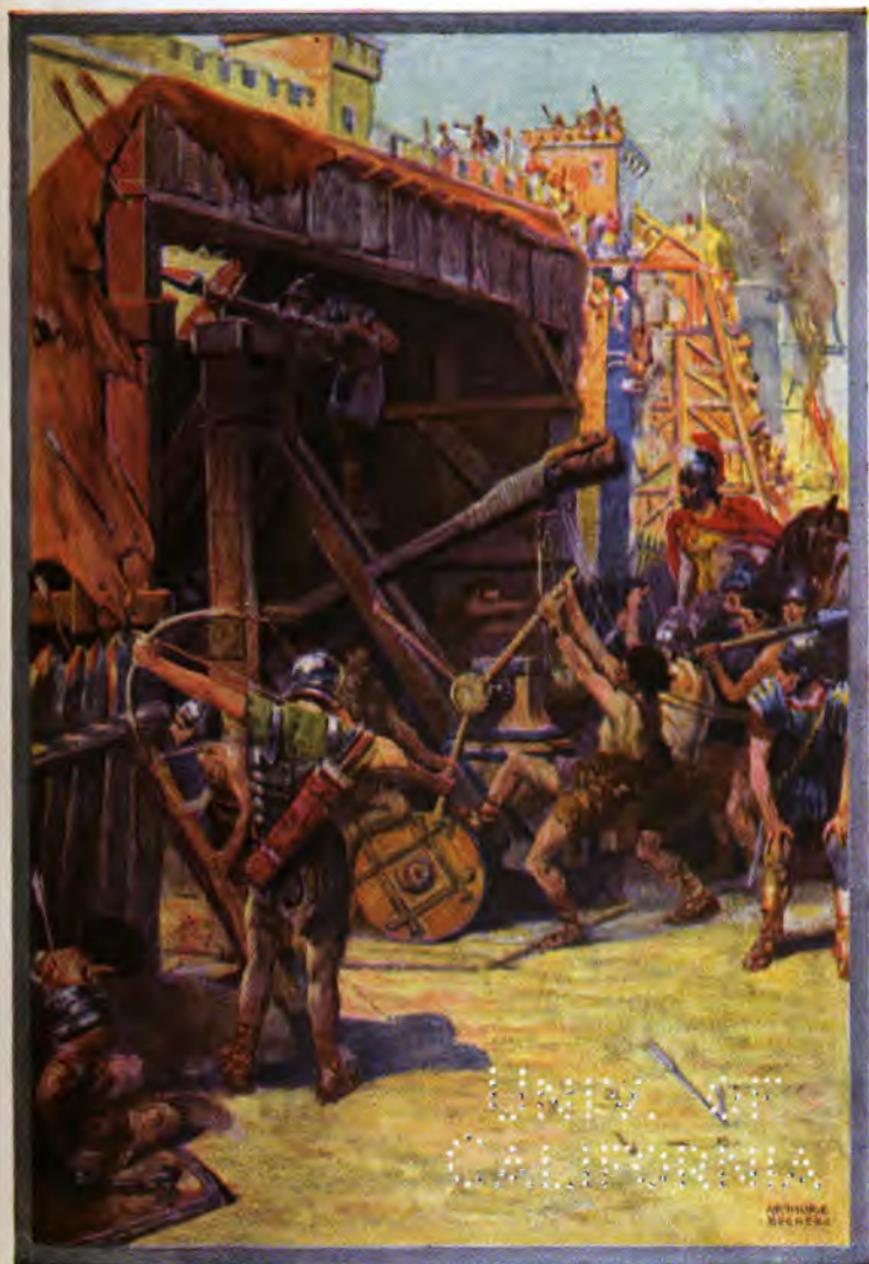
STORIES OF HERCULES

The infant Hercules

529. Herculēs, Alcmēnae filius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat.
 Hic dicitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. Sed Iōnō,
 rēgīna deōrum, Alcmēnam nōn amāvit et Herculem, quī adhuc
 infāns erat, interficere voluit. Misit igitur duo serpentis
 15 vīssimōs, quī mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnerunt,
 ubi Herculēs cum frātre dormiēbat. Nōn tamen in cūctis sed
 in scūtō magnō dormiēbant. Serpentēs iam appropinquāverunt
 et scūtum movēbant. Itaque puerī ē somnō excitātī sunt.

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce auxilium petiit, at
 20 Herculēs ipse parvis manibus serpentēs statim prehēdit et
 colla eōrum magnā vī compressit. Hōc modō serpentēs ā pueris
 interfecti sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clamōre
 dītō, maritum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et

¹ by fires. ² in . . . salūtis, as their last chance of saving themselves. ³ literally? ⁴ about, an adverb. ⁵ sectiōnem . . . vēdidit, Caesar sold the whole town (the people and their property) as booty. ⁶ souls. We say so many "head" of cattle. ⁶ relātus . . . trium, was reported to be 53,000. These 53,000 captives were probably driven to the Province or to Italy and sold in lots to suit purchasers, there to wear out their lives in bondage.



WITH THE ROMANS AT THE FRONT

TO WHOM
IT MAY COME

gladium rapuit ad auxilium ferendum; tum ad puerōs properāvit, sed, ubi ad locum vēnit, rem miram vidit, Herculēs enim ridēbat et serpentēs interfectōs dēmōnstrābat.

Hercules studies music

530. Herculēs ā puerō (*from boyhood*) corpus diligenter exercēbat; magnam partem diēi in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat; didicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conicere. His exercitātiōnibus virēs eius cōfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā ā Linō centaurō ērudiebātur. Hi centauri equi erant, sed caput hominis habebant. Huic artī nōn diligenter Herculēs studēbat. Hāc rē cognitā, Linus puerum reprehendēbat, quod nōn studiōsus erat. Tum Herculēs, irā commōtus, citharam subitō rapuit, et omnibus viribus caput magistrī infēlicis percussit.¹ Ille ictū prōstrātus² est, et paulō post ē vitā excessit, neque quisquam postea id officium suscipere voluit.

Hercules consults the oracle

531. Herculēs post paucōs annōs cōstituit ad orāculum Delphicum ire, hoc enim orāculum erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis plūrimis dōnis ornātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, Pŷthia, et cōsiliū dabat iis qui ad orāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur et voluntātem dei hominibus enūntiābat. Herculēs igitur, qui Apollinem maximē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Pŷthia iussit eum ad urbem Tirynta ire et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta facere. His auditis, Herculēs ad illam urbem contendit, et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādīdit. Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs quōs ille imperāverat cōnfēcit, hōc enim unō modō tantum scelus³ expiārī potuit. Dē his labōribus plūrima ā poētis scripta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētae narrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

¹ From *percutiō*. ² From *prōsternō*. ³ The murdering of his own children.

The golden apples of the Hesperides

532. Eurystheus labōrem ūndecimum Herculi imposuit grav-
 ōrem quam eōs quōs antea imperāverat. Imperāvit enim ei
 ut aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum ferret. Hesperidēs autem
 nymphae erant quaedam pulcherrimae, quae in terrā longinquā
 5 habitābant et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Iūnōne commissa
 erant. Multi hominēs, aurī cupiditatē inducti, haec pōma auferre
 iam antea cōnāti erant. Rēs tamen difficillima erat, nam hortus
 in quō pōma erant mūrō ingenti undique circumdatus est; prae-
 terea dracō quīdam, quī centum capita habuit, portam horti
 10 diligenter custodiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculi
 imperāverat erat difficillimum, nōn solum ob causās quās
 memorāvimus, sed etiam quod Herculēs omninō ignōrābat quō
 in locō hortus situs esset.

Atlas, who upheld the heavens

533. Herculēs quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, sed cōstituit
 15 Eurystheō pārere; et, cum iussa eius accēpisset, proficisci
 mātūrāvit. Ā multis mercātōribus quaesivit quō in locō Hes-
 peridēs habitārent; nihil tamen certum reperire potuit. Frūstrā
 per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa perīcula subiit. Tandem,
 cum in his itineribus tōtum annum cōsūmpsisset, ad extrēmā
 20 partem orbis, quae proxima erat Ōceanō, pervēnit. Hīc stābat
 vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, quī caelum umeris sustinēbat, nē
 in terram dēcideret. Herculēs, tantum labōrem magnopere
 mirātus, paulō post in conloquium cum Atlante vēnit, et, cum
 causam itineris docuisset, auxilium ab eō petiit.

Hercules takes the place of Atlas

25 534. Atlās autem potuit Herculem maximē iuvāre, ille enim
 erat pater Hesperidum et bene scīvit quō in locō esset hortus.
 Cum igitur audivisset quam ob causam Herculēs vēnisset, dixit:

"Ipse ad hortum ibō, et filiabus¹ meis persuādēbō ut pōma suā sponte² trādant." Herculēs, cum haec audivisset, magnopere gāvisus est,³ nōluit enim vim adhibere; cōstituit igitur oblātum⁴ auxilium accipere. Atlās tamen postulāvit ut, dum ipse abesset (*while he was himself away*), Herculēs caelum umeris sustinē-⁵ ret. Hoc negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs difficillima erat, tōtum pondus caeli continuōs complūris diēs sōlus sustinuit.

The return of Atlas

535. Atlās intereā abierat⁵ et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca milia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē⁶ contulerat. 10 Eō cum vēnisset, causam veniendī exposuit et filiās vehementer hortātus est ut pōma trāderent. Illae diū haerēbant, nōlēbant enim hoc facere, quod ab ipsā Iūnōne, ut ante dictum est, hoc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba eis persuāsit ut sibi⁷ pārērent, et pōma ad Herculem rettulit. Herculēs 15 intereā, cum plūris diēs expectāvisset, neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēpisset, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quintō diē Atlantem redeuntem⁸ vidit et mox magnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tantō beneficiō ēgit, in Graeciam proficisci mātūrāvit. 20

Nessus, the Centaur

536. Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscribere⁹ longum est.¹⁰ Tandem aetate prōvectus¹¹

¹ The ending -ābus is regularly used for the dative and ablative plural of *dea* and of *filia*. ² *suā sponte*, of their own accord. ³ *gāvisus est*, from *gaudeō*, which is deponent in the perfect system. ⁴ From *offerō*. ⁵ From *abeō*. From what verb does *aberat* come? ⁶ *quam celerrimē*, as quickly as possible. *Quam* with a superlative usually has the force *as . . . as possible* (see p. 185, note 1). ⁷ *sibi* is an indirect reflexive here, and refers to the subject of *persuāsit* rather than to that of *pārērent*. ⁸ Present participle of *redeō*. ⁹ See 393. ¹⁰ *longum est*, it would be tedious. What is the subject of *est*? ¹¹ From *prōvehō*. How translated?

Dēanīram, Oeneī filiam, in mātrīmōnium dūxit¹; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine² Eunomum, cāsū interfēcit. Itaque cum uxōre ē finibus eius civitātis exire mātūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnerunt,
 5 quod nūllō ponte iūctum erat, et, dum quaerunt quō modō flūmen trāicerent, accurrit centaurus quidam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem in tergum Nessī imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō³ trānsiit, quā flūmen angustissimum erat. At Nessus, paulum in aquam
 10 prōgressus, ad ripam subitō revertit et Dēanīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod cum animadvertisset⁴ Herculēs, irā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfixit.

The poisoned robe

537. Nessus igitur sagittā Herculis trānsfixus humī (*on the ground*) iacēbat; at, nē occāsiōnem suī ulciscendī dimitteret,
 15 ita locūtus est: "Sī vis amōrem maritī tuī cōservāre, aliquid huius sanguinis, quī ē pectore meō effunditur, sūmēs et repōnēs. Tum sī quāndō suspiciō in mentem tuam vēnerit,⁵ vestem maritī hōc sanguine inficiēs." Haec locūtus, Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēanīra autem, nihil mali⁶ suspicāta, imperāta fēcit.
 20 Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem propinquum, suscēpit et, cum rēgem ipsum cum filiis interfēcisset, Iolēn, filiam Eurytī, captivam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmunturium appulit et, in terram ēgressus, āram cōstituit, ut Iovī sacrificāret. Dum
 25 tamen sacrificium parat, Licham, comitem suum, domum misit

¹ in mātrīmōnium dūxit, *married*: How literally? ² See 481. ³ From nō; *by swimming*; see 460. ⁴ quod cum animadvertisset, *when he had noticed this*; refers to the whole preceding sentence. Quod referring to a preceding sentence is commonly translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun. ⁵ vēnerit, *shall have come*; but it is better translated *comes*. ⁶ Partitive genitive with nihil; *nothing of evil = no evil*.

ut vestem albam referret; mōs enim erat apud antiquōs vestem albam gerere¹ cum sacrificiā facerent. At Dējanira, verita² Iolēn, vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessi infēcit.

The death of Hercules

538. Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per 5 omnia membra sēnsit, et quae causa eius rei esset magnopere mirābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus vestem dētrahere cōnātus est; illa tamen in corpore haesit neque ūllō modō divelli potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogam, quem summā celeritāte ex- 10 strūxerat, sē imposuit. Quod cum fēcisset, eōs qui circumstābant ōrāvīt ut rogam quam celerrimē accenderent. Omnēs diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscurantur, Herculēs dēnsā nūbe vėlātus ā Iove in Olympum abreptus est. 15

STORIES OF ULYSSES

Polyphemus, the one-eyed giant

539. Ulixēs comitēsque, postquam tōtam noctem rēmīs con- tenderant, ad terram ignōtam nāvem appulērunt; tum, quod nātūrā eius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs, cum duodecim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus, locum explōrāre cōstituit. Paulum ā litore prōgressī, ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitārī 20 sēnsērunt, eius enim introitum arte et manibus³ mūnītum esse animadvertērunt. Mox, etsi intellegēbant sē nōn sine periculō id factūrōs esse, antrum intrāvērunt. Quod cum fēcissent,

¹ gerere, to wear; subject of erat. ² verita, fearing; the perfect participle of some deponent verbs is often translated like a present participle. ³ arte et manibus, by skill and hands = by skillful hands.

magnam cōpiam lactis invēnerunt in vāsīs ingentibus conditam. Dum tamen mirantur quis eam sēdem incoleret, sonitum terribilem audiverunt, et oculis ad portam versīs, mōnstrum horribile vidērunt, quod hūmānam speciem et figūram sed corpus
 5 ingēns habuit. Cum autem animadvertissent gigantem ūnum tantum¹ oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxerunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

The giant's supper

540. Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quidam, quī insulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim
 10 Vulcānus, praeses fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servi Cyclōpēs erant, officinam habēbat. Graecī igitur, simul ac mōnstrum vidērunt, terrōre paene exanimātī, in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem (ita enim gigās appellātus est) pecora sua in spēluncam
 15 ēgit; tum, cum saxō ingenti portam obstrūxisset, ignem mediō in antrō accendit. Hōc factō, omnia oculō perlūstrābat, et cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte antri cēlārī, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs esse neque
 20 praedandī causā vēnisse, sed ā Trōiā redeuntēs,² vī tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs esse; orāvīt etiam ut sē sine iniuriā dimitteret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesivit ubi nāvis eōrum esset. Ulixēs autem respondit nāvem in rūpēs coniectam et omninō perfrāctam³ esse. Polyphēmus, nullō respōnsō datō, duo ē
 25 sociīs manū corripuit et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs⁴ carnem⁵ dēvorāre coepit.

¹ tantum, only. ² Modifies sē understood from the preceding clause; that they, while returning. ³ From perfringō. ⁴ From divellō. ⁵ From carō.

No way of escape

541. Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere possent, sed, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, mortem praesentem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribili cēnā dēpulsa est, humi (*on the ground*) prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum 5 vidisset Ulixēs, arbitrātus est mōnstrum interficiendum esse. Primum cōstituit explōrāre quā ratiōne ex antrō ēvādere possent. At, cum saxum animadvertisset quō introitus obstrūctus erat, intellēxit mortem Polyphēmī auxiliō sibi nōn futūram esse. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitudō ut nē ā decem 10 quidem hominibus āmovērī posset. Ulixēs igitur hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad sociōs rediit; quī, cum intellēxissent quō in locō¹ rēs esset, nullā spē salūtis oblātā, dē fortūnis suis dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen vehementer hortātus est nē animōs dēmitterent,² et dēmōnstrāvit sē ipsōs iam antea ē multis et 15 magnis periculis ēvāsisse.

A plan for vengeance

542. Ortā lūce³ Polyphēmus, iam ē somnō excitātus, idem quod⁴ hesternō diē fēcit, correptis enim duōbus ē reliquīs viris carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmovisset, ipse cum pecore ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod cum 20 vidērent Graeci, magnam in spem vēnērunt⁵ sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs. Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsī sunt, nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit. Graeci, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, lāmentis lacrimisque sē dēdidērunt. Ulixēs vērō, quī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir 25

¹ locō, *state, condition*, not *place*. ² nē . . . dēmitterent, *not to lose heart*.

³ ortā lūce = primā lūce, *at daybreak*; ortā is from orior. ⁴ idem quod, *the same as*. ⁵ magnam . . . vēnērunt, *had great hopes*.

fortis fuit, etsi bene intellegēbat rem in discrimine esse, nōndum omininō dēspērābat. Tandem, postquam diū tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hoc cēpit cōnsilium. **Ē** lignis quae in antrō reposita sunt pālum magnum dēlēgīt; hunc summā cum diligentīā
 5 praeacūtum fēcīt; tum, postquam sociis quid¹ fieri vellet ostendit, reditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

Polyphemus thrice drains a wine bowl

543. Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eōdem modō quō antea cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vinī prōmpsit,² quem forte, ut in tālibus rēbus saepe accidit, sēcum attu-
 10 lerat, et postquam magnam crātēram vinō replēvit, gigantem ad bibendum prōvocāvit. Polyphēmus, quī numquam antea vinum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit.³ Quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium crātēram replēri iubēret. Tum, cum quaesivisset quō nōmine
 15 Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem⁴ appellārī. Quod cum audivisset Polyphēmus, ita locūtus est: "Ut tibi grātiam prō tantō beneficiō referam, tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." His dictis, cibō vinōque gravātus recubuit⁵ et post breve tempus somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs, sociis convocā-
 20 tis, dixit: "Habēmus quam petiimus facultātem.⁶ Tanta occāsio nōn omittenda est."

Noman

544. Hāc orātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum pālum⁷ igni calefēcīt, oculum Polyphēmī, dum dormit, flagrante lignō trānsfōdit. Quō factō, omnēs in diversās spēluncae partis sē abdi-
 25 dērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre, quod necesse fuit,⁸ ē somnō

¹ In what case is *quid*? ² From *prōmō*. ³ From *hauriō*. ⁴ *Noman*.
⁵ From *recumbō*. ⁶ *quam . . . facultātem = facultātem quam petiimus*.
⁷ *extrēmum pālum = extrēmam partem pāli*. ⁸ *quod necesse fuit, which was necessary = necessarily*; the reference is to what follows.

excitātus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit,¹ et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur. Hoc tamen, quod iam omninō caecus erat, nullō modō efficere potuit. Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre auditō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et apud introitum adstantēs, quid Polyphēmus ageret² quaesi- 5 vērunt et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse et magnō dolōre adfici. Cum tamen cēterī quaesivissent quis eī³ vim intulisset, respondit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Hōc auditō, Cyclōpēs, eum in insāniam incidisse arbitrātī,⁴ abiērunt. 10

The escape

545. Sed Polyphēmus, cum sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsisset, furōre atque āmentīā impulsus, Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit. Tandem cum portam invēnissēt, saxum quō obstrūcta⁵ erat amōvit, ut pecus ad agrōs exiret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit, et cum quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum eius manibus 15 tractābat, nē virī inter ovēs exire possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, hoc cōnsilium iniit, bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis iam in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Primum trēs quās vidit pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit. Quibus inter sē⁶ viminibus cōnexīs,⁷ ūnum ex sociīs ventribus eōrum ita subiēcit 20 ut omninō latēret; deinde ovis hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore⁸ suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergīs eōrum imposuit, ovis praeterire passus⁹ est. Ulixēs, postquam rem fēliciter ēvēnisse vidit, omnēs sociōs suōs ex ōrdine eōdem modō ēmisit; quō factō, ipse 25 ultimus ēvāsit.

¹ From tollō. ² quid . . . ageret, *what Polyphemus was doing = what ailed Polyphemus.*

³ Which usage of the dative? ⁴ Translate as if it were a present participle. See p. 213, note 2. ⁵ The subject is porta. ⁶ inter sē, *together.* ⁷ From cōnectō. ⁸ fore = futurum esse, *would be, would happen.*

⁹ From patior.

Out of danger

546. His rēbus ita cōfectis, Ulixēs cum sociis quam celerimē ad litus contendit. Quō¹ cum vēnissent, ab eis qui praesidiō nāvī relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā accepti sunt. Hī enim, cum iam anxiiis animis trēs diēs reditum eōrum in 5 hōrās² exspectāvissent, eōs in periculum grave incidisse suspicāti, ipsi auxiliandi causā ēgredi parābant. Tum Ulixēs, nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus in eō locō manēre, quam celerrimē proficisci cōstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōnscendere, et, ancoris sublātis, paulum ā litore in altum prōvectus est. Tum 10 magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme,³ qui iūra hospiti spernis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī." Hāc vōce auditā, Polyphēmus, irā vehēmenter commōtus, ad mare sē contulit, et ubi intellēxit nāvem paulum ā litore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns correptum in eam partem coniēcit unde 15 vōcem venire sēnsit. Graeci autem, nullō damnō acceptō, cursum tenuerunt.

EUTROPIUS: HISTORY OF ROME⁴*The founding of Rome by Romulus*

547. Rōmānum imperium⁵ ā Rōmulō initium habet, qui Rhēae Silviae filius et Mārtis erat. Is decem et octō annōs nātus urbem parvam in Palātīnō monte⁶ cōstituit. Conditā 20 civitāte, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgit.⁷ Multitūdinem finitimōrum in civitātem recēpit, centum ex seniōribus⁸ lēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia agēbat, quōs senātōrēs

¹ quō, *thither*; begin to translate with *cum*. ² in hōrās, *hourly*. ³ Vocative case, denoting the person addressed. ⁴ Eutropius, a Roman historian of the fourth century of our era, wrote a brief history of Rome from its founding to the year 364. ⁵ imperium, *power, state*. ⁶ Palātīnō monte, *the Palatine Hill*, one of the seven hills on which Rome was built. ⁷ haec ferē ēgit, *he did about as follows*. ⁸ seniōribus, *older men*; comparative of *senex, old*.

nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent,¹ invitāvit ad spectāculum lūdōrum vicinās urbī Rōmae nātiōnēs atque eārum virginēs rapuit. Commōtis bellis propter raptārum² iniūriam Caeninēnsēs vicit, Antemnātēs, Crustumīnōs, Sabinōs,³ Fidēnātēs, Vēientēs. Haec 5 omnia oppida urbem cingunt. Et cum, ortā subitō tempestāte, nōn compāruisset,⁴ annō rēgni tricēsīmō septīmō ad deōs trānsisse crēditus est et cōnsecrātus.⁵

The kings who succeeded Romulus

548. Postea Numa Pompilius rex creatus est, qui bellum quidem nullum gessit, sed non minus civitati⁶ quam Rōmulus 10 profuit. Nam et legēs Rōmānis mōrēsque cōstituit et annum dēscripsit in decem mēnsēs, et infinita sacra ac templa cōstituit.

Hic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella reparavit, Albānōs vicit; Vēientēs et Fidēnātēs bellō superavit; urbem ampliavit adiectō Caeliō monte.⁷ 15

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius suscepit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dīmīcāvit, Aventīnum montem civitati adiecit et Iāniculum; apud ōstium Tiberis civitatem condidit.

Deinde rēgnum Prīscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum senātōrum duplicavit, circum⁸ Rōmae⁹ aedificavit, lūdōs Rōmā- 20 nōs¹⁰ instituit, qui ad nostram memoriā permanent. Vicit idem etiam Sabinōs et nōn parum¹¹ agrōrum urbis Rōmae territoriō iūnixit, primusque triumphāns urbem intravit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās, Capitōlium incohavit.

¹ cum . . . habērent, because . . . had. A causal clause introduced by cum, because, as, since, has its verb in the subjunctive mood. ² Understand virginum. ³ In apposition with Caeninēnsēs, Antemnātēs, and Crustumīnōs. Fidenæ and Veii were Etruscan towns. ⁴ nōn compāruisset, had disappeared. ⁵ cōnsecrātus (est), was deified. ⁶ Which use of the dative? ⁷ adiectō Caeliō monte, by the addition of the Caelian Hill. ⁸ circum, the Circus Maximus, where races and other sports were held. ⁹ Rōmae, at Rome. ¹⁰ The Iūdī Rōmāni consisted of a variety of games and contests held each year in September in the Circus Maximus. ¹¹ nōn parum, not a little; parum is here used as a noun.

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscipit imperium. Hic quoque Sabinos subegit, montes tres, Quirinalem, Viminalem, Esquilinum, urbi adiunxit, fossas circum murum duxit. Primus omnium censum ordinavit, qui adhuc per orbem terrarum 5 incognitus erat. Sub eo Roma, omnibus in censum delatis,¹ habuit capita² LXXXIII milia civium Romanorum cum his qui in agris erant.

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus regum, Volscos, quae gens ad Campaniam euntibus³ non longe ab urbe 10 est, vicit, Gabios civitatem⁴ et Suessam Pometiam subegit, cum Tuscis pacem fecit et templum Iovi in Capitolio⁵ aedificavit. Postea Ardeam oppugnans imperium perdidit⁶; cumque imperavisset annos quattuor et viginti, cum uxore et liberis suis fugit.

The first consuls

15 **549.** Hinc consules coeperunt, pro uno rege duo, hac causa creati, ut, si unus malus esse voluisset,⁷ alter eum habens potestatem similem coerceret. Et placuit⁸ ne imperium longius quam annum haberent, ne per diuturnitatem potestatis insolentiores redderentur. Fuerunt igitur anno primo ab expulsis 20 regibus consules Iunius Brutus et Tarquinius Collatinus. Sed Tarquiniō Collatinō statim sublata est dignitas. Placuerat⁹ enim ne quisquam in urbe maneret qui Tarquinius vocaretur. Ergo, accepto omni patrimonio suo, ex urbe migravit, et loco ipsius¹⁰ factus est L. Valerius Publicola consul.

¹ omnibus . . . delatis, when all had been enumerated. ² See p. 208, note 5.
³ ad Campaniam euntibus, to those going toward Campania, in the direction of Campania; euntibus is a dative of reference. ⁴ Gabios civitatem, the city (or community) of Gabii. ⁵ in Capitolio, on the Capitoline Hill. ⁶ A crime committed by a son of Tarquinius aroused such indignation that Tarquinius and his family were obliged to leave Rome. ⁷ si . . . voluisset, if one of the consuls were inclined to be troublesome; voluisset is attracted into the subjunctive mood, because it depends on a clause the verb of which is in the subjunctive. ⁸ placuit, it was decided. The subject is the clause ne . . . haberent. ⁹ placuerat, it had been decided. ¹⁰ loco ipsius, in his place.

Wars against the Tarquins

550. Commōvit tamen bellum urbī Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, quī fuerat expulsus, et, collēctis multis gentibus, ut in rēgnum posset restitui, dimicāvit. In primā pugnā Brūtus cōsul et Arrūns, Tarquini filius, invicem sē occidērunt,¹ Rōmāni tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum matrōnae Rōmānae 5 quasi commūnem patrem per annum lūxērunt.²

Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius, ut reciperētur in rēgnum, bellum Rōmānis³ intulit, auxilium⁴ ei ferente Porsenā,⁵ Tusciae rēge, et Rōmam paene cēpit. Vērūm tum quoque victus est. 10

Tertiō annō post rēgēs exāctōs Tarquinius, cum suscipi nōn posset in rēgnum neque ei Porsena, quī pācem cum Rōmānis fēcerat, praestāret auxilium, Tusculum sē contulit, quae civitās nōn longē ab urbe est, atque ibi per quattuordecim annōs privātus incoluit. 15

Pyrrhus and the Romans

551. Eōdem tempore Tarentinis, quī iam in ultimā Italiā sunt, bellum indictum est, quod lēgātis Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcerant. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpiri rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs in auxilium poposcērunt.⁶ Is mox ad Italiam vēnit, tumque primum Rōmāni cum trānsmarinō hoste dimicāvērunt. Missus est con- 20 trā eum cōsul P. Valerius Laevinus, quī cum explorātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūci, ostendī omnem exercitum, tumque dimitti, ut renūtiārent Pyrrhō quae ā Rōmānis agerentur. Commissā mox pugnā, cum iam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantōrum auxiliō vicit, quōs incognitōs⁷ Rōmāni 25 timuērunt. Sed nox proeliō finem dedit; Laevinus tamen per noctem fūgit, Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octingentōs cēpit et eōs

¹ invicem sē occidērunt, *killed each other*. ² From *lūgeō*. ³ Which usage of the dative? ⁴ auxilium, object of *ferente*. ⁵ ferente Porsenā, ablative absolute. ⁶ From *poscō*. ⁷ Translate so as to show cause.

summō honōre trāctāvit, occisōs sepelivit. Quōs cum adversō vulnere¹ et truci vultū¹ etiā mortuōs iacere vidisset, tulisse ad caelum manūs dicitur cum hāc vōce: Sē tōtius orbis domini esse potuisse, si tālēs sibi militēs contigissent.²

5 Postea Pyrrhus, coniunctis sibi Samnitibus, Lucanis, Bruttis, Rōmam perrēxit,³ omnia ferrō ignique vāstāvit, Campāniam populātus est, et ad Praeneste vēnit. Mox terrōre exercitus, quī eum cum cōsule sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē redimendis captivis missi ab eō bene
10 recepti sunt. Captivōs sine pretiō Rōmam misit. Ūnum ex lēgātis Rōmānōrum, Fabricium, sic admirātus, cum eum pauperem esse cognōvisset, ut quārtā parte rēgnī prōmissā⁴ sollicitare voluerit⁵ ut ad sē trānsiret, contemptusque⁶ est ā Fābriō. Quārē cum Pyrrhus Rōmānōrum ingenti admirā-
15 tiōne tenērētur,⁷ lēgātum misit, ut pācem aequis condiciōnibus peteret, praecipuum virum, Cineam nōmine, ita ut Pyrrhus partem Italiae quā iam armis occupāverat obtinēret.

• Pāx displicuit remandātumque Pyrrhō est⁸ ā senātū eum cum Rōmānis, nisi ex Italiā recessisset, pācem habere nōn posse.
20 Ita lēgātus Pyrrhi reversus est. Ā quō cum quaereret Pyrrhus quālem Rōmam⁹ comperisset, Cineās dixit rēgum sē patriam vidisse: tālēs illic ferē omnēs esse, quālis ūtus Pyrrhus apud Ēpirum¹⁰ et reliquam Graeciam putārētur.

Missi sunt contrā Pyrrhum ducēs P. Sulpicius et Decius
25 Mūs cōsulēs. Certāmine commissō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est,

¹ *adversō vulnere* and *truci vultū* are descriptive ablatives. Translate, *when he saw these men lying with wounds on the front of their bodies and with stern expressions on their faces even in death.* ² *if it had been his lot to have such soldiers.* ³ From *pergō*. ⁴ *quārtā . . . prōmissā*, by the offer of a fourth of his kingdom. ⁵ The perfect subjunctive is often used in result clauses in secondary sequence. ⁶ From *contemnō*. ⁷ *cum . . . tenērētur*, since Pyrrhus felt great admiration for the Romans. How literally? The clause is causal. ⁸ *remandātum . . . est*, word was sent back to Pyrrhus that, etc. ⁹ *quālem Rōmam*, what sort of city he had found Rome to be. ¹⁰ *apud Ēpirum*, in Epirus.

elephantī interfectī, vīgintī milia caesa¹ hostium, et ex Rōmānis tantam quīnque milia; Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus.²

Interiectō annō contrā Pyrrhum Fabricius est missus, qui prius inter lēgātōs sollicitārī nōn poterat; quārtā rēgnī parte prōmissā. Tum, cum vicīna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus Pyrrhī nocte ad eum vēnit, prōmittēns venēnō sē Pyrrhum occisūrum, sī sibi aliquid pollicērētur.³ Quem Fabricius vinctum redūcī iussit ad dominum Pyrrhōque dīcī quae contrā caput eius medicus sponddisset.⁴ Tum rēx admirātus eum dixisse fertur⁵: “ Ille est Fabricius qui difficilīus ab honestāte quam 10 sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest.” Tum rēx in Siciliam profectus est.

Cōsulēs deinde M. Curius Dentātus et Cornēlius Lentulus adversus Pyrrhū missī sunt. Curius contrā eum pugnāvit, exercitum eius cecidit,⁶ ipsum Tarentum fugāvit, castra cēpit. 15 Eō diē caesa hostium vīgintī tria milia. Curius in cōsulātū triumphāvit. Prīmus Rōmam elephantōs quattuor dūxit. Pyrrhus etiam ā Tarentō mox recessit et apud Argōs, Graeciae civitātem, occisus est.

STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

The brave deed of Horatius Cocles

552. Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, ad restituendōs Tarquiniōs 20 cum infestō exercitū vēnit. Primō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāserat; ex agris in urbem dēmigrant; urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiis. Alia pars urbis mūris,⁷ alia Tiberī obiectō⁸ tūta vidēbātur.⁹ Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit. Ūnus vir autem erat, 25

¹ From caedō. ² Supply est. ³ sī . . . pollicērētur, if some reward were promised to him. ⁴ From spondeō. ⁵ fertur, is reported. ⁶ From caedō. ⁷ mūris, by reason of its walls. ⁸ Tiberī obiectō, by the interposed Tiber = by the Tiber's being between. ⁹ vidēbātur, seemed.

Horātius Cocles, illō cognōmine appellātus quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmiserat. Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā, aeiem hostium sōlus sustinuit. Intereā pōns ā tergō interrumpēbātur. Ipsa audācia obstupēfēcit hostis; ponte rescissō,¹ armātus in
 5 Tiberim dēsiliuit et, multis superincidentibus tēlis, incolumis ad suōs trāhāvit. Ob virtūtem Horātiō civitās grātiam solvit²: eī tantum agrī pūblicē datum est quantum³ ūnō diē circumarāre potuit. Statua quoque eī in Comitīō posita est.

The fortitude of Mucius

553. Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius senātum adiit
 10 et veniam trānsfugiendī⁴ petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte, in castra Porsenae vēnit. Ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope rēgium tribūnal cōstitit. Stīpendium tunc forte militibus dabātur, et proximus rēgī erat scriba, quī similem vestem gerēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, scribam prō
 15 rēge occidit. Apprehēsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus,⁵ dextram accēnsō⁶ ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, velut manum pūniēns. Attonitus mirāculō, rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, dixit trecentōs⁷ sibi similis adversus eum coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus,
 20 bellum acceptis obsidibus dēposuit.

Cloelia, the hostage, escapes

554. Porsena Cloeliam, virginem nōbilem, inter obsidēs accēperat. Castra Porsenae haud procul ab ripā Tiberis locāta erant. Cloelia, dēceptis custōdibus, nocte castris ēgressa, equō quem fors dederat arreptō,⁸ Tiberim trāiēcit. Quod ubi rēgī
 25 nūntiātum est, primō incēsus irā, Rōmam lēgātōs misit ad

¹ From rescindō. ² grātiam solvit, showed its gratitude. ³ tantum . . . quantum, as much . . . as. ⁴ veniam trānsfugiendī, favor of deserting = permission to desert. ⁵ From pertrahō. ⁶ From accendō; order: foculō accēnsō ad sacrificium. ⁷ trecentōs, three hundred; subject of coniūrāvisse. ⁸ equō . . . arreptō, seizing a horse; arreptō is from arripiō.

Cloeliam obsidem reposedam. Rōmāni eam ex foedere restituērunt. Tum rēx virginis virtūtem admirātus¹ eam laudavit ac partem obsidum eī datūrum esse sē dixit, permisitque ut ipsa obsidēs legeret. Prōductis obsidibus, Cloelia virginēs puerōsque ēlēgit, quōrum aetātem iniūriæ obnoxiam² sciēbat, 5 et cum eis in patriam rediit. Rōmāni novam in fēminā virtūtem novō genere honōris, statuā equestri, dōnāvērunt. In summā³ Viā Sacrā⁴ est posita virgō insidēns equō.

Caius Marcius Coriolanus

555. C. Mārcius captis Coriolis,⁵ urbe Volscōrum, Coriolānus dictus est. Puer patre⁶ orbātus sub mātris tūtēlā adolēvit. Cum 10 prima stīpēdia facere coepisset⁷ adulēscēns, ē multis proeliis quibus interfuit numquam rediit nisi corōnā aliōve militārī praemiō dōnātus. In omnī vitæ ratiōne nihil aliud sibi prōpōnēbat quam ut mātrī placēret; cumque illa audiret filium⁸ laudārī aut corōnā dōnārī vidēret, tum dēmum fēlicem sē ipsa 15 putābat. Cōsul factus gravī annōnā⁹ advectum¹⁰ ē Siciliā frūmentum magnō pretiō dandum populō cūrāvit, ut plēbs agrōs, nōn sēditiōnēs, coleret. Quā de causā damnātus ad Volscōs infestōs tunc Rōmānis cōnfūgit eōsque adversus Rōmānōs concitāvit. Imperātor ā Volscis factus, castris ad quārtum ab urbe 20 lapidem¹¹ positis, agrum Rōmānum est populātus.

Missi sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum lēgāti dē pāce, sed atrōx respōnsum rettulērunt. Iterum deinde iīdem missi nē in castra

¹ Translate as if it were a present participle. ² *obnoxiam*, liable to. ³ *summā*, highest part of. ⁴ *Viā Sacrā*, a street running through the Roman Forum up to the Capitol. ⁵ *captis Coriolis*, because of the capture of Corioli. ⁶ Which usage of the ablative? ⁷ *prima . . . coepisset*, had begun to earn first wages (as a soldier) = had begun his first military service. ⁸ Subject accusative of *laudārī* and *dōnārī*. ⁹ *gravī annōnā*, in a time of extreme scarcity. ¹⁰ Agrees with *frūmentum*, which is the subject accusative of *dandum* (esse). Translate, had (cūrāvit) corn, which had been brought from Sicily, distributed to the people at a high price. ¹¹ *lapidem*, milestone.

quidem recepti sunt. Stupēbat senātus, trepidābat populus, viri pariter ac mulierēs exitium imminēns lāmentābantur. Tum Veturia, Coriolāni māter, et Volumnia uxor, duōs parvōs filiōs sēcum trahēns, castra hostium petiērunt. Ubi mātrem adspexit
5 Coriolānus, exclāmāvit: " Ō patria, vicisti iram mēam admōtis mātris meae precibus,¹ cui² tuam in mē iniūriam condōnō." Complexus inde suōs castra mōvit et exercitum ex agrō Rōmānō abdūxit.

¹ admōtis . . . precibus, *by employing the prayers.*

² cui, *for whose sake.*

REVIEW QUESTIONS

LESSON I

556. What use of the nominative do you know? What are the case endings of a noun, and what is their use? What are the personal endings of the third person singular and plural? Translate **puella ambulat** to show three kinds of action. What is the case ending in the nominative plural for words ending in **-a** in the nominative singular? What is an enclitic? To which word in a sentence is **-ne** generally attached? Accent **ambulant** and **ambulantne**. Divide **agricola** and **ambulant** into syllables, and give a reason for the accent of each word.

LESSON II

557. What are the case endings for the nominative and the accusative singular? for the same cases in the plural? What usage has the accusative? Give the accusative singular and plural of **agricola**. What is the difference in meaning between **agricola puellās convocat** and **puellās agricola convocat**? What Latin words are suggested by the English words *laudatory*, *aquarium*, *convocation*, *cantata*, *aëronaut*? Tell why each noun in 36 stands in the case in which it is found.

LESSON III

558. What is the use of the personal endings in the inflection of a verb? Give the personal endings of the present tense. What does each mean? Inflect **convocō** in the present indicative active. If a verb ends in **-mus**, what is its subject? If it ends in **-s**? Say in Latin *it swims* and *she walks*. Spell the present stem of each verb in 39, *c*. How many conjugations of Latin verbs are there? How are they distinguished from each other? Give the present infinitive active of each verb in 39, *c*.

LESSON IV

559. What three Latin cases have you learned? To which English case does each correspond? What is the usage of each case you have met? Inflect **fugō** in the present indicative active. Give the nominative, genitive, and accusative singular and plural of the Latin word for *daughter*. Express in Latin *whose land? whom does he see? what has he?* Give English words that appear to be derived from **liberō** and **portō**. Give the genitive and the accusative forms of the nouns in 45. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 46.

LESSON V

560. Spell the present stem of the Latin verb meaning *see*. What endings do you add in the inflection of the present indicative active? Where is the vowel **e** of the present stem of the second conjugation short in the inflection of the present tense? Inflect **doceō**, **habeō**, **videō**, and **portō** in the present indicative active. What Latin words are suggested by the English words *fortune*, *expectation*, *piratical*, *export*, *monitor*? Why is the infinitive given with each verb in the vocabularies? What kind of clause is introduced by **quod**?

LESSON VI

561. How many cases of Latin nouns have you learned? Name them. Give a usage of each case, and give the rule for the usage. With which Latin case have you used a preposition? What is the general character of the dative and of the ablative case? Give the dative and the ablative singular and plural of each noun in 55. What do you observe about the endings of the dative and the ablative plural? Explain the normal order of words in a Latin sentence. What is the effect of a change from the normal order of words? Give English words that appear to be derived from **fābula**, **dō**, and **nārrō**. Conjugate each verb in 49 in the present indicative active. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 61.

LESSON VII

562. How many declensions of Latin nouns are there? What nouns belong to the first declension? What is the base of a noun? Give in their order the case endings of the first declension. How do you recognize a noun of this declension? Decline **rēgina**, **pīrāta**, and **domina**. What is the gender of most nouns of the first declension? Give five masculine nouns of this declension. What three case endings in this declension are the same? Say in Latin *in the fight, in the forests*. Give English words that appear to be derived from the words in 65.

LESSON VIII

563. What is the case of the direct object in Latin? of the indirect object? for the *to* or *for* relation? for the *of* relation? How is the *in* or *on* relation expressed? What two genders are there in nouns of the second declension? What are the case endings of the second declension? Decline **dominus** and **oppidum**. Express in Latin *of the horses, in the garden, to the friends*. What cases are alike in the second declension? What four pairs of cases of neuter nouns in this declension are alike? What English words are suggested by **dominus**? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 75.

LESSON IX

564. Decline **bonus**. Decline **pilum magnum**. What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? What is the normal position of an adjective? of an indirect object? How many declensions of adjectives are there? What adjectives precede their nouns? Decline **nauta validus**. Give the ablative singular and plural of each noun in 82. Give the case endings of an adjective of the first and second declensions, reciting first the nominative endings for the three genders, then the genitive endings, and so on. What English words are suggested by **magnus**? Conjugate in the present indicative active each verb in 83.

LESSON X

565. State the rule for the gender of nouns of the first declension. Is the ending of the adjective always the same as that of the noun with which it agrees? Why is *nauta bona* not correct? Express in Latin *you are a poet, your fortune is large, in Europe, to the kind goddess*. Decline *longus* and *puella parva*. Inflect *sum* and *dēmonstrō* in the present indicative active. What kind of verb is *sum*? What are predicate nouns and adjectives? Give two uses of the nominative.

LESSON XII

566. What cases of the second declension end in *-ō*? What cases end in *-īs*? What two cases in the neuter plural end in *-a*? Decline *puer*, *ager*, *vir*, *praemium*, and *socius*. How do the English derivatives of these words help you to decline them? Point out the predicate nouns and adjectives in 101. How is the present stem of a verb found? Give English words that appear to be derived from the nouns of 100. What is the rule for the gender of nouns of the second declension? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 101.

LESSON XIII

567. Decline *miser* and *vester*. Inflect *superō* in the present indicative active. How does the meaning of *tuus* differ from that of *vester*? What is an appositive? Find examples of an appositive in 96 and in 101. What is the rule for the case of an appositive? What is the rule for the agreement of an adjective? Say in Latin *for my friend Galba*. What English words appear to be derived from *miser*, *multus*, and *vocō*? What kind of clause begins with *quod* in sentence 7 of 105?

LESSON XIV

568. Give two uses of the nominative and two of the dative, and one usage of each of the other cases. Give seven Latin adjectives that are accompanied by the dative. How do you say in

Latin *there is? there are?* Inflect **sum** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. Decline **servus, vir, filius**. What adjectives have you learned that keep **e** in their inflection? In what two ways have you used **amicus**? What is the rule for the dative with adjectives? Give English derivatives of **propinquus** and **proximus**.

LESSON XV

569. Decline **légatus** and **scūtum**. Inflect **pugnō** and **compleō** in the imperfect indicative active. Give two uses of the ablative. Which use requires a preposition? By what sort of prepositional phrases is the ablative of means to be translated? What is the tense sign of the imperfect indicative active? Divide **expectābāmus** in such a way as to show the stem, the tense sign, and the personal ending. Which personal ending of the imperfect is unlike that of the present? Express in Latin *by an oar, with water, by means of money*. What kind of action is expressed by the imperfect?

LESSON XVI

570. Inflect **labōrō** and **teneō** in the future indicative active. Give three uses of the ablative, two of the dative, and one of the genitive. Which two cases are used with prepositions in Latin? Give two uses of the accusative. What preposition in Latin is used with two cases? What is the tense sign of the future indicative active? Translate **cum cūrā** in two ways. When may **cum** be omitted in phrases of manner? Say in Latin *with a sword* and *with zeal*. Give English derivatives of **labōrō**. Decline **aeger**.

LESSON XVII

571. What forms are given as the principal parts of a verb? Give the principal parts of **laudō**. What are the present and the perfect stem of **laudō**? What tenses use the present stem in their inflection (as far as you have studied the verb)? What are the personal endings of the perfect indicative active? What tenses use the perfect stem in their inflection? Inflect **laudō** in the perfect

indicative active. What is the difference between the perfect definite and the perfect indefinite? Translate the perfect of **laudō** in both ways. Tell the reason for the case of each noun and adjective in 138.

LESSON XVIII

572. Give four uses of the ablative. Which uses of the ablative take **cum**? Inflect **videō** in the perfect indicative active and **maneō** in the imperfect indicative active. Express in Latin *with the Romans, with danger, with a shield, in Italy, into Germany*. Decline **periculum** and **locus**. What are the perfect stems of the verbs in 139? Give English derivatives of **captivus**, **causa**, and **locus**.

LESSON XIX

573. What is a demonstrative? Give an example in English. In what ways is the demonstrative **is** used? Inflect **sum**, **hiemō**, and **maneō** in the tenses of the indicative active through the perfect. Express in Latin *she has been kind, they have been friends*. Decline **is** and **proximus**. What is the normal position of a modifying adjective? What is the normal position of **is** when it is an adjective? Tell the reason for the case of each noun and adjective in 150.

LESSON XX

574. What is the difference in the action expressed by the imperfect and the perfect tense? What is the perfect stem of **sum**? Decline the interrogative pronoun **quis**. Decline the interrogative adjective **qui**. Express in Latin *whose horse? of those men, with that girl, with which spears?* Make a synopsis (671) of **sum** in each person for the tenses you have studied. Decline **animus** and **imperium**.

LESSON XXI

575. Give the infinitives of **amō**, **moneō**, and **regō**. What letter of the infinitive needs to be especially noticed? Why? What are the perfect stems of **amō**, **moneō**, and **mittō**? Translate the third person

singular of the perfect indicative active of **dūcō** in two ways. What is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations? in the third? Inflect **mittō** in the indicative active through the perfect. Inflect **dūcō** and **emō** in the present and future indicative active. Give English derivatives of **dūcō** and **mittō**. Make a synopsis of **amō** in each person through the perfect indicative.

LESSON XXIII

576. What three things must you know about each noun of the third declension to be able to decline it? What are the case endings of this declension? What case endings are the same? Decline **eques**, **dux**, **lapis**, and **caput**. Decline **rēx noster**. Make a synopsis of **mittō** in each person for the tenses you have studied. Give English derivatives of the words in 172.

LESSON XXIV

577. What uses of the accusative and ablative cases have you now studied? What is the difference between phrases of place from which introduced by **ab**, **ex**, and **dē**? Give the rules for place from which and place to which. In what forms is the inflection of **capitō** unlike that of **regō**? Inflect **fugitō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active. Decline **mīrus** and **pēs**. Express in Latin *he fled toward the gate, he fled out of the gate, he fled away from the gate*. Give the genitive endings for the first three declensions; then the dative endings, and so on. From what Latin words are *pedal*, *mural*, and *dismiss* derived? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 181.

LESSON XXV

578. Give five uses of the ablative case, and illustrate each with a Latin phrase. Decline **homō bonus**, **quod vulnus**, and **corpus**. What English words are used to translate the ablative of cause? What uses of the ablative require a preposition? In what two uses of the ablative is **cum** employed? Inflect **doleō** in the present, imperfect,

future, and perfect indicative active. In what two ways may the dative case be used? What two ways are there of expressing a phrase introduced by *to*? Make a synopsis of **capiō** in each person through the perfect indicative active.

LESSON XXVI

579. What are the regular case endings for nouns of the third declension of each gender? What nouns have *i*-stems? How do nouns with *i*-stems differ in declension from other nouns of the third declension? What is an enclitic? Give two examples. Decline **lapis**, **civis**, and **urbs**. Express in Latin *because of our courage, sons of these citizens*. From what Latin words are *civilize*, *finite*, *ignition*, *marine*, and *interurban* derived?

LESSON XXVII

580. What preposition is used with both the accusative and the ablative case? Decline **finis** and **mare**. Decline **aeger**. What two meanings has **inter**? How do you say *with* and *because of* in Latin? What forms of adjectives are used as nouns? Say in Latin *among the allies, after the war, across the sea, against the soldiers, toward the province, through the cities, without a friend*.

LESSON XXIX

581. Decline **audāx**, **brevis**, and **ācer**. Decline **omnēs Rōmāni**, **periculum commūne**, and **dux fortis**. What English words are derived from **gravis**, **omnis**, and **fortis**? What is the more common ending for the ablative singular of adjectives of the third declension? How can you tell from the vocabularies whether an adjective of the third declension has one, two, or three terminations? Express in Latin *for an eager man, with all the citizens, among the brave centurions*. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 202.

LESSON XXX

582. How can you tell a verb of the fourth conjugation from a verb in **-iō** of the third conjugation? How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ in inflection from verbs in **-iō** of the third conjugation?

Inflect **dēfendō** and **veniō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active, and make synopses of each. What are the present and perfect stems of the verbs in 213? Decline **flūmen** and **dux nōbilis**. What English words are derived from **pauci**, **nōbilis**, **audiō**, and **dēfendō**? What are the principal parts of **dūcō**, **mittō**, **capiō**, **fugiō**, and **iaciō**?

LESSON XXXI

583. Give eight uses of the ablative case, two of the dative, and two of the accusative. Inflect **gerō** in all the tenses you have studied. Decline **ea aestās**, **secundus annus**, **nox**, and **tempus breve**. Express in Latin *within ten hours*, *at that time*, *during the second summer*. What is the rule for the expression of time when in Latin? From what Latin words are *perennial*, *decimate*, *primitive*, *extemporaneous*, and *belligerent* derived?

LESSON XXXII

584. What auxiliary word must be used in translating the pluperfect? How are the pluperfect and future perfect tenses formed? Inflect **veniō**, **sum**, and **gerō** in these tenses. What is the Latin way of saying *the Roman people*? What is the perfect system of a verb? What is the difference in the meaning of **Gallus** and **Gallia**? What is the meaning of **fuerat**? of **habuerat**? Write a Latin sentence containing an ablative of cause, an ablative of accompaniment, and a pluperfect indicative active.

LESSON XXXIII

585. In what two ways may a demonstrative be used? Distinguish between **is**, **hic**, and **ille**. Decline these words. Give the complete rules for place from which and place to which. Express in Latin *from Italy*, *from Rome*, *to Gaul*, *to Athens*. Make a synopsis of **gerō** in the third person singular and plural of the indicative active. From the derivation of the words what is the difference between a *society* and a *fraternity*?

LESSON XXXV

586. What is the passive voice? What are the personal endings of the passive voice? In passive sentences how is the person doing the act expressed in Latin? How is the thing doing the act expressed? Inflect **superō** and **videō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive, and make synopses of each. In how many ways have you used the ablative case? How many of these uses employ **ā** or **ab**? How many employ **cum**? Express in Latin *they are overcome by weapons, they are overcome by the Gauls*. Where does the tense sign in the passive differ from the tense sign in the active?

LESSON XXXVI

587. What is the antecedent of a relative pronoun? In what respects does a relative agree with its antecedent? In what case is a relative? Decline **quī**. Inflect **vāstō** in the active indicative, and make a synopsis of the third person singular and plural in the passive. Decline **vestrum cōsiliū**, **legiō prima**, and **turris**. Express in Latin *the traders to whom I gave, the traders toward whom, among the mountains which I see, against those men whose sons are*. Give English derivatives from the words in 249.

LESSON XXXVII

588. Decline **castra** and **cōsul Rōmānus**. Inflect **vincō** and **recipiō** in the present system active and passive. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural of **vincō**. What is the second person singular of the present passive of **gerō**? the second person singular of the future passive of **vincō**? What are the third persons plural of the present and future active and passive of **dūcō** and **iaciō**? From what Latin words are *pacific*, *consulate*, *reception*, and *victor* derived?

LESSON XXXVIII

589. Decline the personal pronouns of the first, second, and third persons. Decline the reflexive pronouns of the first, second, and third persons. Why is the nominative of reflexive pronouns not

needed? Express in Latin *his, her, their, to him, to himself, him, himself, to me, with us*. Inflect **interficiō** in the active and passive indicative through the perfect tense, and make synopses in the third person singular and plural. What is the position of **cum** when it is used with personal pronouns?

LESSON XXXIX

590. Inflect **dīcō** in the perfect system, and **impediō** in the present system. Make a synopsis of **incitō** in the third person singular and of **praebeō** in the third person plural. Give English words derived from **dīcō**, **impediō**, and **incitō**. What is the difference in meaning of the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? Decline **aedificium**. Tell the reason for the case of each noun, adjective, and relative pronoun in 275.

LESSON XL

591. What kind of word is **suus**? When should it be used? When may it be omitted? How do you say *his, her, its, their*, when they are not reflexive? What kind of words are followed by an ablative of separation? Give six verbs that may be followed by this ablative. What prepositions are used with the ablative of separation? What other ablative is of the same nature as the ablative of separation? Inflect **dēsistō** in the indicative active, and **interclūdō** in the indicative passive. Give English derivatives from **privō**, **prohibeō**, and **dēsistō**.

LESSON XLI

592. What tenses of the verb belong to the present system? to the perfect system? to the participial system? Point out six uses of the ablative in 290. Inflect **gerō** throughout the indicative passive. Decline **impedimentum**, **imperātor**, and **mora brevis**. How do **concilium** and **cōnsilium** differ in meaning? Why does a participle change its endings?

LESSON XLII

593. What are the case endings of the fourth declension? What is the rule for the gender of nouns of the fourth declension? What exceptions are there to this rule? Decline **lacus**, **adventus**, **domus**, and

cornū. Inflect **mūniō** in the participial system, and make a synopsis in the third person plural active and passive. How are place from which and place to which expressed with the word **domus**? Give English words derived from **adventus**, **manus**, and **mūniō**.

LESSON XLIII

594. What are the three degrees of comparison of adjectives? Compare **fortis** and **longus**. Decline the positive, comparative, and superlative of **gravis**. Inflect **petō** in the indicative active and passive. Make a synopsis of **faciō** in the first person plural of the active voice. Decline **senātus Rōmānus** and **iter longum**. How do you say in Latin *rather long, too new, very brave, I shall march, we were attacking*?

LESSON XLIV

595. Compare **similis**, **dissimilis**, and **nōbilis**. Give two uses of the genitive and two of the dative case. What is a partitive genitive? Give an exception to the rule for the partitive genitive. Decline **pars** and **litus angustum**. What adjectives are compared like **similis**? Compare **ācer**, and decline its comparative.

LESSON XLVI

596. Compare **bonus**, **summus**, **peior**, **plūrimus**, **minus**, and **maior**, and decline each in the comparative degree. How is the comparative of **multus** used? What does **summus mōns** mean? Give English words that are derived from the words in 316. Give all the ways in which you have used each case.

LESSON XLVII

597. What do adverbs modify? What is the regular way of forming adverbs from adjectives? What cases of adjectives are used as adverbs? Give examples. Form and compare an adverb from an adjective of the first and second declensions; from an adjective of the third declension of one ending. Form and compare adverbs from **ācer**, **miser**, and **bonus**. Decline **multitūdō**. Inflect **dō** throughout

the indicative. Inflect **praemittō** in the participial system. Make a synopsis of **relinquō** in the third person plural. Tell the reason for the case of the nouns in 329.

LESSON XLVIII.

598. What are the case endings for each declension in the nominative singular? in the genitive singular? in the other cases? What is the gender of nouns of the fourth declension? of the fifth? Give the case endings of the fifth declension. Decline **diēs**, **rēs**, and **aciēs**. Inflect **pōnō** in the present and the future indicative active, and **instruō** in the present system. Make a synopsis of **pōnō** in the third person singular. Give three uses of the accusative case. How is time during which expressed? How is duration of time expressed?

LESSON L

599. What tenses has the subjunctive? What vowels characterize the present subjunctive of the several conjugations? Inflect the present subjunctive active and passive of **laudō**, **videō**, **gerō**, **recipiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**. To which system of the verb does the present subjunctive belong? How is purpose expressed in English? How in Latin? When is **ut** used in purpose clauses? When is **nē** used? Translate **venit ut videat** in five ways. Are purpose clauses independent or dependent? Are they adjectives, adverbs, or nouns in nature?

LESSON LI

600. How is the imperfect subjunctive formed? Inflect the present and the imperfect subjunctive active and passive of **portō**, **terreō**, **mittō**, **iaciō**, and **mūniō**. To which system does the imperfect subjunctive belong? What do you understand by sequence of tenses? What are the primary tenses? What are the secondary tenses? Give the rules for the sequence of tenses, and for the tense of the subjunctive in purpose clauses. Translate **venit ut vidēret** in as many ways as you can. Tell the reason for the tense of each subjunctive in 353.

of the infinitive generally accompanies **possum**? What English words are derived from **nihil**, **putō**, **respondeō**, and **nūntiō**?

LESSON LXI

608. Name four indefinite pronouns. Decline **quidam** and **aliquis**. Name seven kinds of pronouns, giving an example of each. Review the declension of the various pronouns. Give the usages that you have learned for the several cases of nouns. Illustrate each by a brief Latin sentence.

LESSON LXII

609. Recite the rule for the dative with compounds. Give some compound verbs with which the dative is used. What is the double dative? Inflect **dēsum** in all moods. Name a compound verb which takes both an accusative and a dative. What Latin words are suggested by the English words *munitions*, *prefect*, *subsidize*, *occurrence*? Illustrate the dative of purpose by a Latin sentence. Tell the reason for the case of the nouns and for the mood and tense of the subjunctives in 430.

LESSON LXIII

610. Inflect **volō** and **nōlō**. Make a synopsis of each in the third person singular and plural. Give the rule for the dative with special intransitive verbs, and name verbs followed by such a dative. Say in Latin in two ways *Cæsar ordered the men to come into the camp*. Decline **mulier**, **sōl**, and **occāsus**. Inflect **resistō** in the present subjunctive and the future indicative active. Explain sequence of tenses. What tenses are used in purpose clauses, and when?

LESSON LXV

611. How is the present participle formed? the future active participle? the future passive participle? Give the participles of **gerō** and their meanings. Decline **fugiēns**. What part of speech is a participle? What is the rule for the agreement of participles? Explain the tenses of participles. Translate **Galli territī ex agris**

fugiēbant in six ways. Give English words derived from **commoveō** and **reducō**. Inflect **commoveō** in the present system. Give the infinitives and the participles of **reducō**.

LESSON LXVII

612. What is an ablative absolute? In what three ways is it formed? Give examples. Which participles are used in making the ablative absolute, and what time do they express? Translate **bellō factō** in five ways. Express in Latin *having captured the town they freed the captives*. Decline **deditiō** and **ripa**. What does **media urbs** mean? Give the rule for the ablative absolute.

LESSON LXVIII

613. Name two parts of the verb which are verbal nouns. Decline the gerunds of **iaciō** and of **mittō**. What is used in place of the nominative of the gerund? Translate **ad petendum**. What other ways of expressing the same idea are there in Latin? Inflect **eō** throughout. Make synopses in each person. Decline **nōmen** and **spatium**. Give English words suggested by the Latin words of 463. Give the infinitives and the participles of **orō**, with their meanings.

LESSON LXIX

614. What other name has the gerundive? What part of speech is a gerund? What part of speech is a gerundive? Decline the gerund and the gerundive of **videō**. Name two uses of the gerundive. Express in Latin *for the purpose of capturing the city and the signal had to be given*. Decline **vis**. Inflect **augeō** in the indicative active, **conveniō** in the subjunctive active, and **ferō** throughout, and give synopses of each. State what you know about the uses of participles.

LESSON LXXI

615. What is a deponent verb? What active forms has a deponent verb? Inflect **cōnor** throughout. Give a Latin sentence containing an ablative of specification. What uses of the ablative case do you

know? What English words are suggested by **sequor**, **hortor**, and **experior**? Make a synopsis of **sequor** in the third person singular.

LESSON LXXII

616. Inflect **faciō** in the active and the passive voice. Make a synopsis of **vereor** in the third person plural. What is a clause? What clauses thus far studied have had a verb in the subjunctive? in the infinitive? Recite the rule for temporal clauses introduced by **cum**. Say in Latin *I was informed by you, you informed me.*

LESSON LXXIV

617. What substantive clauses have you studied? In which mood are their verbs? Give the rule for **quod** clauses of fact. Say in Latin *that road, as we have shown, was more difficult.* Decline **lĕgātīō**. Inflect **ĕgredior** throughout. Make synopses of **cōgō**. Give English words suggested by the words in 498.

LESSON LXXV

618. What is the rule for the main verb of a statement that is given indirectly? for the subordinate verb of such a statement? What determines the sequence of tenses in indirect statements? Compare **celeriter** and decline **initium**. Inflect **moror** and **revertor** throughout. What uses do you know for each case of nouns (512)? How have you used the subjunctive mood (513)? the infinitive (513)? the participle (513)?

APPENDIX I

RULES OF SYNTAX

NOTE. These rules are here numbered consecutively for the convenience of teachers and pupils. The number in parentheses following a rule is its section number.

619. Agreement.

1. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number (29).
2. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb (87).
3. A predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb (88).
4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains (94).
5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (79).
6. A predicate adjective used with a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb (394, *b*).
7. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the way it is used in its own clause (248).

620. Nominative Case.

8. The subject of a verb is in the nominative case (28).

621. Genitive Case.

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor is in the genitive case (44).
10. Words denoting a part may have with them a genitive of the whole from which the part is taken (309).

11. Some nouns of action and feeling may have with them a genitive to express the object of the action or feeling implied in the nouns (381).

12. The genitive denotes that of which something consists or is made (p. 79, note 1)

622. Dative Case.

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case (57).

14. Certain adjectives meaning *near, fit, friendly, pleasing, like*, and their opposites, may be accompanied by a dative to show the person or the thing toward which the quality of the adjective is directed (111).

15. Some verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super**, take a dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative (425).

16. The dative is used to denote the purpose for which a thing serves (427).

17. The dative is used to denote the person (or, rarely, the thing) affected by the action or situation expressed by the verb (428).

18. Most verbs meaning *believe, favor, help, please, trust*, and their opposites, also *command, obey, pardon, persuade, resist, serve, spare*, and the like, take a dative of the indirect object (433).

623. Accusative Case.

19. The object of a verb is in the accusative case (33).

20. Place *to which* is usually expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; but with the names of towns, and with **domus**, the preposition is omitted (230, b).

21. The accusative is used with certain prepositions (193).

22. Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative (333).

23. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative (399).

624. Ablative Case.

24. Place *where* is commonly expressed by a phrase consisting of a preposition, usually **in**, with the ablative case (59).

25. The means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (122).

26. The ablative with **cum** is used with abstract nouns to denote the manner of an action; but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun of the phrase (129).

27. The ablative with **cum** is used to show accompaniment (143).

28. Place *from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with **ā (ab)**, **dē**, **ē (ex)**; but with the names of towns, and with **domus**, the preposition is omitted (230, a).

29. The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause (185).

30. The ablative is used with certain prepositions (194).

31. The time at which or within which a thing happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (219).

32. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** (243).

33. Words signifying *privation, removal, or separation* are followed by the ablative without a preposition, or with the prepositions **ā (ab)**, **dē**, **ē (ex)** (282).

34. The degree of difference is expressed by the ablative (321).

35. The ablative of a noun or pronoun, with a participle, a noun, or an adjective in agreement, is used to express *time, cause, concession, condition*, or other relations (455).

36. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true (481).

625. Adverbial Clauses.

37. The cause of an action may be expressed by a dependent clause introduced by **quod** (51).

38. The subjunctive is used with **ut** or **nē** in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action stated in the independent clause (344).

39. The subjunctive is used with **ut** or **ut nōn** in a dependent clause to express the result of the action stated in the independent clause (358).

40. Temporal clauses referring to past time, when introduced by **cum**, have their verb in the indicative if they fix the time of an action, but in the subjunctive if they describe the circumstances of an action (488).

41. Adverbial clauses introduced by **quā** and **ut** (= *as*) have their verbs in the indicative (497).

626. Adjective Clauses.

42. A relative clause modifies its antecedent as an adjective modifies its noun (247, *b*).

627. Substantive Clauses.

43. Verbs meaning *ask*, *command*, *persuade*, and *urge* may have for their object a clause of purpose with its verb in the subjunctive (356).

44. An indirect question, with its verb in the subjunctive, may be used as the subject or the object of another verb (372, *b*).

45. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the subject of another verb (393).

46. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the object of another verb (393).

47. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used with verbs meaning *say*, *think*, *know*, *perceive*, and the like, to express an indirect statement (401).

48. The indicative is used with **quod** in a substantive clause to state something which is regarded as a fact (496).

628. Participles, the Gerund, and the Gerundive.

49. A participle may be used as an adjective to modify a noun; or it may express the idea that might otherwise be expressed by a clause of *time*, *concession*, *cause*, or *condition*, or by a *relative clause* (443-445).

50. The gerund is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, with the constructions of regular nouns (461).

51. When a gerund with an object might be used, the gerundive is the more usual construction. The gerundive is a verbal adjective in agreement with a noun (471, 472).

52. The gerund or the gerundive with *ad* or *causā* may be used to express the purpose of an action (461, 472).

53. The gerundive is used with the forms of the verb *sum* to express necessary action (473).

629. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements.

54. The verbs of the subordinate clauses of an indirect statement are in the subjunctive (502).

FORMATION OF LATIN WORDS

During the first year of the study of Latin the pupil should learn the force of the prefixes and suffixes given below.

630. Prefixes.

ā- (*ab-*, *abs-*), away from, from
ad-, to, toward, against
con-, together; completely
dē-, down from; from
ex- (*ē-*), out from, out of; completely
in-, in, into, on, toward
in-, not; like English *un-*, *in-*
inter-, between
per-, through; thoroughly
prae-, in front of, in advance
prō-, forward, forth, for
re- (*red-*), back, again
sub- (*subs-*), under, from under, up

trāns- (*trā-*), across, through

ab + *dūcō* = *abdūcō*, lead away
ad + *dūcō* = *addūcō*, lead to
con + *dūcō* = *condūcō*, lead together
dē + *dūcō* = *dēdūcō*, lead down
ē + *dūcō* = *ēdūcō*, lead out
in + *dūcō* = *indūcō*, lead in, lead on
in + *amicus* = *inimicus*, unfriendly
inter + *cēdō* = *intercēdō*, go between
per + *dūcō* = *perdūcō*, lead through
prae + *mittō* = *praemittō*, send ahead
prō + *dūcō* = *prōdūcō*, lead forth
re + *dūcō* = *redūcō*, lead back
su(b)s + *teneō* = *sustineō*, hold up, sustain
trā + *dūcō* = *trādūcō*, lead across

631. Explain the formation of the following verbs, and give the meaning of each :

appropinquō	cognōscō	incolō	īnstruō	persuādeō
convocō	dēpōnō	sustineō	conlocō	addūcō
exspectō	reddō	reperiō	cōstituō	redūcō
dēmōnstrō	dēsum	respondeō	ēducō	suscipiō
compleō	coniciō	recipiō	trādō	accēdō
perturbō	permittō	impediō	commoveō	perficiō
praebeō	trānseō	incitō	praefficiō	ēgredior
prohibeō	prōgredior	expugnō	praestō	cōgō
dēsistō	exīstimō	pervenīō	praesum	cōnsuēscō
accipiō	cōnfirmō	praemittō	resistō	revertor
dēbeō	dēfendō	conveniō	excēdō	prōcēdō

632. Suffixes.

a. The suffixes **-tās**, **-tūs**, and **-ia**, when added to the stems of nouns, make other nouns denoting *condition* or *characteristic* :

cīvi (stem of **cīvis**, *citizen*) + **tās** = **cīvitās**, *citizenship* (the condition or characteristic of a citizen); *state, tribe*.

vir (weakened stem of **vir**, *man*) + **tūs** = **virtūs**, *manliness, valor* (the characteristic of a man).

b. The suffixes **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās**, and **-tūdō**, when added to the stems of adjectives, make abstract nouns denoting *quality* or *condition* :

alti (weakened stem of **altus**, *high*) + **tūdō** = **altitūdō**, *height* (the quality or condition of being high).

c. The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tus**, and **-ium**, when added to the stems of verbs, make verbal nouns denoting an *act* or the *result of an act* :

mūnī (stem of **mūniō**, *fortify*) + **tiō** = **mūnītiō**, *a fortifying, a fortification* (the act of fortifying, or the result of the act of fortifying).

633. Explain the formation of the following nouns :

victōria	nātiō	aedificium	celeritās	dēditō
praemium	cōnsilium	adventus	difficultās	ēruptiō
studium	legiō	exercitus	mūnītiō	altitūdō
imperium	multitūdō	equitātus	praesidium	facultās
virtūs	cīvitās	cōnspectus	subsidiū	lēgātō
conloquium	tempestās	memoria	occāsus	condiciō

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

634. Suggestions for a Notebook. In making a collection of the English words that are derived from the Latin words of the vocabularies, the pupil should keep the results of his work in a notebook. Such a book should contain, in addition to the list of derivatives, the definition of each derivative, and a brief sentence illustrating its use. A suggested form of arrangement for the notebook follows:

DERIVATIVES OF *Vocō*, *call*

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus	vocation, vocational, vocal, evoke, convoke, convocation, vocative, revoke, invoke, vociferous, invocation
--	--

vocation : a *calling*, occupation

vocational : pertaining to a vocation or *calling*

vocal : pertaining to the voice

evoke : *call* out

convoke : *call* together

convocation : a *calling* together, an assembly

vocative : case of *calling*, case of address

revoke : *call* back

invoke : *call* upon, ask for

vociferous : of large *calling* power, with a loud voice

invocation : a *calling* upon, a prayer

vocation : The choice of a vocation is not always easy

vocational : Vocational guidance is often necessary

vocal : He is receiving vocal instruction

evoke : His remarks evoked applause

convoke : He will convoke the council

convocation : Convocation day is at hand

vocative : The vocative is not common in Cæsar

revoke : Their punishment will be revoked

invoke : The ancients invoked many gods

vociferous : The audience became vociferous

invocation : The invocation was then made

635. The following verbs are especially worthy of study in the manner suggested above because of the large number of English words derived from them :

amō	dūcō	audiō	locō (conlocō)	nāvigō
videō	mittō	dīcō	cēdō	pōnō
habeō	capiō	vincō	parō	cognōscō
doceō	iaciō	faciō	pugnō	putō
moneō	sedeō (obsideō)	dō	teneō	moveō
terreō	timeō	agō	veniō	sūmō

The prefixes listed in 630, and also **ante**, *before*, **circum**, *around*, **ob**, *toward*, and **super**, *above*, usually are evident in the English derivatives of Latin words. But sometimes the prefix appears in a different spelling: thus,

ab- appears as **a-**, **abs-**, **as-** (*abstain*)

ad- appears as **ac-**, **ag-**, **al-**, **ap-**, **ar-**, **as-**, **at-** (*apparatus*)

con- appears as **com-**, **co-**, **col-**, **cor-** (*composition*)

in- appears as **im-**, **ir-**, **il-** (*impose*)

ob- appears as **oc-**, **of-**, **obs-**, **o-** (*occur*)

sub- appears as **suc-**, **suf-**, **sug-**, **sup-**, **sur-** (*suppose*)

APPENDIX II

DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

636.

FIRST DECLENSION

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
<i>Nom.</i>	hasta	-a	hastae	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	hastae	-ae	hastārum	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	hastae	-ae	hastīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	hastam	-am	hastās	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	hastā	-ā	hastīs	-īs

637.

SECOND DECLENSION

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
	MASC.		MASC.	
<i>Nom.</i>	hortus	-us	hortī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	hortī	-ī	hortōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hortō	-ō	hortīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	hortum	-um	hortōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	hortō	-ō	hortīs	-īs

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
	NEUT.		NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	dōnum	-um	dōna	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	dōnī	-ī	dōnōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dōnō	-ō	dōnīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dōnum	-um	dōna	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	dōnō	-ō	dōnīs	-īs

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	filius
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	filī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum	filium
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	filīō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	filī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filīōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filīōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filīīs

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	proelium
<i>Gen.</i>	proeli
<i>Dat.</i>	proeliō
<i>Acc.</i>	proelium
<i>Abl.</i>	proeliō

PLURAL

proelia
proeliōrum
proeliīs
proelia
proeliīs

638.

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

				CASE ENDINGS		
				M. AND F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	mīles	virtūs	caput	-s or —	—
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	mīlitī	virtūtī	capiti	-ī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em	—
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	mīlitum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	mīlitēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	mīlitibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

639.

I-STEMS

SINGULAR

				CASE ENDINGS	
				M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	cohors	mōns	mare	-s (-is, -ēs) —
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	cohortis	montis	maris	-is -is
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	cohortī	montī	marī	-ī -ī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	cohortem	montem	mare	-em (-im) —
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	cohorte	monte	marī	-e (-ī) -ī

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	cohortēs	montēs	maria	-ēs -ia
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	cohortium	montium	marium	-ium -ium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	cohortibus	montibus	maribus	-ibus -ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostīs (-ēs)	cohortīs (-ēs)	montīs (-ēs)	maria	-īs (-ēs) -ia
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	cohortibus	montibus	maribus	-ibus -ibus

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ignis	ignēs	turris	turrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignis	ignium	turris	turrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ignī	ignibus	turrī	turribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ignem	ignīs (-ēs)	turrim (-em)	turrīs (-ēs)
<i>Abl.</i>	ignī (-e)	ignibus	turrī (-e)	turribus

640.

FOURTH DECLENSION

SINGULAR

CASE ENDINGS

CASE ENDINGS

MASC.

NEUT.

<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	-us	cornū	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	exercituī (-ū)	-uī (-ū)	cornū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	-um	cornū	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	-ū	cornū	-ū

		PLURAL			
		CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
		MASC.		NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitūs	-ūs		cornua	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercituum	-uum		cornuum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercitibus	-ibus (-ubus)		cornibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitūs	-ūs		cornua	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitibus	-ibus (-ubus)		cornibus	-ibus

641.

FIFTH DECLENSION

				CASE ENDINGS	
		SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum	-ēi -ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēi -ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē -ēbus

642.

SPECIAL PARADIGMS

		SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	domus	iter	vis	
<i>Gen.</i>	dei	domūs (-ī)	itineris	vis	
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	domuī (-ō)	itinerī	vī	
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	domum	iter	vim	
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	domō (-ū)	itinere	vī	

		PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	dei (diī, dī)	domūs	itinerā	vīrēs	
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum (deum)	domuum (-ōrum)	itinerum	vīrium	
<i>Dat.</i>	deīs (diīs, dīs)	domibus	itineribus	vīribus	
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	domōs (-ūs)	itinerā	vīrīs (-ēs)	
<i>Abl.</i>	deīs (diīs, dīs)	domibus	itineribus	vīribus	

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	Iuppiter
<i>Gen.</i>	Iovis
<i>Dat.</i>	Iovī
<i>Acc.</i>	Iovem
<i>Abl.</i>	Iove

ADJECTIVES

643. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	noster	nostra	nostrum
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
<i>Dat.</i>	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
<i>Acc.</i>	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
<i>Abl.</i>	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

	PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
<i>Abl.</i>	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

644.

THIRD DECLENSION

	SINGULAR		SINGULAR			
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.		
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	brevis	breve		
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	brevis	brevis		
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	brevī	brevī		
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	brevem	breve		
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī (-e)	audācī (-e)	brevī	brevī		
	PLURAL		PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia	brevēs	brevia		
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	brevium	brevium		
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus		
<i>Acc.</i>	audācīs (-ēs)	audācia	brevīs (-ēs)	brevia		
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	brevibus	brevibus		
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācia
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācium	ācium	ācium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācibus	ācibus	ācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris (-ēs)	ācris (-ēs)	ācia
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācibus	ācibus	ācibus

645.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantis (-ēs)	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante (-ī)	amante (-ī)	amantibus	amantibus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
<i>Gen.</i>	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
<i>Dat.</i>	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
<i>Acc.</i>	euntem	iēns	euntīs (-ēs)	euntia
<i>Abl.</i>	eunte (-ī)	eunte (-ī)	euntibus	euntibus

646. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnūs	ūnūs	ūnūs	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trīs (trēs)	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	mille	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	mille	mīlia
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	mīlibus

647. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
brevis	brevior, brevius	brevissimus, -a, -um
audāx	audācior, audācius	audācissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer	ācrior, ācius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

648. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>lātior</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātiōrēs</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>lātiōrem</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātiōrēs (-is)</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>lātiōre (-ī)</i>	<i>lātiōre (-ī)</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	—	<i>plūris</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	—	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūris (-ēs)</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	—	<i>plūre</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>

649.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bonus, -a, -um</i>	<i>melior, melius</i>	<i>optimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>malus, -a, -um</i>	<i>peior, peius</i>	<i>pessimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>magnus, -a, -um</i>	<i>maior, maius</i>	<i>maximus, -a, -um</i>
<i>multus, -a, -um</i>	—, <i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>multi, -ae, -a</i>	<i>plūrēs, plūra</i>	<i>plūrimī, -ae, -a</i>
<i>parvus, -a, -um</i>	<i>minor, minus</i>	<i>minimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>facilis, -e</i>	<i>facilior, -ius</i>	<i>facillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>difficilis, -e</i>	<i>difficilior, -ius</i>	<i>difficillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>similis, -e</i>	<i>similior, -ius</i>	<i>simillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>dissimilis, -e</i>	<i>dissimilior, -ius</i>	<i>dissimillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>exterus, outward</i>	<i>exterior, outer,</i> <i>exterior</i>	<i>extrēmus</i> } <i>outermost,</i> <i>ēxtimus</i> } <i>last</i>
<i>īferus, below</i>	<i>īferior, lower</i>	<i>īfimus</i> } <i>lowest</i> <i>īmus</i> }
<i>posterus, following</i>	<i>posterior, later</i>	<i>postrēmus</i> } <i>last</i> <i>postumus</i> }
<i>superus, above</i>	<i>superior, higher</i>	<i>suprēmus</i> } <i>highest</i> <i>summus</i> }

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i>]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i>]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior, <i>former</i>	prīmus, <i>first</i>
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>

650. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (cārus)	cārius	cārissimē
miserē (miser)	miserius	miserrimē
ācritē (ācer)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	peius	pessimē
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

651. NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
I. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus (<i>or alter</i>)
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
15. quīdecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duodēvicēnsimus
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēnsimus
20. vīgintī	vīcēnsimus
21. { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i>	{ vīcēnsimus p̄rimus <i>or</i>
{ ūnus et vīgintī	{ ūnus et vīcēnsimus
22. { vīgintī duo <i>or</i>	{ vīcēnsimus secundus <i>or</i>
{ duo et vīgintī	{ alter et vīcēnsimus
28. duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēnsimus
29. ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēnsimus
30. trīgintā	trīcēnsimus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus
80. octōgintā	octōgēnsimus
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus
100. centum	centēnsimus
101. { centum ūnus <i>or</i>	{ centēnsimus p̄rimus <i>or</i>
{ centum et ūnus	{ centēnsimus et p̄rimus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus
300. trecentī	trecentēnsimus
400. quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus
500. quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus
600. sescentī	sescentēnsimus
700. septingentī	septingentēnsimus
800. octingentī	octingentēnsimus
900. nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus
1000. mille	millēnsimus
2000. duo mīlia	bis millēnsimus
100,000. centum mīlia	centiēns millēnsimus

PRONOUNS

652.

PERSONAL

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, <i>I</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>	tū, <i>you</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>			
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum (-trī)	tuī	vestrum (-trī)			
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs			
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs			
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs			
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	
<i>Nom.</i>	is, <i>he</i>	īī (eī), <i>they</i>	ea, <i>she</i>	eaē, <i>they</i>	id, <i>it</i>	ea, <i>they</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	eius,	eōrum,	eius,	eārum,	eius,	eōrum,	
	<i>his</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>her</i>	<i>their</i>	<i>its</i>	<i>their</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	īīs (eīs)	eī	īīs (eīs)	eī	īīs (eīs)	
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eōs	eam	eās	id	ea	
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	īīs (eīs)	eā	īīs (eīs)	eō	īīs (eīs)	

a. Hic (654) and *ille* (654) are also used as pronouns of the third person.

653.

REFLEXIVE

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	meī, <i>of myself</i>	nostrī, <i>of ourselves</i>	tuī, <i>of yourself</i>	vestrī, <i>of yourselves</i>	suī, <i>of himself, herself, itself</i>	suī, <i>of themselves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

654.

DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī (eī)	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adem	idem	{ iīdem eīdem	eaedem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem eīsdem
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

655.

RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cujus	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

656.

INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

657.

INDEFINITE

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquid)
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquid)
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
	SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

	PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

	SINGULAR				
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque)	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quamque	quidque (quodque)	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōquam	quōquam

Plural rare *Plural missing*

REGULAR VERBS

658. FIRST CONJUGATION — *Ā*-Verbs

amō, love

PRINCIPAL PARTS: a'mō, amā're, amā'vi, amā'tus

Pres. Stem amā- *Perf. Stem* amāv- *Part. Stem* amāt-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

I love, am loving, do love, etc.

a'mō	amā'mus
a'mās	amā'tis
a'mat	a'mant

PRESENT

PASSIVE VOICE

I am loved, etc.

a'mor	amā'mur
amā'ris	amā'mini
amā'tur	aman'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.

amā'bam	amābā'mus
amā'bās	amābā'tis
amā'bat	amā'bant

I was loved, etc.

amā'bar	amābā'mur
amābā'ris	amābā'mini
amābā'tur	amāban'tur

FUTURE

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amā'bō	amā'bimus	amā'bor	amā'bimur
amā'bis	amā'bitis	amā'beris	amā'bitis
amā'bit	amā'bunt	amā'bitur	amā'buntur

PERFECT

*I have loved, loved, did love, etc.**I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amā'vī	amā'vimus	amā'tus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	amā'ti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
amā'vis'ti	amā'vis'tis				
amā'vit	amā've'runt				

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amā'veram	amā'verā'mus	amā'tus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$	amā'ti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
amā'verās	amā'verā'tis				
amā'verat	amā'verant				

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amā'verō	amā'verīmus	amā'tus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	amā'ti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
amā'veris	amā'verītis				
amā'verit	amā'verint				

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

a'mem	amē'mus	a'mer	amē'mur
a'mēs	amē'tis	amē'ris	amē'mini
a'met	a'ment	amē'tur	amen'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

amā'rem	amā'rē'mus	amā'rer	amā'rē'mur
amā'rēs	amā'rē'tis	amā'rē'ris	amā'rē'mini
amā'ret	amā'rent	amā'rē'tur	amā'ren'tur

PERFECT

amā'verim	amā'verī'mus	amā'tus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sis} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	amā'ti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
amā'veris	amā'verītis				
amā'verit	amā'verint				

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

amāvis'sem	amāvissē'mus	amā'tus	{ essem essēs esset }	amā'ti	{ essēmus essētis essent }
amāvis'sēs	amāvissē'tis				
amāvis'set	amāvis'sent				

IMPERATIVE

PRÉSENT

a'mā, *love thou*
 amā'te, *love ye*

amā're, *be thou loved*
 amā'mini, *be ye loved*

FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love*
 amātō, *he shall love*
 amātōte, *you shall love*
 amantō, *they shall love*

amātor, *thou shalt be loved*
 amātor, *he shall be loved*

 amantor, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE

PRES. amā're, <i>to love</i>	amā'ri, <i>to be loved</i>
PERF. amāvis'se, <i>to have loved</i>	amā'tus esse, <i>to have been loved</i>
FUT. amātū'rus esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	[amā'tum iri, <i>to be about to be loved</i> ']

PARTICIPLES

PRES. a'māns, -antis, <i>loving</i>	PRES. _____
FUT. amātū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to love</i>	GER. ¹ aman'dus, -a, -um, <i>to be loved</i>
PERF. _____	PERF. amā'tus, -a, -um, <i>having been loved; loved</i>

GERUND

Nom.	_____
Gen.	aman'di, <i>of loving</i>
Dat.	aman'dō, <i>for loving</i>
Acc.	aman'dum, <i>loving</i>
Abl.	aman'dō, <i>by loving</i>

SUPINE

Acc.	[amātum, <i>to love</i>]
Abl.	[amātū, <i>to love, in the loving</i>]

¹ Gerundive, sometimes called *future passive participle*.

659.

SECOND CONJUGATION — \bar{E} -Verbs

moneō, advise

PRINCIPAL PARTS: mo'neō, monē're, mo'nui, mo'nitus

Pres. Stem monē- Perf. Stem monu- Part. Stem monit-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT

*I advise, etc.**I am advised, etc.*

mo'neō	monē'mus	mo'neor	monē'mur
mo'nēs	monē'tis	monē'ris	monē'mini
mo'net	mo'nent	monē'tur	monen'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monē'bam	monēbā'mus	monē'bar	monēbā'mur
monē'bās	monēbā'tis	monēbā'ris	monēbā'mini
monē'bat	monē'bant	monēbā'tur	monēban'tur

FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monē'bō	monē'bimus	monē'bor	monē'bimur
monē'bis	monē'bitis	monē'beris	monēbi'mini
monē'bit	monē'bunt	monē'bitur	monēbun'tur

PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.**I have been (was) advised, etc.*

mo'nui	monu'imus	mo'nitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	mo'niti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
monuis'ti	monuis'tis				
mo'nuit	monuērunt				

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monu'eram	monuerā'mus	mo'nitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$	mo'niti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
monu'erās	monuerā'tis				
monu'erat	monu'erant				

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monu'erō	monue'rimus	mo'nitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	mo'niti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
monu'eris	monue'ritis				
monu'erit	monu'erint				

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

mo'neam	moneā'mus	mo'near	moneā'mur
mo'neās	moneā'tis	moneā'ris	moneā'mini
mo'neat	mo'neant	moneā'tur	monean'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

monē'rem	monērē'mus	monē'rer	monērē'mur
monē'rēs	monērē'tis	monērē'ris	monērē'mini
monē'ret	monē'rent	monērē'tur	monē'ren'tur

PERFECT

monu'erim	monueri'mus	mo'nitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	mo'niti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
monu'eris	monueri'tis				
monu'erit	monu'erint				

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

monuis'sem	monuissē'mus	mo'nitus	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$	mo'niti	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$
monuis'sēs	monuissē'tis				
monuis'set	monuis'sent				

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

mo'nē, advise thou	monē're, be thou advised
monē'te, advise ye	monē'mini, be ye advised

FUTURE

monētō, thou shalt advise	monētor, thou shalt be advised
monētō, he shall advise	monētor, he shall be advised
monētōte, you shall advise	_____
monentō, they shall advise	monentor, they shall be advised

INFINITIVE

PRES. monē're, <i>to advise</i>	monē'ri, <i>to be advised</i>
PERF. monuis'se, <i>to have advised</i>	mo'nitus esse, <i>to have been advised</i>
FUT. monitū'rus esse, <i>to be about to advise</i>	[mo'nitum iri, <i>to be about to be advised</i>]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. mo'nēns, -entis, <i>advising</i>	PRES. —————
FUT. monitū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise</i>	GER. monen'dus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised</i>
PERF. —————	PERF. mo'nitus, -a, -um, <i>having been advised, advised</i>

GERUND

Nom. —————
Gen. monen'dī, <i>of advising</i>
Dat. monen'dō, <i>for advising</i>
Acc. monen'dum, <i>advising</i>
Abl. monen'dō, <i>by advising</i>

SUPINE

Acc. [monitum, <i>to advise</i>]
Abl. [monitū, <i>to advise, in the advising</i>]

660. THIRD CONJUGATION — Ē-Verbs

regō, rule

PRINCIPAL PARTS: re'gō, re'gere, rē'xī, rēc'tus

Pres. Stem rege- Perf. Stem rēx- Part. Stem rēc-

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE VOICE

I rule, etc.

PRESENT

I am ruled, etc.

re'gō	re'gimus
re'gis	re'gitis
re'git	re'gunt

re'gor	re'gimur
re'geris	regi'mini
re'gitur	regun'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

I was ruling, etc.

regē'bam	regēbā'mus
regē'bās	regēbā'tis
regē'bat	regēbant

I was ruled, etc.

regē'bar	regēbā'mur
regēbā'ris	regēbā'minī
regēbā'tur	regēbantur

FUTURE

I shall rule, etc.

re'gam	regē'mus
re'gēs	regē'tis
re'get	re'gent

I shall be ruled, etc.

re'gar	regē'mur
regē'ris	regē'minī
regē'tur	regentur

PERFECT

I have ruled, etc.

rē'xī	rē'ximus
rēxis'tī	rēxis'tis
rē'xit	rēxērunt

*I have been ruled, etc.**

rēc'tus	{ sum	rēc'ti	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

I had ruled, etc.

rē'xeram	rēxerā'mus
rē'xerās	rēxerā'tis
rē'xerat	rē'xerant

I had been ruled, etc.

rēc'tus	{ eram	rēc'ti	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have ruled, etc.

rē'xerō	rēxe'rimus
rē'xeris	rēxe'ritis
rē'xerit	rē'xerint

I shall have been ruled, etc.

rēc'tus	{ erō	rēc'ti	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

re'gam	regā'mus	re'gar	regā'mur
re'gās	regā'tis	regā'ris	regā'minī
re'gat	re'gant	regā'tur	regantur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

re'gerem	regerē'mus	re'gerer	regerē'mur
re'gerēs	regerē'tis	regerē'ris	regerē'minī
re'geret	re'gerent	regerē'tur	regerentur

		PERFECT			
rē'xerim	rēxerī'mus	rēc'tus	{ sim sis sit	rēc'ti	{ sīmus sītis sint
rē'xeris	rēxerī'tis				
rē'xerit	rē'xerit				

		PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)			
rēxis'sem	rēxissē'mus	rēc'tus	{ essem essēs eęset	rēc'ti	{ essēmus essētis essent
rēxis'sēs	rēxissē'tis				
rēxis'set	rēxis'sent				

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

rē'ge, <i>rule thou</i>	rē'gere, <i>be thou ruled</i>
rē'gite, <i>rule ye</i>	regi'minī, <i>be ye ruled</i>

FUTURE

regitō, <i>thou shalt rule</i>	regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled</i>
regitō, <i>he shall rule</i>	regitor, <i>he shall be ruled</i>
regitōte, <i>ye shall rule</i>	_____
reguntō, <i>they shall rule</i>	reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. rē'gere, <i>to rule</i>	rē'gī, <i>to be ruled</i>
PERF. rēxis'se, <i>to have ruled</i>	rēc'tus esse, <i>to have been ruled</i>
FUT. rēc'tū'rus esse, <i>to be about to rule</i>	[rēc'tum irī, <i>to be about to be ruled</i>]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. rē'gēns, -entis, <i>ruling</i>	PRES. _____
FUT. rēc'tū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule</i>	GER. regen'dus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled</i>
PERF. _____	PERF. rēc'tus, -a, -um, <i>having been ruled, ruled</i>

GERUND

Nom.	_____
Gen.	regen'dī, <i>of ruling</i>
Dat.	regen'dō, <i>for ruling</i>
Acc.	regen'dum, <i>ruling</i>
Abl.	regen'dō, <i>by ruling</i>

SUPINE

Acc.	[rēc'tum, <i>to rule</i>]
Abl.	[rēc'tū, <i>to rule, in the ruling</i>]

661. THIRD CONJUGATION — Verbs in -iō

capiō, take

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ca'piō, ca'pere, cē'pī, cap'tus

Pres. Stem cape- Perf. Stem cēp- Part. Stem capt-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

I take, etc.

ca'piō	ca'pimus
ca'pis	ca'pitis
ca'pit	ca'piunt

PRESENT

PASSIVE VOICE

I am taken, etc.

ca'pior	ca'pimur
ca'peris	capimini
ca'pitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

I was taking, etc.

capiēbam	capiēbāmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis
capiēbat	capiēbant

I was taken, etc.

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris	capiēbāmini
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

FUTURE

I shall take, etc.

ca'piam	capiēmus
ca'piēs	capiētis
ca'piet	ca'pient

I shall be taken, etc.

ca'piar	capiēmur
capiēris	capiēmini
capiētur	capientur

PERFECT

cē'pī, cēpis'tī, cē'pit, etc.

cap'tus sum, es, est, etc.

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

cē'peram, cē'perās, cē'perat, etc.

cap'tus eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

cē'perō, cē'peris, cē'perit, etc.

cap'tus erō, eris, erit, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

ca'piam, ca'piās, ca'piat, etc.

ca'piar, -iā'ris, -iā'tur, etc.

IMPERFECT (PAST)

ca'perem, ca'perēs, ca'peret, etc.

ca'perer, -erē'ris, -erē'tur, etc.

PERFECT

cē'perim, cē'peris, cē'perit, etc. cap'tus sim, sis, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

cēpis'sem, cēpis'sēs, cēpis'set, etc. cap'tus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRES. ca'pe, take thou ca'pere, be thou taken
 ca'pite, take ye capi'mini, be ye taken
 FUT. capitō, thou shalt take, etc. capitor, thou shalt be taken, etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES. ca'pere, to take ca'pi, to be taken
 PERF. cēpis'se, to have taken cap'tus esse, to have been taken
 FUT. captū'rus esse, to be about to take [cap'tum iri, to be about to be taken]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. ca'piēns, -ientis, taking PRES. _____
 FUT. captū'rus, -a, -um, about to take GER. capien'dus, -a, -um, to be taken
 PERF. _____ PERF. cap'tus, -a, -um, having been taken, taken

GERUND

Gen. capien'di, of taking, etc.

SUPINE

Acc. [captum, to take]
 Abl. [captū, to take, in the taking]

662. FOURTH CONJUGATION — Ī-Verbs

audiō, hear

PRINCIPAL PARTS: au'diō, audi're, audi'vi, audi'tus

Pres. Stem audi- Perf. Stem audiv- Part. Stem audit-

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE

I hear, etc.

au'diō audi'mus
 au'dis audi'tis
 au'dit au'diunt

PASSIVE VOICE

I am heard, etc.

au'dior audi'mur
 audi'ris audi'mini
 audi'tur audiuntur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

I was hearing, etc.

audiē'bam	audiēbā'mus
audiē'bās	audiēbā'tis
audiē'bat	audiē'bant

I was heard, etc.

audiē'bar	audiēbā'mur
audiēbā'ris	audiēbā'mini
audiēbā'tur	audiēban'tur

I shall hear, etc.

au'diam	audiē'mus
au'diēs	audiē'tis
au'diet	au'dient

FUTURE

I shall be heard, etc.

au'diar	audiē'mur
audiē'ris	audiē'mini
audiē'tur	audien'tur

I have heard, etc.

audī'vī	audī'vimus
audīvis'tī	audīvis'tis
audī'vit	audīvē'runt

PERFECT

I have been heard, etc.

audī'tus	{ sum	audī'ti	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

I had heard, etc.

audī'veram	audīverā'mus
audī'verās	audīverā'tis
audī'verat	audī'verant

I had been heard, etc.

audī'tus	{ eram	audī'ti	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc.

audī'verō	audīvē'rimus
audī'veris	audīvē'ritis
audī'verit	audī'verint

I shall have been heard, etc.

audī'tus	{ erō	audī'ti	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

au'diam	audiā'mus	au'diar	audiā'mur
au'diās	audiā'tis	audiā'ris	audiā'mini
au'diat	au'diant	audiā'tur	audian'tur

IMPERFECT (PAST)

audī'rem	audīrē'mus	audī'rer	audīrē'mur
audī'rēs	audīrē'tis	audīrē'ris	audīrē'mini
audī'ret	audī'rent	audīrē'tur	audīren'tur

		PERFECT			
audi'verim	audiveri'mus	audi'tus	{ sim sis sit	audi'ti	{ simus sitis sint
audi'veris	audiveri'tis				
audi'verit	audiverit				
		PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)			
audivis'sem	audivissē'mus	audi'tus	{ essem essēs esset	audi'ti	{ essēmus essētis essent
audivis'sēs	audivissē'tis				
audivis'set	audivis'sent				

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

au'dī, <i>hear thou</i>	audi're, <i>be thou heard</i>
audi'te, <i>hear ye</i>	audi'mini, <i>be ye heard</i>

FUTURE

auditō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>	auditor, <i>thou shalt be heard</i>
auditō, <i>he shall hear</i>	auditor, <i>he shall be heard</i>
auditōte, <i>ye shall hear</i>	_____
audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>	audiuntor, <i>they shall be heard</i>

INFINITIVE

PRES. audi're, <i>to hear</i>	audi'ri, <i>to be heard</i>
PERF. audivis'se, <i>to have heard</i>	audi'tus esse, <i>to have been heard</i>
FUT. auditū'rus esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	[audi'tum iri, <i>to be about to be heard</i>]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. au'diēns, -ientis, <i>hearing</i>	PRES. _____
FUT. auditū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to hear</i>	GER. audien'dus, -a, -um, <i>to be heard</i>
PERF. _____	PERF. audi'tus, -a, -um, <i>having been heard, heard</i>

GERUND

Nom.	_____
Gen.	audien'dī, <i>of hearing</i>
Dat.	audien'dō, <i>for hearing</i>
Acc.	audien'dum, <i>hearing</i>
Abl.	audien'dō, <i>by hearing</i>

SUPINE

Acc.	[auditum, <i>to hear</i>]
Abl.	[auditū, <i>to hear, in the hearing</i>]

IRREGULAR VERBS

663.

sum, *be*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus***Pres. Stem es- Perf. Stem fu- Part. Stem fut-*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

PLURAL

sum, I am
es, you are
est, he (she, it) is

su'mus, we are
es'tis, you are
sunt, they are

IMPERFECT (PAST)

e'ram, I was
e'rās, you were
e'rat, he was

e'rā'mus, we were
e'rā'tis, you were
e'rant, they were

FUTURE

e'rō, I shall be
e'ris, you will be
e'rit, he will be

e'rimus, we shall be
e'ritis, you will be
e'runt, they will be

PERFECT

fuī, I have been, was
fuis'tī, you have been, were
fu'it, he has been, was

fu'imus, we have been, were
fuis'tis, you have been, were
fuērunt, they have been, were

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

fu'eram, I had been
fu'erās, you had been
fu'erat, he had been

fuerā'mus, we had been
fuerā'tis, you had been
fu'erant, they had been

FUTURE PERFECT

fu'erō, I shall have been
fu'eris, you will have been
fu'erit, he will have been

fue'rimus, we shall have been
fue'ritis, you will have been
fu'erint, they will have been

PRESENT		SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERFECT (PAST)	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
sim	sī'mus	es'sem	essē'mus		
sis	sī'tis	es'sēs	essē'tis		
sit	sint	es'set	es'sent		
PERFECT		PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)			
fu'erim	fuerī'mus	fuis'sem	fuisse'mus		
fu'eris	fuerī'tis	fuis'sēs	fuisse'tis		
fu'erit	fu'erint	fuis'set	fuis'sent		
PRESENT		IMPERATIVE		FUTURE	
es, <i>be thou</i>				estō, <i>thou shalt be</i>	
es'te, <i>be ye</i>				estō, <i>he shall be</i>	
				estōte, <i>ye shall be</i>	
				suntō, <i>they shall be</i>	
INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE			
PRES. es'se, <i>to be</i>					
PERF. fuis'se, <i>to have been</i>					
FUT. futū'rus esse, or fo're, <i>to be about to be</i>		futū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to be</i>			

664. *possum, be able, can*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī, —**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
PRES. possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
potes	potestis	possis	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPF. poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. poterō	poterimus	—————	—————
PERF. potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerīmus
PLUP. potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P. potuerō	potuerimus	—————	—————
INFINITIVE			
PRES. posse		PERF. potuisse	

665.

volō, nōlō, mālō

PRINCIPAL PARTS: { volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*
 mālō, mālle, mālūī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

PRES. volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
	PLURAL	
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT. volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF. voluī	nōluī	mālūī
PLUP. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

PRES. velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
	PLURAL	
velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF. vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES. —	nōlī	—
	nōlite	
FUT. —	nōlitō, etc.	—

INFINITIVE		
PRES. velle	nōlle	mälle
PERF. voluisse	nōluisse	mäluisse

PARTICIPLE		
PRES. volēns	nōlēns	—

666.

*ferō, bear, carry, endure*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus**Pres. Stem fer- Perf. Stem tul- Part. Stem lāt-*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES. ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	feruntur
IMPF. ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT. feram		ferar	
PERF. tuli		lātus sum	
PLUP. tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P. tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES. feram	ferar
IMPF. ferrem	ferrer
PERF. tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP. tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES. fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT. fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES. ferre	ferri
PERF. tulisse	lātus esse
FUT. lāturus esse	[lātum iri]

PARTICIPLES

PRES. ferēns
 FUT. lātūrus
 PERF. —

PRES. —
 GER. ferendus
 PERF. lātus

GERUND

Gen. ferendī
Dat. ferendō
Acc. ferendum
Abl. ferendō

SUPINE

[lātum]
 [lātū]

667.

eō, *go*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, iī (īvī), itūrus

Pres. stem ī-*Perf. stem* ī- (īv-)*Part. stem* it-

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
PRES.	eō īmus īs ītis it eunt	eam	ī īte
IMPF.	ībam	īrem	{ ītō ītōte īto euntō
FUT.	ībō	—	
PERF.	iī	ierim	
PLUF.	ieram	issem	
F. P.	ierō	—	

INFINITIVE

PRES. īre
 PERF. īsse
 FUT. itūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

iēns, euntis (645)
 itum
 itūrus

GERUND

Gen. eundī
Dat. eundō
Acc. eundum
Abl. eundō

SUPINE

[itum]
 [itū]

668.

*fiō, be made, become, happen*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fiō, fieri, factus sum*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	<i>fiō</i>	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fī</i>	<i>fite</i>
	<i>fis</i>			
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>		
IMPF.	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fierem</i>		
FUT.	<i>fiam</i>	—		
PERF.	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>		
PLUP.	<i>factus eram</i>	<i>factus essem</i>		
F. P.	<i>factus erō</i>	—		

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	<i>fieri</i>	GER. <i>faciendus</i>
PERF.	<i>factus esse</i>	PERF. <i>factus</i>
FUT.	<i>[factum iri]</i>	

669.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS:	{	I. <i>hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, urge</i>
		II. <i>vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear</i>
		III. <i>sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow</i>
		IV. <i>potior, potiri, potitus sum, get possession of</i>

INDICATIVE

PRES.	<i>hortor</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>sequor</i>	<i>potior</i>
	<i>hortāris</i>	<i>verēris</i>	<i>sequeris</i>	<i>potiris</i>
	<i>hortātur</i>	<i>verētur</i>	<i>sequitur</i>	<i>potitur</i>
	<i>hortāmur</i>	<i>verēmur</i>	<i>sequimur</i>	<i>potimur</i>
	<i>hortāmini</i>	<i>verēmini</i>	<i>sequimini</i>	<i>potimini</i>
	<i>hortantur</i>	<i>verentur</i>	<i>sequuntur</i>	<i>potiuntur</i>
IMPF.	<i>hortābar</i>	<i>verēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>potiēbar</i>
FUT.	<i>hortābor</i>	<i>verēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>potiar</i>
PERF.	<i>hortātus sum</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>	<i>potitus sum</i>
PLUP.	<i>hortātus eram</i>	<i>veritus eram</i>	<i>secūtus eram</i>	<i>potitus eram</i>
F. P.	<i>hortātus erō</i>	<i>veritus erō</i>	<i>secūtus erō</i>	<i>potitus erō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.
----------------	---------------	----------------	----------------

SUPINE

[hortātum, -tū]	[veritum, -tū]	[secūtum, -tū]	[potitum, -tū]
-----------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

670. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i>
IMPF.	amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
FUT.	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>
PERF.	amandus fui, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
PLUP.	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved</i>
F. P.	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amandus sim
IMPF.	amandus essem
PERF.	amandus fuerim
PLUP.	amandus fuisset

INFINITIVE

PRES. *amandus esse, to have to be loved*PERF. *amandus fuisse, to have had to be loved*

So in the other conjugations :

monendus sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*regendus sum, *I am to be, must be, ruled*capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard*

etc.

671. SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB

The synopsis of a verb is a summary of the conjugation of that verb made by stating in succession the forms for some particular person and number.

The following is a synopsis of *amō* in the third person singular, arranged by stems. The infinitives, participles, etc. are added to complete each system.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**Pres. Stem amā- Perf. Stem amāv- Part. Stem amāt-*

PRESENT SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PRESENT STEM

ACTIVE	INDICATIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. <i>ama-t</i>		<i>amā-tur</i>
IMPF. <i>amā-bat</i>		<i>amā-bātur</i>
FUT. <i>amā-bit</i>		<i>amā-bitur</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES. <i>ame-t</i>		<i>amē-tur</i>
IMPF. <i>amā-ret</i>		<i>amā-rētur</i>
	INFINITIVE	
PRES. <i>amā-re</i>		<i>amā-rī</i>
	PARTICIPLE	
PRES. <i>amā-ns</i>		GER. <i>ama-ndus</i>
	GERUND	
	<i>ama-ndī</i>	

FIRST YEAR LATIN

PERFECT SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PERFECT STEM

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PERF. amāv-it	amāv-erit
PLUP. amāv-erat	amāv-isset
F. P. amāv-erit	_____
INFINITIVE	
PERF. amāv-isse	

PARTICIPIAL SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PARTICIPIAL STEM

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PERF. amāt-us est	amāt-us sit
PLUP. amāt-us erat	amāt-us esset
F. P. amāt-us erit	_____
INFINITIVE	
PERF. _____	amāt-us esse
FUT. amāt-ūrus esse	[amāt-um iri]
PARTICIPLE	
FUT. amāt-ūrus	PERF. amāt-us
SUPINE	
[amāt-um]	
[amāt-ū]	

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets (except in the case of compounds with one or both parts changed in form) are sometimes primitives, sometimes cognates.

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not intended to be used as such. They are inserted to show literal meanings.

Abbreviations are generally self-explanatory. Cf. (*confer*) = compare; irr. = irregular.

Words printed in SMALL CAPITALS are at once derivatives and definitions: as, ABDUCT, under *abdūcō*. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in *italic* in parentheses: as, (*Accident*), under *accidō*.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupils should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ā (**ab**), *prep. with abl.*, from, by, off

ab-dō, *abdere*, **abdidī**, **abditus** [*-dō*, put], hide, conceal

ab-dūcō, *abdūcere*, **abdūxī**, **abductus**, lead away, take off; ABDUCT

ab-eō, *abire*, **abii**, **abitūrus**, go from, go off, go away

ab-iciō, *abicere*, **abiēcī**, **abiectus** [*-iaciō*], throw off, throw down, cast away. (*Abject*)

ab-ripiō, *abripere*, **abripui**, **abreptus** [*-rapiō*], snatch away, carry off

abs-cidō, *abscidere*, **abscidī**, **abscisus** [*ab(s)-caedō*], cut off

abs-trahō, *abstrahere*, **abstrāxī**, **abstrāctus** [*ab(s)-*], drag away, draw off. (*Abstract*)

ab-sum, *abesse*, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, be away, be ABSENT, be distant, be off; *with ā and abl.*

ac, *conj.*, see *atque*

ac-cēdō, *accēdere*, **accessī**, **accessūrus** [*ad-*], go or come near, approach. (*Accession.*) Cf. *adeō and appropinquō*

ac-cendō, *accendere*, **accendī**, **accēnsus** [*ad-candeō*, shine], kindle, set fire to, light; inflame

ac-cidō, *accidere*, **accidī**, — [*ad-cadō*, fall], fall upon, fall out, happen. (*Accident.*) Cf. *ēveniō and fiō*

ac-cipiō, *accipere*, **accēpī**, **acceptus** [*ad-capiō*], (take to), receive, ACCEPT

- ac-currō, *currere*, *accurrī* (*accurrī*), *accursūrus* [*ad-*], run up, run toward
- ācer, *ācris*, *ācre*, *adj.*, sharp, keen; active, EAGER. (*Acrid*)
- acervus, -ī, *m.*, pile, heap, mass
- aciēs, -ēī, *f.* [*ācer*], edge; line, line of battle, battle array
- Ācrisius, Ācrisī, *m.*, ACRISIUS, grandfather of Perseus
- ācritēr, *adv.* [*ācer*], sharply, EAGERLY, spiritedly, fiercely
- ad, *prep.* with *acc.*, to, toward, near, up to; with *gerund* or *gerundive*, to, for; *ad hunc modum*, after this manner; *as adv.*, about
- ad-aequō, *adaequāre*, *adaequāvī*, *adaequātus*, become EQUAL to, EQUAL. (*Adequate*)
- adclīvis, -e, *adj.*, sloping toward, rising, ascending. (*Acclivity*)
- ad-dūcō, *addūcere*, *addūxī*, *adductus*, lead to, influence. (*Adduce*)
- ad-eō, *adire*, *adii*, *aditus*, go to, approach, visit. *Cf.* *accēdō* and *appropinquō*
- ad-ferō, *adferre*, *attulī*, *adlātus*, bear to, bring, render
- ad-ficiō, *adficere*, *adfēcī*, *adfectus* [*-faciō*], AFFECT, influence; afflict, oppress
- ad-gredior, *adgredī*, *adgressus sum* [*-gradior*, go], approach, attack. (*Aggressive*)
- ad-hibeō, *adhibēre*, *adhibuī*, *adhibitus* [*-habeō*], apply, employ, use
- ad-hūc, *adv.*, hitherto, as yet, still
- ad-iciō, *adicere*, *adiēcī*, *adiectus* [*-iaciō*], add. (*Adjective*)
- aditus, -ūs, *m.* [*adeō*], approach, way of access. *Cf.* *adventus*
- ad-iungō, *adiungere*, *adiūnxī*, *adiunctus*, join to. (*Adjunct*)
- ad-ligō, *adligāre*, *adligāvī*, *adligātus*, bind to, bind
- admirātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*admīror*], ADMIRATION, astonishment, wonder
- ad-mīror, *admīrārī*, *admīrātus sum* [*admīrātiō*], wonder at, ADMIRE
- ad-mittō, *admittere*, *admisī*, *admissus*, permit, allow; give rein to. (*Admit*)
- admōtus, *see* *admoveō*
- ad-moveō, *admovēre*, *admōvī*, *admōtus*, (move to), apply, employ
- ad-nectō, *adnectere*, *adnexuī* (*adnexī*), *adnexus*, tie to, fasten to, attach. (*Annex*)
- ad-olēscō, *adolēscere*, *adolēvī*, *adultus*, grow up. (*Adult*)
- ad-ōrō, *adōrāre*, *adōrāvī*, *adōrātus*, pray to, worship, ADORE
- ad-spiciō, *adspicere*, *adspexī*, *adspectus* [*-speciō*, look], look at, look upon, behold. (*Aspect*)
- ad-stō, *adstāre*, *adstitī*, —, stand near
- ad-sum, *adesse*, *adfuī*, *adfutūrus*, be present, be here; with *dat.*
- Aduatucī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the ADUATUCI, a Gallic tribe
- adolēscēns, -entis, *m. and f.* [*adolēscō*], youth, young person. (*Adolescence*.) *Cf.* *iuvenis*
- adultus, *see* *adolēscō*
- advectus, *see* *advehō*
- ad-vehō, *advehere*, *advexi*, *advectus*, carry to, bring on, bring

- adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival.
(*Advent.*) *Cf.* **aditus**
- adversus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, turned toward, opposite, in front, ADVERSE
- adversus**, *prep. with acc.*, against
- aedēs** (**aedis**), -is, *f.*, building, temple;
plur., house
- aedificium**, **aedifici**, *n.* [**aedificō**], building. (*Edifice*)
- aedificō**, **aedificāre**, **aedificāvī**, **aedificātus** [**aedēs-faciō**], build. (*Edify*)
- aeger**, **aegra**, **aegrum**, *adj.*, sick, weak, feeble
- aequus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, EQUAL
- āer**, **āeris**, *m.* (*acc.* **āera**), AIR
- aes**, **aeris**, *n.*, copper, bronze
- aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer
- aetās**, -ātis, *f.*, life, AGE
- Aethiopēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, the ETHIOPAINS
- Aetna**, -ae, *f.*, ÆTNA, a mountain in Sicily
- Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*, AFRICA
- Āfricānus**, -ī, *m.*, AFRICANUS
- ager**, **agrī**, *m.*, field, territory, land
- agger**, -eris, *m.*, mound, rampart
- Āgis**, -idis, *m.*, AGIS, a king of Sparta
- agmen**, -inis, *n.* [**agō**], (the thing led), army, host, column
- agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus**, drive, lead, bring up; ACT, do; treat; celebrate; pass (life)
- agricola**, -ae, *m.* [**ager-colō**], farmer, husbandman
- āla**, -ae, *f.*, wing
- Alba**, -ae, *f.*, ALBA, an ancient city of Italy
- Albānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ALBAN; *as noun*, an ALBAN, inhabitant of Alba
- albus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, white
- Alcmēna**, -ae, *f.*, ALCMENA, the mother of Hercules
- aliās**, *adv.* [**alius**], elsewhere, at another time
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius**], another's; unfavorable. (*Alien*)
- ali-quandō**, *adv.* [**alius**], at some time; formerly, once. *Cf.* **ōlim**
- aliquis** (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), *indef. pron. and adj.*, some one, some, any
- alius**, -a, -ud, *adj. and pron.*, another, other, else; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another. (*Alias.*) *Cf.* **cēteri**
- Allobrogēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, the ALLOBROGES, a tribe of Gaul
- Alpēs**, -ium, *f. plur.*, the ALPS
- altāria**, -ium, *n. plur.*, ALTAR
- alter**, -era, -erum, *adj. and pron.*, the one, the other (of two); second; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other. (*Alternative*)
- altitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**altus**], height
- altum**, -ī, *n.* [**altus**], the sea
- altus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep
- alveus**, -ī, *m.*, hollow vessel, tub, trough
- Ambarri**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the AMBARRI, a tribe of Gaul, near the Hædui
- ambulō**, **ambulāre**, **ambulāvī**, **ambulātūrus**, walk, take a walk. (*Perambulate*)
- āmentia**, -ae, *f.*, want of reason, madness

- amicitia, -ae, *f.* [*amicus*], friendship
- amicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*amō*], friendly; *as noun*, friend. (*Amiable*)
- ā-mittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus, send away; lose
- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus [*amor*], love, like, be fond of
- amor, -ōris, *f.* [*amō*], love
- ā-moveō, āmovēre, āmovī, āmōtus, move away, put aside
- ampliō, ampliāre, ampliāvī, ampliātus [*amplus*], increase, extend. (*Ampliative*)
- amplus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ampliō*], large, wide; honorable. (*Ample, Amplify*)
- Amūlius, Amūli, *m.*, AMULIUS, father of Rhea Silvia
- an, *conj.*, or
- ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant
- ancora, -ae, *f.*, ANCHOR
- Ancus Mārcius, Ancī Mārcī, *m.*, ANCUS MARCIUS, one of the seven kings of Rome
- Andromeda, -ae, *f.*, ANDROMEDA
- anguis, -is, *m. and f.*, serpent, snake
- angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow. (*Anguish*)
- anima, -ae, *f.* [*animus*], breath, soul, life. (*Animate*)
- anim-advertō, animadvertere, anim-advertī, animadversus [*animus-*], turn the mind to, notice
- animus, -ī, *m.* [*anima*], mind, soul, spirit, disposition. *Cf.* mēns
- annōna, -ae, *f.* [*annus*], (the year's supply), provisions; price (of provisions), market; scarcity
- annus, -ī, *m.*, year. (*Annual*)
- ante, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, before
- anteā, *adv.* [*ante*], before
- ante-cēdō, antecēdere, antecessī, antecessūrus, go before. (*Antecedent*)
- Antemnātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the inhabitants of Antemnæ
- ante-quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before
- antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ante*], old, ancient. (*Antiquity*)
- antrum, -ī, *n.*, cave
- anxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, troubled, ANXIOUS
- aperiō, aperire, aperuī, apertus, open
- Apollō, -inis, *m.*, APOLLO, a god of the Greeks
- appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus [*ad-*], address, call, name. (*Appeal.*) *Cf.* vocō
- ap-pellō, appellere, appulī, appulsus [*ad-*], (drive to); nāvem appellere, land, put in
- ap-prehendō, apprehendere, apprehendī, apprehēnsus [*ad-*], seize. (*Apprehend*)
- ap-propinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātūrus [*ad-*], approach, come near to. *Cf.* adeō and accēdō
- aptō, aptāre, aptāvī, aptātus, fit. (*Adapt*)
- apud, *prep.* with *acc.*, with, by, near, among
- aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. (*Aquatic*)
- Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, AQUILEIA, a city at the head of the Adriatic
- Aquitāni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the AQUITANI, a tribe of Gaul

- āra**, -ae, *f.*, altar
- Arar**, -aris, *m.*, the Saône, a river of Gaul, flowing into the Rhone
- arbitror**, arbitrarī, arbitrātus sum, think, suppose. (*Arbitrator.*) *Cf.* existimō and putō
- arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree
- arca**, -ae, *f.*, box, chest, ARK
- arcus**, -ūs, *m.*, bow. (*Arc*)
- Ardea**, -ae, *f.*, ARDEA, a city of Italy
- arduus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, steep; difficult, ARDUOUS
- Argī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, ARGOS, a city of Greece
- Aristotelēs**, -is, *m.*, ARISTOTLE, a Greek philosopher
- arma**, -ōrum, *n. plur.* [*armō*], ARMS, weapons, ARMOR
- armō**, armāre, armāvī, armātus [*arma*], ARM, equip
- ar-ripiō**, arripere, arripuī, arreptus [*ad-rapiō*], seize, snatch
- Arrūns**, Arruntis, *m.*, ARRUNS, a son of Tarquinius Superbus
- ars**, artis, *f.*, ART, skill
- a-scendō**, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus [*ad-scandō*, climb], climb to, mount, ASCEND
- ascēnsus**, -ūs, *m.* [*ascendō*], a going up, ASCENT
- at**, *conj.*, but. *Cf.* sed and autem
- Athēnae**, -ārum, *f. plur.*, ATHENS
- Atlās**, -antis, *m.*, ATLAS, one of the Titans
- at-que**, *conj.*, used before vowels and consonants, ac before consonants only [*ad-*], and also, and especially, and; as. *Cf.* et and -que
- atrōx**, -ōcis, *adj.*, savage, fierce, severe. (*Atrocious.*) *Cf.* saevus and trux
- at-tonitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ad-*], thunderstruck, astounded, awe-struck
- auctōritās**, -ātis, *f.*, power, AUTHORITY, influence
- audācia**, -ae, *f.* [*audāx*], daring, boldness, AUDACITY
- audāx**, -ācis, *adj.*, daring, bold. (*Audacious*)
- audiō**, audire, audiī (audiī), audītus, hear, listen. (*Audience*)
- au-ferō**, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [*ab(s)-*], bear off, carry away, take away. (*Ablative*)
- augeō**, augēre, auxī, auctus [*auxili-*um], increase, enlarge. (*Augment*)
- aureus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*aurum*], of gold, golden
- aurum**, -ī, *n.*, gold
- aut**, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or. *Cf.* vel
- autem**, *conj.* (*never used as the first word*), but, however, moreover, now. *Cf.* sed
- auxilior**, auxiliārī, auxiliātus sum [*auxilium*], give help, aid, assist, succor
- auxilium**, auxiliī, *n.* [*augeō*], help, aid, support. (*Auxiliary*)
- Aventinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, AVENTINE, of the AVENTINE (one of the hills of Rome)
- ā-vertō**, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, turn away, turn aside, AVERT, remove
- avus**, -ī, *m.*, grandfather

- barbarus, -ī, m., BARBARIAN**
Belgae, -ārum, m. plur., the BELGIANS or BELGÆ, a Gallic tribe
bellum, -ī, n., war. (Belligerent)
bēlua, -ae, f., beast, monster
bene, adv. [bonus], well
beneficium, benefici, n. [bene-faciō], kindness, service, BENEFIT
bibō, bibere, bibī, —, drink. (Im-bibe)
bis, adv., twice
bonitās, -ātis, f. [bonus], fertility, goodness
bonus, -a, -um, adj., good, kind
brevis, -e, adj., short, BRIEF
Britannia, -ae, f., BRITAIN
Britannus, -ī, m., a BRITON, inhabitant of Britannia
Bruttii or Brittiī, -ōrum, m. plur., the BRUTII, a people of southern Italy
Brūtus, -ī, m., BRUTUS, a Roman surname
- C., abbreviation for Gāius, Caius**
caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind
caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus, cut; kill. (Suicide)
Caelius, -a, -um, adj., CÆLIAN
caelum, -ī, n., sky, heaven, heavens
Caeninēnsēs, -ium, m. plur., the inhabitants of Cænina
Caesar, -aris, m., Caius Julius CÆSAR, a famous Roman
cale-faciō, calefacere, calefēcī, calefactus [caleō-, be hot], make hot, heat
Campānia, -ae, f., CAMPANIA, a district of Italy
- canis, -is, m. and f., dog. (Canine)**
Cannae, -ārum, f. plur., CANNÆ, a town of southern Italy
cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātus, sing. (Chant)
capīō, capere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, CAPTURE; form
Capitōlium, Capitōli, n., the CAPITOL, temple of Jupiter at Rome; the CAPITOLINE Hill
captiva, -ae, f. [capīō], CAPTIVE, prisoner
captivus, -ī, m. [capīō], CAPTIVE, prisoner
Capua, -ae, f., CAPUA, a city in Italy
caput, -itis, n., head; person. (Capital)
carēō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, be in want of, lack, want; with abl. (Care)
carō, carnis, f., flesh. (Carnal)
carrus, -ī, m., wagon, CART, CAR
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious
casa, -ae, f., hut, cottage
Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., CASSIVELLAUNUS, a British chief
castellum, -ī, n. [diminutive of castrum, fortress], redoubt, stronghold. (Castle)
Casticus, -ī, m., CASTICUS, a Gallic chief
castra, -ōrum, n. plur., camp. (Chester)
cāsus, -ūs, m., a falling; chance; misfortune, loss. (Case)
cauda, -ae, f., tail.
causa, -ae, f., CAUSE, reason; causā, after a genitive, for the sake

- cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus**, give way, retire. (*Secede*)
- celeber, -bris, -bre, adj.** [*celebrō*], frequented, visited; renowned, CELEBRATED
- celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus** [*celeber*], frequent, throng. (*Celebrate*)
- celer, -eris, -ere, adj.**, swift, quick
- celeritās, -ātis, f.** [*celer*], swiftness, speed, quickness, CELERITY
- celeriter, adv.** [*celer*], swiftly, quickly
- cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus**, CONCEAL
- cēna, -ae, f.** [*cēnō*], dinner, meal
- Cēnaeum, -ī, n.**, CENÆUM, a promontory on the island of Eubœa
- cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātus** [*cēna*], dine, take a meal
- cēnsus, -ūs, m.**, a CENSUS
- centaurus, -ī, m.**, CENTAUR, a fabled monster, half man, half horse
- centum, adj., indecl.**, hundred. (*Cent*)
- centuriō, -ōnis, m.**, CENTURION, an underofficer in the Roman army
- Cēpheus, -ī, m.**, CEPHEUS, father of Andromeda
- cēra, -ae, f.**, wax. (*Cerate*)
- certāmen, -inis, n.**, strife, contest
- certē, adv.** [*certus*], really, surely, CERTAINLY
- certus, -a, -um, adj.**, fixed, determined, CERTAIN, sure; **certiōrem faciō**, (make more certain), inform
- cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., plur.**, the rest, the remaining, the others. *Cf.* **alius cibus, -ī, m.**, food
- Cicerō, -ōnis, m.**, CICERO, a famous Roman orator
- Cīneās, -ae, m.**, CINEAS, a friend of Pyrrhus
- cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus**, surround, encircle, gird
- circiter, adv.**, about
- circuitus, -ūs, m.** [*circum-eō*], (a going round), circumference, CIRCUIT
- circum, prep. with acc.**, around
- circum-arō, circumarāre, circumarāvī, —, plough** around
- circum-dō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus**, place around, surround, inclose
- circum-mūniō, circummūnire, circummūnivī, circummūnītus**, wall around, surround, fortify, blockade
- circum-stō, circumstāre, circumsteti (circumsteti), —, stand** around, surround. (*Circumstance*)
- circum-veniō, circumvenire, circumvēnī, circumventus**, surround, CIRCUMVENT
- circus, -ī, m.**, the CIRCUS at Rome, in which chariot races and other contests were held
- Cisalpinus, -a, -um, adj.**, (this side the Alps), CISALPINE
- citerior, -ius, adj., comp.**, hither, nearer
- cithara, -ae, f.**, lyre
- citrā, prep. with acc.**, this side of
- cīvis, -is, m. and f.**, citizen. (*Civil*)
- cīvitās, -ātis, f.** [*cīvis*], (body of citizens), state; citizenship. (*City*)
- clāmor, -ōris, m.**, cry, shout; barking. (*Clamor*)
- clārus, -a, -um, adj.**, CLEAR, loud; renowned, famous. (*Clarion*)

- claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus,** shut, CLOSE. (*Clause*)
- cloāca, -ae, f.,** sewer
- Cloelia, -ae, f.,** CLÆLIA, a noble Roman maiden
- Cocles, -itis, m.,** (blind in one eye), COCLES, surname of Horatius
- coepi, coepisse, coeptus** (*defective; tenses from present stem wanting*), began
- co-erceō, coercere, coercui, coercitus** [*co(m)-arceō*, keep off], keep back, check, restrain. (*Coerce*)
- cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus,** consider thoroughly, reflect. (*Cogitation*)
- cognōmen, -inis, n.** [*co(m)-(g)nōmen*], surname, COGNOMEN
- co-gnōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus** [*co(m)-(g)nōscō*, know], learn, RECOGNIZE, know, understand
- cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, cōactus** [*co(m)-agō*], (drive together), collect, drive, compel
- cohors, -hortis, f.,** COHORT, a division of the Roman army
- Collātinus, -i, m.,** COLLATINUS, a Roman
- col-ligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus** [*com-legō*], COLLECT, gather together
- collis, -is, m.,** hill. Cf. *mōns*
- collum, -i, n.,** neck. (*Collar*)
- colō, colere, colui, cultus,** care for, CULTIVATE, till; honor. Cf. *agricola* and *incola*
- com-** (col-, con-, cor-, co-, cō-), *primitive form of cum, a prefix denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive*
- comes, -itis, m. and f.** [*com-eō*], comrade, companion
- comitium, comiti, n.** [*com-eō*], (place of assembling), the COMITIUM, a part of the Roman Forum
- commeātus, -ūs, m.,** supplies, provisions
- com-mittō, committere, commisi, commissus,** intrust, COMMIT; **proelium committere,** join battle, engage. (*Commission*)
- com-moveō, commovere, commōvī, commōtus,** (put in violent motion), shake, disturb, agitate, move. (*Commotion*)
- commūnis, -e, adj.,** COMMON, general. (*Community*)
- com-pāreō, comparere, compāruī,** —, APPEAR
- com-pellō, compellere, compulsi, compulsus,** (drive together), force. COMPEL. (*Compulsion*)
- com-periō, comperire, comperi, comperitus** [*-pariō*, bring forth], find out, learn
- com-plector, complecti, complexus sum,** embrace
- com-pleō, complere, complēvī, complētus,** fill out, fill up, cover. (*Complete*)
- com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), adj., plur.,** very many, many, a number
- com-primō, comprimere, compressi, compressus** [*-premō*, press], PRESS together, grasp; check, SUPPRESS. (*Compress*)
- compulsus, see compellō**

- con-**, *see* **com-**
cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [*cōnor*], attempt
con-cēdō, **concedere**, **concessi**, **concessus**, allow, grant, permit. (*Concede*)
concilium, **concili**, *n.*, COUNCIL, assembly
con-citō, **concitāre**, **concitāvī**, **concitātus**, rouse up, rouse, spur on
con-currō, **concurrere**, **concurri**, **conkursūrus**, run together, rush together, rally, gather. (*Concourse*)
condiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [*con-dicō*], (a talking together), agreement, CONDITION, terms
con-dō, **condere**, **condidī**, **conditus** [-dō], put], conceal, hide; found, establish. *Cf.* **cēlō**
con-dōnō, **condōnāre**, **condōnāvī**, **condōnātus**, give up, surrender; forgive, pardon, **CONDONE**
cō-nectō, **cōnectere**, **cōnexuī**, **cōnexus** [*co(m)-*], bind together; join, tie. (*Connect*)
cōn-ferō, **cōnferre**, **contulī**, **conlātus**, bring together, collect; **sē cōnferre**, betake one's self
cōnferthus, -a, -um, *adj.*, crowded, thick, dense
cōn-ficiō, **cōficere**, **cōfēcī**, **cōnfectus** [-*faciō*], make, accomplish, carry out, finish; weaken, wear out
cōn-firmō, **cōnfirmāre**, **cōnfirmāvī**, **cōnfirmātus**, make **FIRM**, strengthen, steady. (*Confirm*)
cōn-fugiō, **cōn fugere**, **cōnfūgī**, —, flee for refuge, flee
con-iciō, **conicere**, **coniēcī**, **coniectus** [-*iaciō*], throw together; throw, put, hurl, cast. (*Conjecture*)
con-iungō, **coniungere**, **coniūnxī**, **coniūctus**, join together, unite. (*Conjunction*)
coniūnx, -iugis, *m. and f.* [*coniungō*], husband, wife. (*Conjugal*)
coniūratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*coniūrō*], conspiracy
con-iūrō, **coniūrāre**, **coniūrāvī**, **coniūrātus**, unite by oath, conspire. (*Conjure*)
con-locō, **conlocāre**, **conlocāvī**, **conlocātus**, place, station. *Cf.* **pōnō**
conloquium, **conloqui**, *n.* [*conloquor*], (a talking together), conversation, conference, **COLLOQUY**
cōnor, **cōnārī**, **cōnātus sum**, endeavor, attempt, try. (*Conative*)
cōn-scendō, **cōnscendere**, **cōnscendī**, **cōnscēsus** [-*scandō*, climb], climb up, mount, go on board
cōn-scribō, **cōnscrībēre**, **cōnscrīpsī**, **cōnscrīptus**, enlist, enrol, levy. (*Conscription*)
cōn-secrō, **cōnsecrāre**, **cōnsecrāvī**, **cōnsecrātus** [-*sacrō*, make sacred], deify, **CONSECRATE**
cōn-sequor, **cōnsequī**, **cōnsecūtus sum**, overtake. (*Consecutive*)
cōn-servō, **cōnservāre**, **cōnservāvī**, **cōnservātus**, **PRESERVE**, save. (*Conserve*)
Cōnsidius, **Cōnsidī**, *m.*, **CONSIDIUS**, an officer of Cæsar
cōnsilium, **cōnsili**, *n.* [*cōnsulō*], advice, **COUNSEL**, prudence, wisdom; plan, design

- cōn-sistō, cōnsistere, cōstitī, —,** stand firm, take one's stand, halt; depend, rest. (*Consist*)
- cōnspectus, -ūs, m.,** look, view, sight
- cōn-stituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus [-statuō, set up],** establish, determine, fix, decide, resolve. (*Constitution*)
- cōn-suēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvi, cōnsuētus,** accustom; become accustomed; *perf.*, be accustomed, be wont
- cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō],** custom, habit
- cōnsul, -ulis, m.,** CONSUL
- cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul],** CONSULSHIP
- cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsului, cōnsultus [cōnsilium],** take counsel, CONSULT
- cōn-sūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsi, cōnsūptus,** use up, spend, pass, CONSUME
- con-tegō, contegere, contēxi, contēctus,** cover
- con-temnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus,** despise, CONTEMN. (*Contempt*)
- con-tendō, contendere, contendī, contentus,** strain, struggle, strive, hasten. (*Contend.*) Cf. *mātūrō and properō*
- contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō],** struggle, exertion. (*Contention*)
- continēns, -entis, f. [contineō],** mainland, CONTINENT
- continenter, adv. [contineō],** continuously
- con-tineō, continēre, continui, contentus [-teneō],** hold together, keep together, hold, CONTAIN. (*Contents*)
- con-tingō, contingere, contigī, contactus [-tangō, touch],** fall to one's lot. (*Contact*)
- continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō],** CONTINUOUS, successive
- contrā, prep. with acc.,** against, CONTRARY TO
- con-veniō, convenire, convēni, conventūrus,** come together, assemble, meet; CONVENE. (*Convention*)
- conventus, -ūs, m. [conveniō],** gathering, assembly, meeting
- con-vocō, convocāre, convocāvi, convocātus,** call together, summon, CONVOKE
- cōpia, -ae, f. [co(m)-ops],** abundance, wealth, plenty; *plur.*, troops, forces. (*Copious*)
- cōram, adv.,** face to face, in person
- Corinthus, -ī, f.,** CORINTH
- Coriolānus, -ī, m.,** CORIOLANUS, a famous Roman warrior
- Coriolī, -ōrum, m. plur.,** CORIOLI, an ancient town in Italy
- Cornēlia, -ae, f.,** CORNELIA, a Roman name
- cornū, -ūs, n.,** horn
- corōna, -ae, f.,** CROWN. (*Coronet*)
- corpus, -oris, n.,** body. (*Corpse*)
- cor-ripiō, corripere, corripui, corrip-tus [com-rapiō],** seize, take hold of
- cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. [cotidīz],** daily
- cotidīē, adv. [quot-diēs],** daily
- crātēra, -ae, f.,** mixing bowl, bowl
- crēber, -bra, -brum, adj.,** thick, numerous, frequent

- crēdibilis**, -e, *adj.*, to be believed,
CREDIBLE
- crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, be-
lieve, think, suppose. (*Credit*)
- creō**, **creāre**, **creāvī**, **creātus**, make,
CREATE; choose, elect
- Crēta**, -ae, *f.*, CRETE, an island
southeast of Greece
- cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.*, torture
- Crustumīnī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the in-
habitants of Crustumium
- cubiculum**, -ī, *n.* [**cupō**, lie], bedchamber
- cum**, *conj.*, when
- cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with
- cūnae**, -ārum, *f. plur.*, cradle
- cūnctus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, all together,
all. *Cf.* **omnis**, **tōtus**, and **ūniversus**
- cupidē**, *adv.* [**cupidus**], eagerly
- cupiditās**, -ātis, *f.* [**cupidus**], longing,
desire. (*Cupidity*)
- cupidius**, *adv.* [**cupidē**], too eagerly
- cupidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō**], de-
siring, fond
- cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupivī** (**cupii**), **cupitus**,
desire, be eager for. *Cf.* **volō**
- cūr**, *adv.*, why, wherefore
- cūra**, -ae, *f.* [**cūrō**], care, anxiety
- Curius**, **Curī**, *m.*, CURIUS, a Roman
name
- cūrō**, **cūrāre**, **cūrāvī**, **cūrātus** [**cūra**],
care for, take care; *with gerun-
dive*, have (a thing done)
- currō**, **currere**, **cucurri**, **cursurus** [**cur-
sus**], run
- cursus**, -ūs, *m.* [**currō**], COURSE, race-
COURSE
- custōdiō**, **custōdire**, **custōdivī** (**cus-
tōdii**), **custōditus** [**custōs**], guard,
protect, defend
- custōs**, -ōdis, *m. and f.* [**custōdiō**],
guardian, keeper. (*Custodian*)
- Cyclōps**, -ōpis, *m.*, (round eye), a
CYCLOPS, one of a fabulous race
of giants on the coast of Sicily
- Daedalus**, -ī, *m.*, DÆDALUS, father
of Icarus
- damnō**, **damnāre**, **damnāvī**, **damnā-
tus** [**damnum**], CONDEMN, sentence,
doom
- damnum**, -ī, *n.* [**damnō**], hurt, harm,
damage, loss
- Danaē**, -ēs, *f.*, DANAE, mother of
Perseus
- dē**, *prep. with abl.*, down from,
from; about, concerning, of; *of
time*, in, during, for
- dea**, -ae, *f.* [**deus**], goddess
- dēbeō**, **dēbere**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitus** [**dē-
habeō**], owe, ought, must, should
- dēbitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dēbeō**], owed;
due, appropriate. (*Debit, Debt*)
- decem**, *adj., indecl.*, ten
- dē-cidō**, **dēcidere**, **dēcidī**, — [**-cadō**,
fall], fall down, fall off
- decimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**decem**], tenth.
(*Decimal*)
- dē-cipiō**, **dēcipere**, **dēcēpi**, **dēceptus**
[**-capiō**], DECEIVE
- Decius**, **Decī**, *m.*, DECIUS, a Roman
name
- dēditicius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dēdō**], sur-
rendered; *masc. plur. as noun*,
prisoners of war, subjects
- dēditio**, -ōnis, *f.* [**dēdō**], (a giving up),
surrender
- dē-dō**, **dēdere**, **dēdidī**, **dēditus** [**-dō**,
put], give up, surrender

- dē-dūcō, dēducere, dēdūxī, dēductus,** lead down, lead off, escort, bring to. (*Deduct*)
- dē-fendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus,** (strike off from), DEFEND, protect
- dē-ferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus,** (bring down), report
- dēfessus, -a, -um, adj.,** tired out, weary, very tired
- Dēianira, -ae, f.,** DEIANIRA, wife of Hercules
- dē-iciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus** [-*iaciō*], throw down, let fall; disappoint; *pass.*, slip, stumble. (*Dejected*)
- dēiectus, see dēiēcīō**
- dē-inde, adv.,** (from thence), then, afterwards, next
- dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī, dēlectātus,** DELIGHT, please. (*Delectable*)
- dē-ligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus** [-*legō*], pick out, choose, SELECT
- Delphī, -ōrum, m. plur.,** DELPHI, a town in Greece
- Delphicus, -a, -um, adj.,** of DELPHI, DELPHIC
- dē-migrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigrātūrus,** MIGRATE from; remove, go away. *Cf.* *abeō*
- dē-mittō, dēmittere, dēmisi, dēmisisus,** (send down), let down, let go, lose
- dē-mōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus,** point out, show, describe. (*Demonstrate*)
- dēmum, adv.,** at length, at last; **tum dēmum,** not till then
- dēnique, adv.,** at last, finally; in short, in fact
- dēnsus, -a, -um, adj.,** thick, DENSE
- Dentātus, -ī, m.,** DENTATUS, a Roman name
- dē-pellō, dēpellere, dēpuli, dēpulsus,** drive out, drive away, remove, banish
- dē-plōrō, dēplōrāre, dēplōrāvī, dēplōrātus,** lament, DEPLORE
- dē-pōnō, dēpōnere, dēposui, dēpositus,** put down, lay aside, abandon. (*Deposit*)
- dēpositus, see dēpōnō**
- dēpulsus, see dēpellō**
- dē-scendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsūrus** [-*scandō*, climb], (climb down), come down, DESCEND
- dē-scribō, dēscribere, dēscripsi, dēscriptus,** mark off, divide. (*Describe*)
- dē-serō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertus,** abandon, DESERT
- dēsertus, see dēserō**
- dē-siliō, dēsilire, dēsiliui, dēsultūrus** [-*saliō*, jump], jump down, leap down
- dē-sistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, dēstitūrus,** (stand off *or* apart), leave off, cease; DESIST
- dēspectus, -ūs, m.,** (a looking down upon), view, PROSPECT
- dē-spērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātus,** be hopeless, DESPAIR
- dē-spoliō, dēspoliāre, dēspoliāvī, dēspoliātus,** rob, deprive, DESPOIL
- dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus,** be from, be wanting, lack; *with dat.*

- dē-super**, *adv.*, down from above
- dē-trahō**, *dētrahere*, *dētrāxī*, *dētrāctus*, draw off, throw off, remove. (*Detract*)
- deus**, -ī, *m.*, god. (*Deity*)
- dē-vorō**, *dēvorāre*, *dēvorāvī*, *dēvorātus*, swallow up, DEVOUR, gulp down
- dexter**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right (hand). (*Dexterous*)
- dextra**, -ae, *f.* [*dexter*], right hand
- dī-**, *see dis-*
- dīcō**, *dicere*, *dīxī*, *dictus*, say, tell, speak; appoint. (*Dictum*)
- diēs**, -ēī, *m.*, day
- dif-ficilis**, -e, *adj.* [*dis-facilis*], hard, DIFFICULT
- difficultās**, -ātis, *f.* [*difficilis*], DIFFICULTY
- dignitās**, -ātis, *f.*, rank. (*Dignity*)
- diligenter**, *adv.* [*diligentia*], DILIGENTLY, industriously
- diligentia**, -ae, *f.* [*diligenter*], DILIGENCE, carefulness, industry
- dīmicō**, *dīmicāre*, *dīmicāvī*, *dīmicātūrus*, fight, contend. *Cf.* *pugnō*
- dī-mittō**, *dīmittere*, *dīmisī*, *dīmissus*, send off, DISMISS; let slip, let go by
- dis-** (*dī-*), a prefix denoting separation, asunder, apart, in different directions. *Cf.* *dīmittō*, *discēdō*, *dissimilis*, *dīvellō*
- dis-cēdō**, *discēdere*, *discessī*, *discessūrus*, depart, withdraw, go off. *Cf.* *abeō*
- discō**, *discere*, *didicī*, *discitūrus*, learn. (*Disciple*)
- discrimen**, -inis, *n.*, risk, danger, crisis. *Cf.* *periculum*
- dis-pliceō**, *displicēre*, *displicuī*, *displicitūrus* [-*placeō*], DISPLEASE
- dis-similis**, -e, *adj.*, unlike, DIS-SIMILAR
- dīū**, *adv.*, for a long time, long
- dīūturnitās**, -ātis, *f.* [*dīū*], length, duration
- dī-vellō**, *dīvellere*, *dīvellī*, *dīvulsus*, tear asunder, tear apart
- dīversus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, (turned away), separate, different, DIVERSE
- Divicō**, -ōnis, *m.*, DIVICO, a chief of the Helvetians
- dīvidō**, *dīvidere*, *dīvisī*, *dīvisus*, DIVIDE, apportion. (*Division*)
- dīvinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the gods, DIVINE
- dīvulsus**, *see dīvellō*
- dō**, dare, *dedī*, *datus*, give, offer; put. *Cf.* *dōnō*
- doceō**, *docēre*, *docuī*, *doctus*, teach, show. (*Docile, Doctor*)
- doleō**, *dolēre*, *doluī*, *dolitūrus* [*dolor*], grieve, be sorry. (*Condole*)
- dolor**, -ōris, *m.* [*doleō*], pain, grief. (*Dolorous*)
- dolus**, -ī, *m.*, deceit, trick, fraud, cunning
- domesticus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*domus*], DOMESTIC
- domī**, *see domus*
- domina**, -ae, *f.* [*dominus*], mistress, lady
- dominus**, -ī, *m.* [*domus*], lord, master, owner. (*Dominate*)
- domus**, -ūs, *f.*, house, home; *domī*, at home. (*Domestic*)
- dōnō**, *dōnāre*, *dōnāvī*, *dōnātus* [*dōnum*], give, present. (*Donate.*) *Cf.* *dō*

dōnum, -ī, *n.* [dō], gift, present
dormiō, dormire, dormivī (dormiī),
dormitus, sleep. (*Dormitory*)

dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, serpent, DRAGON
ducentī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, two hundred
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus [dux], lead,
draw; derive. (*Duct*)

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; until
Dumnorix, -igis, *m.*, DUMNORIX, a
leader of the Hædui

duo, duae, duo, *adj.*, two. (*Dual*)
duo-decim [-decem], *adj.*, indecl.,
twelve

duplex, -icis, *adj.* [duo], twofold,
double

duplicō, duplicāre, duplicāvī, dupli-
cātus [duplex], double. (*Duplicate*)
dux, ducis, *m. and f.* [dūcō], leader,
general. (*Duke.*) Cf. imperātor

ē, *see ex*

ē-dō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus [-dō], put,
put forth, raise, utter. (*Edit*)

ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvī, ēducātus,
bring up, train, EDUCATE

ē-dūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead
out, lead forth, bring away;
draw

ef-ficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus [ex-
faciō], bring about, EFFECT, ac-
complish

ef-flō, efflāre, efflāvī, efflātus [ex-],
(blow out), breathe out

ef-fundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus
[ex-], pour forth, pour out, shed.
(*Effusion*)

effūsus, *see effundō.*

ego, *pers. pron.*, I; *plur.* nōs, we.
(*Egotist*)

ē-gredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum [-gra-
dior, go], go out, go forth; in
terram ēgressus, having gone
ashore. (*Egress.*) Cf. exeō

ēgregiē, *adv.*, remarkably, excellently
ēgressus, *see ēgredior*

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, ELEPHANT

ē-ligō, eligere, elēgī, elēctus [-legō],
pick out, choose, SELECT. (*Elect*)

ē-mittō, emittere, emisi, emissus,
send forth, let loose, let out.
(*Emit*)

emō, emere, emī, emptus, (take),
buy

enim, *conj.* (*never the first word*),
for; indeed, in fact. Cf. nam

Ennius, Ennī, *m.*, ENNIUS, an early
Latin poet

ē-nūntiō, ēnūntiāre, ēnūntiāvī, ēnū-
ntiātus, proclaim, ANNOUNCE, re-
veal, utter. (*Enunciate*)

eō, ire, ii (iī), itūrus, go

eō, *adv.* [is], to that place, thither,
there

Ēpirus, -ī, *f.*, EPIRUS, a division of
Greece

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, EPISTLE

eques, -itis, *m.* [equus], horseman,
knight

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques], (of
horsemen), EQUESTRIAN

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [eques], (body of
horsemen), cavalry

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. (*Equine*)

ergō, *adv.*, therefore

errō, errāre, errāvī, errātūrus, wander,
ERR

ērudiō, ērudire, ērudivī (ērudī), ēru-
ditus, instruct. (*Erudit*)

- eruptiō, -ōnis, f.**, (a bursting forth), sally. (*Eruption*)
- Esquilinus, -i, m.**, the ESQUILINE, one of the hills of Rome
- et, conj.**, and, also; et . . . et, both . . . and. *Cf. atque (ac) and -que*
- etiam, adv. and conj.** [*et-iam*], (and now), also, even. *Cf. quoque*
- Etrūscī, -ōrum, m. plur.**, the ETRUSCANS, people of Etruria, in Italy
- et-sī, conj.**, although
- Eunomus, -i, m.**, EUNOMUS, a boy who was killed by Hercules
- Eurōpa, -ae, f.**, EUROPE
- Eurystheus, -i, m.**, EURYSTHEUS, king of Tiryns, in Greece
- Eurytus, -i, m.**, EURYTUS, father of Iole
- ē-vādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus**, (go out), get away, escape. (*Evade*)
- ē-veniō, ēvenire, ēvēnī, ēventūrus**, (come out), fall out, happen, turn out. (*Event.*) *Cf. accidō and fiō*
- ex (ē), prep. with abl.**, out of, from, of, off, on; in accordance with
- exanimātus, -a, -um, adj.** [*anima*], 'breathless, out of breath, exhausted
- ex-cēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessūrus**, go out, go forth, depart. (*Exceed*)
- ex-citō, excitāre, excitāvi, excitātus**, (call out), rouse, arouse, wake. (*Excite*)
- ex-clāmō, exclāmāre, exclāmāvi, exclāmātus**, cry out, EXCLAIM
- excursiō, -ōnis, f.**, (a running out), sally, sortie. (*Excursion*)
- exemplum, -i, n.**, sample, EXAMPLE, warning
- ex-eō, exire, exiī, exitūrus**, go out, go forth, come out. (*Exit.*) *Cf. ēgredior*
- exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus**, EXERCISE, train
- exercitātiō, -ōnis, f.** [*exerceō*], exercise, training
- exercitus, -ūs, m.** [*exerceō*], (the thing trained), army
- ex-igō, exigere, exēgī, exāctus [-agō]**, drive out, expel. (*Exact*)
- existimō, existimāre, existimāvi, existimātus**, think, judge, consider, suppose. *Cf. arbitror and putō*
- exitium, exitī, n.** [*exeō*], ruin, destruction
- ex-pellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus**, drive out, EXPEL. (*Expulsion*)
- ex-perior, experiri, expertus sum** [*periculum*], try, test; EXPERIENCE. *Cf. tentō*
- expertus, see experior**
- ex-piō, expiāre, expiāvi, expiātus**, make amends for, EXPIATE
- explōrātor, -ōris, m.** [*explōrō*], scout, spy
- ex-plōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvi, explōrātus** [*explōrātor*], examine, EXPLORE, investigate
- ex-pōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus**, set forth, explain, relate; EXPOSE
- expositus, see expōnō**
- ex-pugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvi, expugnātus**, take by storm, take, capture. *Cf. oppugnō*

- expulsus**, *see* **expellō**
- ex-spectō**, **expectāre**, **expectāvī**,
expectātus, (look out for), await,
wait for, wait, **EXPECT**
- ex-struō**, **extruere**, **extrūxī**, **ex-**
strūctus, (heap up), build, erect,
CONSTRUCT
- extrā**, *prep. with acc.*, outside,
beyond
- ex-trahō**, **extrahere**, **extrāxī**, **extrāc-**
tus, draw out, drag out. (*Extract*)
- extrēmus**, -a, -um, *adj., superl.*, outer-
most, last, farthest; end of; **EX-**
TREME
- exuō**, **exuere**, **exuī**, **exūtus**, take off,
put off
- faber**, -brī, *m.*, workman, artisan,
smith
- Fabricius**, **Fabricī**, *m.*, **FABRICIUS**, a
famous Roman general
- fābula**, -ae, *f.*, story, tale, **FABLE**
- facile**, *adv.* [**facilis**], easily
- facilis**, -e, *adj.* [**faciō**], (that can be
done), easy to do, easy. (*Facil-*
ity)
- faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, do, make;
form, perform
- factum**, -ī, *n.* [**faciō**], act, deed,
action. (*Fact*)
- facultās**, -ātis, *f.* [**facilis**], power,
opportunity, chance. (*Faculty*)
- falx**, **falcis**, *f.*, curved sword
- fāma**, -ae, *f.*, rumor, report; **FAME**,
renown
- famēs**, -is, *f.*, hunger, **FAMINE**
- fātum**, -ī, *n.*, **FATE**
- Faustulus**, -ī, *m.*, **FAUSTULUS**, a
shepherd
- faveō**, **favēre**, **fāvi**, **fautūrus**, be
favorable to, **FAVOR**, befriend;
with dat.
- fēlēs**, -is, *f.*, cat. (*Feline*)
- fēliciter**, *adv.* [**fēlix**], luckily, fortu-
nately, successfully
- fēlix**, -īcis, *adj.*, lucky, fortunate,
happy. (*Felicity*)
- fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, woman. (*Feminine*).
Cf. mulier
- ferē**, *adv.*, nearly, for the most part,
almost, about
- ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, bear, bring;
report, say. *Cf. portō and*
tolerō
- ferrum**, -ī, *n.*, iron; sword. *Cf.*
gladius
- Fidēnātēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, the in-
habitants of Fidenæ
- fidēs**, -eī, *f.*, trust, confidence. (*Fi-*
delity)
- figūra**, -ae, *f.* [**fī(n)gō**], shape, form,
FIGURE
- filia**, -ae, *f.* [**fīlius**], daughter
- filius**, **fili**, *m.* [**fīlia**], son. (*Filial*)
- fiŋgō**, **fiŋgere**, **fiŋxī**, **fictus**, fashion,
devise. (*Feign, Fiction*)
- finis**, -is, *m.*, end, border; *plur.*,
territories. (*Final*)
- finitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**finis**], bor-
dering on; *masc. plur. as noun*,
neighbors
- fīō**, **fieri**, **factus sum** (*supplies pass.*
to faciō), be made, be done, be-
come, happen. *Cf. accidō and*
ēveniō
- firmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, **FIRM**
- flagrāns**, -antis, *adj.*, flaming, blaz-
ing, burning. (*Flagrant*)

- fūmen**, -inis, *n.* [*fluō*], (that which flows), river, stream
fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxūrus, flow
foculus, -ī, *m.* [*focus*], sacrificial hearth, fire pan, brazier
focus, -ī, *m.*, hearth. (*Focus, Fuel*)
foedus, -eris, *n.*, league, treaty, alliance. (*Federal*)
fore, for futūrum esse
fors, fortis, *f.*, chance, luck
forte, *adv.* [*fors*], by chance, perhaps
fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, brave, courageous. (*Fortitude.*) *Cf.* validus
fortiter, *adv.* [*fortis*], bravely, courageously
fortūna, -ae, *f.* [*fors*], FORTUNE, good FORTUNE
fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench, FOSSE; canal
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. (*Fraternal*)
fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, noise, roaring, roar
frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead, brow. (*Front*)
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*frūmentum*], of grain
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, corn, grain
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain. (*Frustrate*)
fuga, -ae, *f.* [*fugiō*], flight
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus [*fugō*, *fuga*], run away, flee; flee from. (*Fugitive*)
fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus [*fuga*, *fugiō*], put to flight, rout
fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke. (*Fumes*)
furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, frenzy, FUROR

Gabii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, GABII, a city of Italy
Galba, -ae, *m.*, GALBA
galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, GAUL
Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, GALLIC
Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a GAUL
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (*semi-deponent*) [*gaudium*], be glad, rejoice
gaudium, gaudī, *n.* [*gaudeō*], JOY, gladness. *Cf.* laetitia
gāvīsus, see gaudeō
geminus, -a, -um, *adj.*, twin-born, twin-
Genāva, -ae, *f.*, GENEVA
gēns, gentis, *f.* [*genus*], race, tribe, house, family. (*Gentile, Gentle*)
genus, -eris, *n.* [*gēns*], race, lineage; kind, class. (*Generous*)
Germānia, -ae, *f.*, GERMANY
Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, GERMAN; as noun, a GERMAN
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, bear, carry on, wage (war); manage, do; wear; sē gerere, act, behave; *pass.*, go on, take place
gigās, -antis, *m.*, GIANT
gladius, gladiī, *m.*, sword. (*Gladiator.*) *Cf.* ferrum
glōria, -ae, *f.*, GLORY, reputation
Gorgō, -onis, *f.*, a GORGON
Graecae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, the GRÆÆ
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, GREECE
Graecus, -ī, *m.*, a GREEK
grāmen, -inis, *n.*, grass
grātia, -ae, *f.* [*grātus*], favor, kindness; *plur.*, thanks, GRATITUDE
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*grātia*], acceptable, pleasing; GRATEFUL
gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe, serious. (*Grave*)

- graviter**, *adv.* [*gravis*], heavily, severely, vehemently, greatly
- gravō**, **gravāre**, **gravāvī**, **gravātus** [*gravis*], oppress, burden, overcome. (*Aggravate*)
- gustō**, **gustāre**, **gustāvī**, **gustātus**, taste, eat. (*Gustatory*)
- habēō**, **habēre**, **habuī**, **habitus**, have, hold, keep; *with* **ōrātiōnem**, make, deliver. (*Habit*)
- habitō**, **habitāre**, **habitāvī**, **habitātus** [*frequentative of habēō*], **INHABIT**; dwell, live. *Cf.* **incolō**
- Haeduus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, **HÆDUAN**; *masc. plur. as noun*, the **HÆDUI**, a tribe of Gaul
- haerēō**, **haerēre**, **haesī**, **haesūrus**, stick, cling, be fixed; be perplexed, **HESITATE**. (*Adhere*)
- Hammōn**, **-ōnis**, *m.*, **HAMMON**, an Egyptian god, identified by the Romans with Jupiter
- Hannibal**, **-alis**, *m.*, **HANNIBAL**, a famous Carthaginian general
- harēna**, **-ae**, *f.*, sand, shore. (*Arena*)
- hasta**, **-ae**, *f.*, spear
- haud**, *adv.*, not. *Cf.* **nōn**
- hauriō**, **haurire**, **hausī**, **haustus**, drink, drain. (*Exhaust*)
- Helvétii**, **-ōrum**, *m. plur.*, the **HELVETII**, a tribe of Gaul
- Herculēs**, **-is**, *m.*, **HERCULES**, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, famous for his strength
- Hesperidēs**, **-um**, *f. plur.*, the **HESPERIDES**, daughters of Atlas and Hesperis, and guardians of the golden apples
- hesternus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, of yesterday, yester-
- hiberna**, **-ōrum**, *n. plur.* [*hiems*], winter quarters. (*Hibernate*)
- hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this, this of mine; *as pers. pron.*, he, she, it
- hīc**, *adv.* [*hic*], here, hereupon
- hiemō**, **hiemāre**, **hiemāvī**, **hiemātūrus** [*hiems*], spend the winter
- hiems**, **hiemis**, *f.* [*hiemō*], winter; storm
- hinc**, *adv.* [*hic*], hence, from here
- Hispānia**, **-ae**, *f.*, **SPAIN**
- Hispānus**, **-ī**, *m.*, a **SPANIARD**
- ho-diē**, *adv.* [*hōc-diē*], to-day
- homō**, **-inis**, *m. and f.* [*hūmānus*], (human being), man. *Cf.* **vir**
- honestās**, **-ātis**, *f.* [*honor*], honorable character, integrity, uprightness, **HONESTY**
- honor**, **-ōris**, *m.*, **HONOR**
- hōra**, **-ae**, *f.*, **HOURLY**; *in* **hōrās**, from hour to hour, hourly
- Horātius**, **Horātī**, *m.*, **HORATIUS** (Cocles)
- horribilis**, **-e**, *adj.*, terrible, dreadful, **HORRIBLE**. *Cf.* **terribilis**
- hortor**, **hortārī**, **hortātus sum**, urge, entreat, **EXHORT**
- hortus**, **-ī**, *m.*, garden. (*Horticulture*)
- hospitium**, **hospiti**, *n.*, **HOSPITALITY**
- hostis**, **-is**, *m. and f.*, enemy. (*Hostile*) *Cf.* **inimicus**
- hūc**, *adv.* [*hic*], hither
- hūmānus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [*homō*], (pertaining to man), man's, **HUMAN**
- humī**, *locative*, on the ground. (*Exhume*)

iaceō, iacēre, iacui, — [iaciō], (be thrown), lie, lie dead. (*Adjacent*)

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus [iacēō], throw, cast, hurl

iam, adv., already, now, at last; **nōn iam**, no longer. *Cf. nunc*

Iāniculum, -ī, n., the JANICULUM, one of the hills of Rome

ibi, adv. [is], in that place, there

īcarus, -ī, m., ICARUS

ictus, -ūs, m., stroke, blow

idem, eadem, idem, dem. adj. and pron. [is], same; **īdem quī**, same as. (*Identical*)

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable

igitur, conj. (*seldom the first word*), therefore, then. *Cf. itaque*

ignis, -is, m., fire. (*Ignite*)

ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī, ignōrātus, not know, be ignorant of. (*Ignore*)

īgnōtus, -a, -um, adj. [in-(g)nōtus, known], unknown, unfamiliar, strange

ille, -a, -ud, dem. adj. and pron., that (yonder); *as pers. pron.*, he, she, it

illic, adv. [ille], there

illūc, adv. [illē], thither

immānitās, -ātis, f., savageness, cruelty, barbarity

im-mineō, imminēre, imminuī, — [in-], hang over, impend. (*Imminent*)

impedimentum, -ī, n. [impediō], hindrance; *plur.*, baggage. (*Impediment*)

impediō, impedire, impedivī (impediī), impeditus [in-pēs], entangle, hamper, IMPEDE

im-pellō, impellere, impulī, impulsus [in-], move, induce, drive, IMPEL. (*Impulse*)

im-pendeō, impendēre, —, — [in-], overhang, IMPEND

imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō], commander, general. (*Emperor*)

imperātum, -ī, n. [imperō], order, command. *Cf. iussum*

imperium, imperī, n. [imperō], command, rule, power. (*Empire*)

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus [imperium], order, command, demand; rule; *with dat. of person.* (*Imperative.*) *Cf. iubeō*

impetus, -ūs, m., attack, assault. (*Impetuous*)

im-pleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus [in-], fill up, cover, fill

im-pōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus [in-], put in or on, place in or on; mount; IMPOSE; *with dat. of person or place*

impositus, *see impōnō*

impudēns, -entis, adj., shameless, IMPUDENT

impulsus, *see impellō*

īmus, -a, -um, adj., *superl. of inferus*
in, prep. with acc., into, to, against, on, toward, for; *with abl.*, IN, ON, in case of

in-, *prefix*, into, on, toward, etc.; *also in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. un-, in-, not*

in-cendō, incendere, incendiī, incēnsus [-candēō, shine], set fire to, burn. (*Incendiary*)

- incēnsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*incendō*], inflamed, hot, fiery. (*Incense*)
- in-certus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, UNCERTAIN, doubtful
- in-cidō**, *incidere*, *incidī*, — [*-cadō*, fall], fall into; **in insāniam incidere**, become insane. (*Incident*)
- in-cipiō**, *incipere*, *incēpī*, *inceptus* [*-cipiō*], (take in hand), begin. (*Incipient*)
- in-citō**, *incitāre*, *incitāvī*, *incitātus*, arouse, stir, INCITE
- in-clūdō**, *inclūdere*, *inclūsī*, *inclūsus* [*-claudō*], shut in, confine. (*In-clude*)
- in-cognitus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown
- incohō**, *incohāre*, *incohāvī*, *incohātus*, begin. (*Inchoate*)
- incola**, -ae, *m. and f.* [*incolō*], inhabitant
- in-colō**, *incolere*, *incoluī*, — [*incola*], dwell in, inhabit; live, dwell. *Cf.* *habitō*
- incolumis**, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, safe
- incredītō**, *incredītāre*, —, —, upbraid, taunt, abuse
- inde**, *adv.* [*is*], thence, thereupon
- indicō**, *indicāre*, *indicāvī*, *indicātus*, inform, disclose, make known. (*Indicate*)
- in-dicō**, *indīcere*, *indīxī*, *indictus*, proclaim, declare, appoint. (*Indict*)
- in-dūcō**, *indūcere*, *indūxī*, *inductus*, lead to, draw to, INDUCE, persuade
- induō**, *induere*, *induī*, *indūtus*, put on, clothe one's self in, clothe, wrap
- in-ēō**, *inīre*, *inīī* (*inīvī*), *inītus*, go in, enter; begin, form
- in-fāns**, -antis, *adj.*, (not speaking); *as noun*, INFANT, baby
- in-fēlix**, -icis, *adj.*, unfortunate, unlucky, unhappy. (*Infelicitous*)
- inferior**, -ius, *adj.*, *comp. of inferus*. (*Inferior*)
- in-ferō**, *inferre*, *intulī*, *inlātus*, (bear in or against), cause, bring on, inflict. (*Infer*)
- (*inferus*), -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below, underneath
- infestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; *as noun*, enemy. (*Infest*)
- in-ficiō**, *inficere*, *infēcī*, *infectus* [*-facciō*], soak, imbue, stain. (*Infect*)
- infinītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, many, countless. (*Infinite*)
- ingēns**, -entis, *adj.*, huge, great. *Cf.* *magnus*
- in-iciō**, *inīcere*, *inīēcī*, *inīectus* [*-iaciō*], throw on, cast on, put on. (*In-ject*)
- inīectus**, *see inīciō*
- in-imīcus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*-amicus*], unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, ENEMY. (*Inimical*.) *Cf.* *hostis*
- in-īquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*-aequus*], UNEQUAL; uneven, unfavorable
- inīitium**, *inīitī*, *n.* [*inēō*], beginning. (*Initial*)
- inīūria**, -ae, *f.* [*in-īūs*], wrong, harm, insult, INJURY
- inopia**, -ae, *f.*, want, poverty, lack, need
- in-rīdēō**, *inrīdēre*, *inrīsī*, *inrīsus*, laugh at, mock, ridicule

- insānia**, -ae, *f.*, INSANITY, madness
- in-sideō**, **insidēre**, **insēdī**, **insessūrus** [-*sedeō*], sit on
- insolēns**, -entis, *adj.*, arrogant, overbearing. (*Insolent*)
- in-spiciō**, **inspicere**, **inspexī**, **inspectus** [-*speciō*, look], look into, look on, INSPECT
- in-stituō**, **instituere**, **instituī**, **institūtus** [-*statuō*, set up], set up, fix, arrange. (*Institute*)
- instrūctus**, see **instruō**
- in-struō**, **instruere**, **instrūxī**, **instrūctus**, build in, form; INSTRUCT, train; prepare, provide
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island. (*Peninsula*)
- intel-legō**, **intellegere**, **intellēxī**, **intellēctus** [*inter-legō*], (choose between), learn, know, perceive, understand. (*Intellect.*) Cf. **cognōscō**
- in-tendō**, **intendere**, **intendī**, **intentus**, (stretch out towards), bend, aim. (*Intend*)
- inter**, *prep.* with *acc.*, between, among, amid, during, while; **inter sē**, among themselves, together
- inter-clūdō**, **interclūdere**, **interclūsī**, **interclūsus** [-*claudō*], shut off, cut off
- inter-dum**, *adv.*, sometimes
- inter-eā**, *adv.*, meanwhile
- interfectus**, see **interficiō**
- inter-ficiō**, **interficere**, **interfēcī**, **interfectus** [-*faciō*], kill, slay, put to death. Cf. **necō** and **occidō**
- inter-iciō**, **intericere**, **interiēcī**, **interiectus** [-*iaciō*], place between; *pass.*, intervene. (*Interjection*)
- interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. (*Interim*)
- interior**, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.*, inner, INTERIOR
- inter-mittō**, **intermittere**, **intermisi**, **intermissus**, (send between), leave off; *pass.*, intervene, *pass.* (*Intermittent*)
- inter-rogō**, **interrogāre**, **interrogāvī**, **interrogātus**, ask, question. (*Interrogate*)
- inter-rumpō**, **interrumpere**, **inter-rūpī**, **interruptus**, break down. (*Interrupt*)
- inter-sum**, **interesse**, **interfuī**, **interfutūrus**, be between
- intervallum**, -i, *n.*, space, INTERVAL
- intrō**, **intrāre**, **intrāvī**, **intrātus**, go into, ENTER
- introitus**, -ūs, *m.* [*introeō*, go in], ENTRANCE
- intrō-mittō**, **intrōmittere**, **intrōmisi**, **intrōmissus**, (send in), let in, ADMIT
- in-vādō**, **invādere**, **invāsī**, **invāsus**, come upon, attack, INVADE, take possession of
- in-veniō**, **invenire**, **invēnī**, **inventus**, come upon, find, discover. (*Invent.*) Cf. **reperiō**
- in-vicem**, *adv.*, in turn, mutually
- in-vidēō**, **invidēre**, **invidī**, **invisūrus** (look toward), be jealous of, ENVY
- invitō**, **invitāre**, **invitāvī**, **invitātus**, INVITE
- Iolē**, -ēs, *f.*, IOLE, daughter of Eurytus
- Īphiclēs**, -is, *m.*, IPHICLES, brother of Hercules

ipse, -a, -um, dem. adj. and pron.,
self, very

ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath, **IRE**

is, ea, id, dem. adj. and pron., that;
as *pers. pron.*, he, she, it

iste, -a, -ud, dem. adj. and pron.
[*is*], that (of yours)

ita, adv., so, thus. *Cf. sic and tam*

Italia, -ae, f., ITALY

ita-que, conj., and so, therefore.

Cf. igitur

item, adv. [ita], also, likewise

iter, itineris, n. [eō, go], way, journey,
march, line of march. (*Itinerary*)

iterum, adv., a second time, again.
(*Iteration*)

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, bid, order,
command. *Cf. imperō*

iugum, -ī, n. [iungō], yoke; ridge

Iūlia, -ae, f., JULIA, a Roman name

iunctus, see iungō

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus, unite,
JOIN, span, cross. (*Junction*)

Iūnius, Iūnī, m., JUNIUS, a Roman
name

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., JUNO, queen of the
gods and wife of Jupiter

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., JUPITER, the
supreme deity of the Romans

Iūra, -ae, m., JURA, a chain of moun-
tains in Gaul

iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātūrus [iūs],
swear, take an oath. (*Abjure*)

iūs, iūris, n., right, JUSTICE

iussū, adv. [iubeō], by order, by
command of

iussum, -ī, n. [iubeō], order, com-
mand. *Cf. imperātum*

iussus, see iubeō

iūstus, -a, -um, adj. [iūs], JUST

iuvenis, -e, adj., young; as *noun,*
young man, youth. (*Juvenile*.)

Cf. adulēscēns

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid

L., abbreviation for **Lūcius**

Labiēnus, -ī, m., LABIENUS, a lieu-
tenant in Cæsar's army

labor, -ōris, m. [labōrō], LABOR, toil.
Cf. opus and opera

**labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrā-
tūrus [labor],** work, toil; suffer.
(*Elaborate*)

lac, lactis, n., milk. (*Lacteal*)

Lacaena, -ae, f., a Laconian woman,
a woman of Sparta

lacrima, -ae, f., tear. (*Lachrymal*)

lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE, pool

laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus], joy, gladness

laetus, -a, -um, adj., glad, merry,
pleasant, joyful

Laevinus, -ī, m., LÆVINUS, a Roman
consul

lambō, lambere, —, —, lick, lap

lāmenta, -ōrum, n. plur. [lāmentor],
wailing, LAMENTS, LAMENTATION

lāmentor, lāmentārī, lāmentātus sum
[*lāmenta*], wail, LAMENT

lapis, -idis, m., stone, milestone.
(*Lapidary*)

lateō, latēre, latuī, —, lurk, lie
hid, be concealed. (*Latent*)

Latinus, -a, -um, adj., LATIN;
masc. plur. as noun, the LATINS

lātitūdō, -inis, f. [lātus], breadth,
width. (*Latitude*)

latrō, -ōnis, m., robber, brigand

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide

- laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus, praise, LAUD. (*Laudatory*)
- lētus, *see* legō
- lēgātīō, -ōnis, *f.* [lēgātus], embassy, LEGATION
- lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [lēgātīō], ambassador, deputy, lieutenant, LEGATUS. (*Legate*)
- legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [legō], (a gathering), LEGION
- legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, gather; select; read
- Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, the Lake of Geneva
- lēnis, -e, *adj.* [lēniter], soft, smooth, gentle, mild. (*Lenient*)
- lēniter, *adv.* [lēnis], gently, moderately
- Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, LENTULUS, a Roman name
- Leōnidās, -ae, *m.*, LEONIDAS, commander of the Greeks at Thermopylae
- lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law. (*Legal*)
- libenter, *adv.*, willingly, gladly
- liber, -brī, *m.*, book. (*Library*)
- liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free. (*Liberal*)
- liberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.* [liber], children
- liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus [liber], set free, free, LIBERATE; with *abl.* of separation
- libertās, -ātis, *f.* [liber], freedom, LIBERTY
- Lichās, -ae, *m.*, LICHAS, an attendant of Hercules
- lignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wooden
- lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood; stake, stick
- Lingonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the LINGONES, a tribe in Gaul
- lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, LANGUAGE
- Linus, -ī, *m.*, LINUS, teacher of Hercules in music
- littera, -ae, *f.*, a LETTER (of the alphabet); *plur.*, LETTER, epistle. (*Literature*)
- lītus, -oris, *n.*, shore. (*Littoral*)
- locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus [locus], place, put, set. (*Locate*)
- locus, -ī, *m.* (*plur.* locī, *m.*, and loca, *n.*), place, position, situation; chance, opportunity. (*Local*)
- locūtus, *see* loquor
- longē, *adv.* [longus], far, far off, by far
- longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [longus], distant, remote, far away
- longitūdō, -inis, *f.*, length. (*Longitude*)
- longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, tedious
- loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk, say. (*Elocution, Eloquent*)
- Lūcānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the LUCANIANS, a people of southern Italy
- lūdus, -ī, *m.*, game, sport
- lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī, —, mourn, mourn for
- lūmen, -inis, *n.* [lūx], light. (*Luminous*)
- lupa, -ae, *f.*, she-wolf
- lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light. (*Lucid*)

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus**

māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, contrivance, MACHINE, engine

magicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, MAGIC

magis, *adv.* [mag(nus)], more, rather

- magister**, -trī, *m.* [*magis*], MASTER, teacher. (*Magistrate*)
- magnificus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*magnus-faciō*], splendid, MAGNIFICENT
- magnitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [*magnus*], greatness, size, MAGNITUDE
- magnopere**, *adv.* [*abl. of magnum opus*], greatly, exceedingly, heartily
- magnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large; loud. (*Magnify*)
- maior**, -ius, *adj.*, *comp. of magnus.* (*Major*)
- male**, *adv.* [*malus*], badly, ill. (*Malevolent*)
- mālō**, mālī, mālūī, — [*magis-volō*], be more willing, prefer, would rather
- malum**, -ī, *n.* [*malus*], bad thing, evil
- malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, evil
- mandō**, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus [*manus-dō*], (put in hand), charge, COMMAND, intrust. (*Mandate*)
- manēō**, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, stay, REMAIN, wait. (*Permanent*)
- manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand; grappling hook; force, band. (*Manual*)
- Mārcius**, Mārcī, *m.*, MARCIUS, a Roman name
- Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, MARCUS, a Roman first name
- mare**, -is, *n.*, sea. (*Marine*)
- maritus**, -ī, *m.*, husband. (*Marital*)
- Mārs**, Mārtis, *m.*, MARS, the god of war. (*Martial*)
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother. (*Maternal*)
- mātrimōnium**, mātrimōnī, *n.* [*māter*], MATRIMONY, marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry
- mātrōna**, -ae, *f.* [*māter*], MATRON, woman
- mātūrō**, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātus, hasten. (*Mature.*) Cf. *properō and contendō*
- maximē**, *adv.* [*maximus*], most, especially, greatly. Cf. *praecipuē*
- maximus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *superl. of magnus.* (*Maximum*)
- mē**, *see ego*
- medicus**, -ī, *m.*, doctor, physician. (*Medicine*)
- medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, middle of; in mediō, between (them); in medium, to the center. (*Medium*)
- Medūsa**, -ae, *f.*, MEDUSA, one of the Gorgons, slain by Perseus
- melior**, -ius, *adj.*, *comp. of bonus*, better. (*Ameliorate*)
- membrum**, -ī, *n.*, limb. (*Member*)
- memoria**, -ae, *f.* [*memorō*], MEMORY
- memorō**, memorāre, memorāvī, memorātus [*memoria*], mention, relate, state. (*Commemorate*)
- mēns**, mentis, *f.*, mind. Cf. *animus*
- mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table
- mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month
- mercātor**, -ōris, *m.*, trader, MERCHANT
- Mercurius**, Mercurī, *m.*, MERCURY, the messenger of the gods
- mergō**, mergere, mersī, mersus, sink. (*Merge*)
- meritum**, -ī, *n.*, thing deserved, deserts, MERIT
- mersus**, *see mergō*
- meus**, -a, -um, *possess. adj. and pron.*, my, mine

- migrō, migrāre, migrāvī, migrātūrus**, depart. (*Migrate*)
- mihi**, *see ego*
- miles, -itis, m.**, soldier. (*Military*)
- militāris, -e, adj.** [*mīles*], MILITARY
- mille, adj., indecl. in sing.; in plur., mīlia, -ium**, thousand; *also (sup-
ply passuum)*, MILES
- Minerva, -ae, f.**, MINERVA, the goddess of wisdom
- minimē, adv.** [*minimus*], least, not at all, by no means
- minimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of parvus**, least, very little. (*Minimum*)
- minor, -us, adj., comp. of parvus**, smaller, lesser. (*Minor, Minus*)
- minus, adv.** [*minor*], less
- mirāculum, -ī, n.** [*mīror*], wonder, marvel, MIRACLE
- mīror, mirārī, mirātus sum [mīrus]**, wonder, wonder at, ADMIRE
- mīrus, -a, -um, adj.** [*mīror*], wonderful, extraordinary
- miser, -era, -erum, adj.**, wretched, unhappy, MISERABLE
- miserē, adv.** [*miser*], wretchedly, MISERABLY
- miserīcordia, -ae, f.**, pity, compassion
- mittō, mittere, misi, missus**, send. (*Mission*)
- modo, adv.** [*modus*], only; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also
- modus, -ī, m.**, way, manner. (*Mood*)
- moenia, -ium, n. plur. [mūniō]**, walls (of a city). *Cf. mūrus*
- moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**, remind, advise, warn. (*Monitor*)
- mōns, montis, m.**, MOUNTAIN, hill. *Cf. collis*
- mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus**, show, point out. (*Demonstrate*)
- mōnstrum, -ī, n.**, MONSTER
- mora, -ae, f.** [*moror*], delay
- morior, morī, mortuus sum (fut. part. moritūrus) [mors]**, die. (*Mortuary*)
- moror, morārī, morātus sum [mora]**, retard, hinder, delay. (*Moratorium*)
- mors, mortis, f.** [*morior*], death. (*Mortal.*) *Cf. nex*
- mortuus, -a, -um, adj.** [*morior*], dead
- mōs, mōris, m.**, manner, habit, custom. (*Moral*)
- moveō, movēre, movī, mōtus**, MOVE
- mox, adv.**, soon, presently
- Mūcius, Mūcī, m.**, MUCIUS, a Roman name
- mulier, -eris, f.**, woman. *Cf. fēmina*
- multitūdō, -inis, f.** [*multus*], great number, MULTITUDE, quantity
- multō, adv.** [*multus*], by much, much
- multum, adv.** [*multus*], much
- multus, -a, -um, adj.**, much; *plur.*, many. (*Multiply*)
- mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (mūniī), mūnītus [moenia]**, fortify, defend
- mūnitiō, -ōnis, f.** [*mūniō*], fortification, defense. (*Munitions*)
- mūnus, -eris, n.**, duty, office
- mūrus, -ī, m.**, wall. (*Mural, Immure.*) *Cf. moenia*
- mūs, mūris, m. and f.**, mouse
- Mūs, Mūris, m.**, MUS, a Roman surname

mūsica, -ae, *f.*, MUSIC

mūtō, **mūtāre**, **mūtāvī**, **mūtātus**,
change, alter. (*Mutation*)

nam, *conj.*, for. *Cf. enim*

narrō, **narrāre**, **narrāvī**, **narrātus**,
tell, relate, NARRATE

nāscor, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**, be born.
(*Native*)

Nāsica, -ae, *m.*, NASICA, a Roman
surname

nātiō, **nōnis**, *f.*, tribe, people, NATION

natō, **natāre**, **natāvī**, **natāturus** [*fre-*
quentative of nō], swim, float.
(*Natatorial*)

nātūra, -ae, *f.* [**nāscor**], (birth),
NATURE, character

nātus, *see nāscor*

nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for nāvita*; *nāvis*],
sailor. (*Nautical*)

nāvigium, **nāvigī**, *n.* [**nāvigō**], boat

nāvigō, **nāvigāre**, **nāvigāvī**, **nāvigā-**
tus [**nāvis-agō**], sail, cruise, NAVI-
GATE

nāvis, -is, *f.* (*acc. -em, -im*; *abl. -ī,*
-e), ship. (*Naval*)

-ne, *interrog. adv.*, *enclitic*, *sign of*
a question

nē, *conj.*, that not, that; lest; **nē**
. . . **quidem**, not even

nec, *see neque*

necesse, *neut. adj.*, *indecl.*, unavoidable,
NECESSARY

necessitās, -ātis, *f.* [**necesse**], need,
NECESSITY

necō, **necāre**, **necāvī**, **necātus** [**nex**],
kill, slay. *Cf. interficiō and occidō*

negōtium, **negōtī**, *n.*, business, labor.
(*Negotiate*)

nēmō, -īni (*dat.*; *no gen. or abl.*), *m.*
and f. [**nē-homō**], no one, nobody,
no man

Neptūnus, -ī, *m.*, NEPTUNE, the god
of the sea

ne-que or nec, *conj.*, and not, nor;
neque . . . neque, neither . . .
nor

Nerviī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the NERVII,
a tribe of northeastern Gaul

Nessus, -ī, *m.*, NESSUS, a centaur
slain by Hercules

neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj. and pron.*
[**nē-uter**], neither (of two). (*Neu-*
tral)

nex, **necis**, *f.* [**necō**], death, slaughter,
murder. *Cf. mors*

nihil, *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing; **nihil cibī**,
no food. (*Nihilist*)

ni-si, *conj.*, if not, unless, except

nix, **nivis**, *f.*, snow

nō, **nāre**, **nāvī**, —, swim

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [**nōscō**, know], well
known, celebrated; of high birth;

NOBLE

nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.* [**nōbitis**], rank,

NOBILITY

noceō, **nocēre**, **nocuī**, **nocitūrus**, do
harm to, hurt, injure; *with dat.*
(*Noxious*)

noctū, *adv.* [**nox**], by night

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, — [**nē-volē**], be
unwilling, will not, not wish

nōmen, -inis, *n.* [**nōscō**, know], (that
by which a thing is known), name.
(*Nominal*)

nōminō, **nōmināre**, **nōmināvī**, **nōmi-**
nātus [**nōmen**], name, call. (*Nomi-*
nate)

- nōn**, *adv.* [*nē-ūnum*], not; **nōn iam**, no longer; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also. (*Nonentity.*) *Cf.* **haud**
- nōn-dum**, *adv.*, not yet
- nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj. and pron.*, (not none), some, several
- nōs**, *see ego*
- noster**, -tra, -trum, *possess. adj. and pron.* [*nōs*], our, ours; **nostrī**, our men. (*Nostrum*)
- novem**, *adj., indecl.*, nine
- novus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, new. (*Novelty*)
- nox**, *noctis, f.*, night. (*Nocturnal*)
- nūbēs**, -is, *f.*, cloud
- nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj. and pron.* [*nē-ūllus*], no, none, no one. (*Nul-lity*)
- num**, *interrog. adv.*, in an indir. question, whether
- Numa Pompilius**, *Numae Pompilī, m.*, NUMA POMPILIUS, the second king of Rome
- numerus**, -ī, *m.*, NUMBER. (*Nu-meral*)
- numquam**, *adv.* [*nē-umquam*], never
- nunc**, *adv.*, now. (*Quidnunc.*) *Cf. iam*
- nūntiō**, **nūntiāre**, **nūntiāvī**, **nūntiātus** [*nūntius*], report, ANNOUNCE. (*An-nunciation*)
- nūntius**, **nūntī**, *m.* [*nūntiō*], bearer of news, messenger. (*Nuncio*)
- nūper**, *adv.* [*for noviper; novus*], recently, lately
- nympha**, -ae, *f.*, NYMPH
- ob**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
- ob-**, *prefix*, against, opposite
- ob-iciō**, **obicere**, **obiēcī**, **obiectus** [*-iaciō*], (throw in the way), throw between, interpose. (*Object*)
- obiectus**, *see obiciō*
- oblātus**, *see offerō*
- obnoxius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, liable to, exposed to. (*Obnoxious*)
- obscūrō**, **obscūrāre**, **obscūrāvī**, **obscūrātus**, darken, conceal. (*Obscure*)
- obses**, -idis, *m. and f.* [*ob-sedeō*], (one who sits or remains as a pledge), hostage
- ob-sideō**, **obsidēre**, **obsēdī**, **obsessus** [*-sedeō*], (sit down against), BE-SIEGE, beset, blockade. (*Obsess.*) *Cf. oppugnō*
- obsolētus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, old. (*Obso-lete*)
- ob-struō**, **obstruere**, **obstrūxī**, **ob-strūctus**, (build up against), block up, bar, barricade, OBSTRUCT
- ob-stupefaciō**, **obstupefacere**, **obstupefēcī**, **obstupefactus**, astonish, amaze, astound
- ob-tineō**, **obtinēre**, **obtinuī**, **obtentus** [*-teneō*], (hold against), possess, occupy, hold. (*Obtain*)
- occāsiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, chance, opportunity. (*Occasion.*) *Cf. potestās*
- occāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, setting (of the sun)
- oc-cidō**, **occidēre**, **occidī**, **occisus** [*ob-caedō*], cut down, slay, kill. *Cf. interficiō and necō*
- occupō**, **occupāre**, **occupāvī**, **occupātus** [*ob-capiō*], take possession of, seize; OCCUPY
- oc-currō**, **occurrere**, **occurrī**, **occurrus** [*ob-*], run toward; meet, fall in with. (*Occur*)

- ōceanus, -ī, m.,** OCEAN
- Ocelum, -ī, n.,** OCELUM, a town in Cisalpine Gaul
- octingenti, -ae, -a, adj.** [*octō-centum*], eight hundred
- octō, adj., indecl.,** eight. (*Octave*)
- octōgintā, adj., indecl.,** eighty
- oculus, -ī, m.,** eye. (*Ocular*)
- odium, odi, n.,** hatred, enmity. (*Odium*)
- Oeneus, -ī, m.,** ŒNEUS, father of Deianira
- Oeta, -ae, f.,** CETA, a mountain in Greece
- of-fendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus** [*ob-*], strike against; come on, find. (*Offend*)
- of-ferō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus** [*ob-*], OFFER, present
- officina, -ae, f.,** workshop, laboratory
- officium, offici, n.,** duty, task. (*Office*)
- ōlim, adv.** [*olle, old form of ille*], (at that time); formerly, once; once upon a time. Cf. *aliquandō*
- Olympus, -ī, m.,** OLYMPUS, a mountain in Greece, the abode of the gods
- o-mittō, omittere, omisī, omissus** [*ob-*], let go by, disregard, neglect, OMIT
- omnīnō, adv.** [*omnis*], wholly, altogether, entirely
- omnis, -e, adj.,** whole, all, every. (*Omnipresent.*) Cf. *cūctus, tōtus, and ūniversus*
- opera, -ae, f.** [*opus*], labor, care, work. (*Opera.*) Cf. *labor and opus*
- oppidānus, -ī, m.** [*oppidum*], townsman
- oppidum, -ī, n.,** town, stronghold
- op-primō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus** [*ob-premō, press*], overcome, crush, OPPRESS
- op-pugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus** [*ob-*], attack, assault, besiege. Cf. *expugnō and obsideō*
- (ops), opis, f.,** aid, help. Cf. *auxilium*
- optimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of bonus, best.** (*Optimist*)
- opus, -eris, n.,** work, labor. (*Operate.*) Cf. *labor*
- ōrāculum, -ī, n.** [*ōrō*], ORACLE
- ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.** [*ōrō*], speech, plea; ORATION
- orbis, -is, m.,** circle, ORB, world; **orbis terrārum,** earth, world. (*Orbit*)
- orbō, orbāre, orbāvī, orbātus,** deprive, bereave
- ōrdinō, ordināre, ordināvī, ordinātus** [*ōrdō*], plan, arrange. (*Coordinate, Ordain*)
- ōrdō, -inis, m.,** rank, ORDER; **ex ōrdine,** in succession, one after another; **extrā ōrdinem,** out of the ranks. (*Extraordinary*)
- Orgetorix, -igis, m.,** ORGETORIX, a Helvetian chief
- orior, orīrī, ortus sum,** arise, spring, descend (from); **ortā lūce,** at day-break
- ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī, ōrnātus,** ADORN, ORNAMENT, deck
- ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus,** (speak), beg, pray, entreat, plead. (*Oratory*)
- ortus, see orior**
- os-tendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus** [*ob(s)-*], stretch out; show, display. (*Ostensible*)

ostium, ōstī, n., mouth

ovis, -is, f., sheep

P., abbreviation for **Pūblius**

pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus, subdue, **PACIFY**

paene, adv., nearly, almost

palaestra, -ae, f., wrestling school, gymnasium

Palātinus, -a, -um, adj., **PALATINE**, of the **PALATINE** (one of the hills of Rome)

pālus, -ī, m., stake, **PALE**

palūs, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh

parēns, -entis, m. and f., **PARENT**

pārēō, pārēre, pārui, —, (come forth, **APPEAR**), be obedient to, obey; *with dat.*

pariter, adv., equally; **pariter ac**, equally with, as well as

parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus, make ready, **PREPARE FOR**, **PREPARE**

pars, partis, f., **PART**, share; direction, side. (**Partial**)

parum, adv., too little, not enough

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [*diminutive of parvus*], very small, slight, insignificant

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, little

passus, see patior

passus, -ūs, m. [*pateō*], (a stretching out of the feet in walking), step, **PACE**; **mille passuum**, **MILE**

pāstor, -ōris, m., (feeder), shepherd. (**Pastor**)

pate-faciō, patefacere, patefēci, patefactus [*pateō*], (make open), open, throw open

pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open, be open, be exposed; extend. (**Patent**)

pater, -tris, m., father. (**Paternal**)

patior, pati, passus sum, bear, suffer, allow, permit. (**Patient, Passive**)

patria, -ae, f. [*pater*], native land, country. (**Patriotism**)

patrimōnium, patrimōnī, n. [*pater*], property. (**Patrimony**)

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (*generally plur.*), few, little. (**Paucity**)

paulō, adv., by a little, little

paululum, adv. [*diminutive of paulum*], a very little, somewhat

paulum, adv., a little, somewhat

pauper, pauperis, adj., **POOR**. (**Pauper**)

paupertās, -ātis, f. [*pauper*], want, **POVERTY**

pavor, -ōris, m., fear, dread, alarm. *Cf. terror and timor*

pāx, pācis, f., **PEACE**. (**Pacify**)

pectus, -oris, n., breast. (**Pectoral**)

pecūnia, -ae, f. [*pecus*], money. (**Pecuniary**)

pecus, -oris, n., cattle, flock

pedes, -itis, m. [*pēs*], foot soldier

peditātus, -ūs, m. [*pedes*], infantry

peior, -ius, adj., *comp. of malus*, worse

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, beat, drive, defeat. (**Expel, Pulse**)

per, prep. with acc., through, by, by means of, on account of. (**Percentage**)

peragrō, peragrāre, peragrāvī, peragrātus [*per agrum*], wander through, pass over, traverse. *Cf. perlūstrō*

per-cipiō, percipere, percēpī, percep-tus [-*capīō*], PERCEIVE, feel. (*Perception.*) *Cf.* *sentīō*

percussus, see percutiō

per-cutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus [-*quatīō*, strike], hit, strike, run through. (*Percussion*)

per-dō, perdere, perdidī, perditus [-*dō*, put], lose. (*Perdition.*) *Cf.* *āmittō*

per-dūcō, perducere, perdūxī, perductus, lead through, CONDUCT, bring; construct

per-ficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus [-*faciō*], accomplish; PERFECT

perfrāctus, see perfringō

per-fringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus [-*frangō*, break], break to pieces, shatter, completely wreck

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrētūrus

[*per-regō*], go on, proceed, hasten.

Cf. *prōcēdō and prōgredior*

periculum, -ī, n. [*experior*], trial, at-

tempt; risk, danger, PERIL

per-lūstrō, perlūstrāre, perlūstrāvī,

perlūstrātus, wander through, view all over, examine, survey.

Cf. *peragrō*

per-maneō, permanēre, permānsī, permānsūrus, REMAIN

per-mittō, permittere, permisī, permissus, allow, grant, suffer, PERMIT; yield, give up; *with dat. of person.* (*Permission*)

per-moveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, excite

per-scribō, perscribere, perscripsī, perscriptus, write at length, DESCRIBE fully

Persēs, -ae, m., a PERSIAN

Perseus, -ī, m., PERSEUS, a hero of Greek mythology

perspectus, see perspicīō

per-spiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus [-*speciō*, look], (see through), see clearly, ascertain. (*Perspective*)

per-suādeō, persuādēre, persuāsi, persuāsus, PERSUADE; *with dat. of person.* (*Persuasion*)

per-terreō, perterrēre, perterrui, perterritus, thoroughly frighten, alarm

pertinācia, -ae, f., perseverance; ob-

stinacy, PERTINACITY

per-tineō, pertinēre, pertinui, —

[-*teneō*], extend, PERTAIN to

pertrāctus, see pertrahō

per-trahō, pertrahere, pertrāxi, per-

trāctus, (drag through), drag, drag

along

per-turbō, perturbāre, perturbāvi, per-

turbātus, DISTURB, arouse. (*Per-*

turbation)

per-veniō, pervenire, pervēnī, per-

ventūrus, come up, arrive, reach

pēs, pedis, m., foot; **pedem referre,**

retreat, fall back. (*Pedal*)

pessimus, -a, -um, adj., *superl. of*

malus, worst. (*Pessimist*)

petō, petere, petivī (petiī), petitus,

seek, demand, ask for, ask, beg;

attack. (*Petition.*) *Cf.* **postulō,**

quaerō, and rogō

pilum, -ī, n., javelin. (*Pile-driver*)

pinguis, -e, adj., fat, heavy

pirāta, -ae, m., PIRATE

piscātor, -ōris, m., fisherman. (*Pis-*

catorial)

- placeō, placēre, placuī, placitūrus**, PLEASE; *with dat.* (*Placid*)
- plānitēs, -ēi, f.**, (a flatness), level ground, PLAIN
- plēbs, plēbis, f.**, the common people, PLEBEIANS
- plōrō, plōrāre, plōrāvī, plōrātus**, bewail, lament, grieve. (*Deplore*)
- plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of multus**, most, very many; **plūrium posse**, be very powerful, have most influence
- plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of multus**, more; *plur.*, more, many. (*Plural*)
- poena, -ae, f.** [*pūniō*], fine, punishment; **poenās dare**, suffer punishment. (*Penalty, Subpoena*)
- Poenus, -i, m.**, a Carthaginian
- poēta, -ae, m.**, POET
- polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**, promise; *rarely as pass.*, be promised
- Polydectēs, -is, m.**, POLYDECTES, a king of Seriphos
- Polyphēmus, -i, m.**, POLYPHEMUS, a Cyclops
- pōnum, -i, n.**, apple. (*Pomology*)
- pondus, -eris, n.**, weight, bulk. (*Ponderous*)
- pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**, put, place, set, set up, pitch (camp); *pass.*, lie. (*Position, Postpone*)
- pōns, pontis, m.**, bridge. (*Pontoon*)
- populor, populārī, populātus sum**, lay waste, devastate, plunder, pillage. (*Depopulate*)
- populus, -i, m.**, PEOPLE. (*Populous*)
- Porsena, -ae, m.**, PORSENA, a king of Clusium, in Etruria
- porta, -ae, f.**, gate, door. (*Portal*)
- portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus**, carry, bring. (*Import.*) *Cf.* **ferō**
- portus, -ūs, m.**, harbor, PORT
- poscō, poscere, poposci, —, demand.** *Cf.* **postulō**
- positus, see pōnō**
- possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can; plūrimum posse**, be very powerful, have most influence. (*Possible*)
- post, prep. with acc.**, after, behind; *adv.*, afterwards. (*Postscript*)
- post-eā, adv.**, afterwards
- (posterus), -a, -um, adj.** [*post*], following, next. (*Postern, Posterity*)
- post-quam, conj.**, after
- postridiē, adv.** [*posterō diē*], on the next day
- postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus**, ask, request, demand. (*Postulate.*) *Cf.* **petō, quaerō, and rogō**
- potestās, -ātis, f.** [*possum*], power, authority; opportunity, permission
- prae-, prefix**, before, very
- prae-acūtus, -a, -um, adj.**, sharpened at the end, pointed
- praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus** [*prae-habēō*], hold forth, offer, furnish; cause, render
- praecipuē, adv.** [*praecipuus*], chiefly, especially, particularly. *Cf.* **maximē**
- praecipuus, -a, -um, adj.**, particular; of high rank
- prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj.**, very splendid, glorious
- praeda, -ae, f.** [*praedor*], booty, spoil, PREY. (*Predatory*)

praedor, praedāri, praedātus sum
[*praeda*], rob, plunder. (*Depredation*)

prae-ficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus [-*faciō*], put in command. (*Prefect*)

prae-mittō, praemittere, praemisi, praemissus, send ahead

praemium, praemī, n., reward, prize. (*Premium*)

Praeneste, -is, n. and f., PRÆNESTE, a town of Italy

praesēns, -entis, adj., instant, immediate, PRESENT

praeses, -idis, m. and f. [*prae-sedeō*], (one who sits before), protector, guardian

praesidium, praesidi, n. [*praesideō*, sit before], defense, help, protection, support, guard. Cf. *auxilium and subsidium*

prae-stō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitus, stand out, surpass, be superior to, be preferable; perform, furnish. Cf. *superō and vincō*

prae-sum, praesesse, praefui, praefuturus, be before, be at the head of, command; *with dat.*

praeter-eā, adv., besides, moreover
praeter-eō, praeterire, praeterii, praeteritus, go by, pass by. (*Pret-erit*)

prehendō,prehendere,prehendī,prehēnsus,grasp, seize. (*Comprehend*)

pretiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [*pretium*], costly, valuable, PRECIOUS

pretium, preti, n., PRICE, value; reward, ransom. (*Appreciate*)

prex, precis, f., PRAYER, entreaty. (*Imprecate*)

primō, adv. [*primus*], at first, first, in the first place

primum, adv. [*primus*], first, at first
primus, -a, -um, adj., first, foremost. (*Prime, Primal*)

princeps, -cipis, m. [*primus-capiō*], (taking the first place), chief, leader. (*Prince, Principal.*) Cf.

dux

Priscus, -i, m., Tarquinius PRISCUS, one of the seven kings of Rome
prius, adv., before, sooner, previously

prius-quam, conj., sooner than, before

privātus, -a, -um, adj. [*privō*], PRIVATE

privō, privāre, privāvī, privātus, deprive; *with abl.*

prō, prep. with abl., before, in behalf of, for, instead of; considering; in accordance with

probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus, PROVE, APPROVE

prō-cēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessi, prōcessūrus, come forward, go forward, advance, PROCEED. Cf. *prōgredior and pergō*

procul, adv., far, afar off

prō-dūcō, prōducere, prōdūxī, prōductus, lead forth, bring forth. (*Produce*)

proelium, proeli, n., battle, combat, skirmish. Cf. *pugna*

profectus, see proficiscor

proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, set out, march, go. Cf. *exeō and ēgredior*

- prō-gredior, prōgredī, prōgressus**
sum [-*gradior*, go], go forward, advance, PROGRESS. Cf. *prōcēdō*
- prōgressus**, see *prōgredior*
- pro-hibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus** [-*habeō*], prevent, keep from, PROHIBIT
- prō-iciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectus** [-*iaciō*], throw, cast. (*Projectile*)
- prō-mittō, prōmittere, prōmisi, prōmissus**, put forth, PROMISE
- prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsi, prōmptus** [*prō-emō*], take out, bring forth. (*Prompt*)
- prō-moveō, prōmovēre, prōmōvī, prōmōtus**, MOVE forward, advance. (*Promote*)
- prōmunturium, prōmunturī, n.**, PROMONTORY
- prope, prep. with acc.**, near, near to; *adv.*, close at hand, nearly, almost
- properō, properāre, properāvī, prōperātūrus**, hasten. Cf. *mātūrō and contendō*
- propinquus, -a, -um, adj.** [*prope*], near. (*Propinquity*)
- propior, -ius, adj., comp.** [*prope*], nearer, close
- propius, adv.** [*propior*], nearer
- prō-pōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus**, put before, set forth; make known, declare, PROPOSE. (*Proposition*)
- propter, prep. with acc.**, on account of
- prō-sternō, prōsternere, prōstrāvī, prōstrātus**, strike down, knock down
- prōstrātus, -a, -um, adj.** [*prōsternō*], thrown down, PROSTRATE
- prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus**, be before, be useful to, benefit, avail; *with dat.*
- prōvectus**, see *prōvehō*
- prō-vehō, prōvehere, prōvexī, prōvectus**, carry forward, carry off; *pass.*, advance, proceed
- prōvincia, -ae, f.**, PROVINCE
- prō-vocō, prōvocāre, prōvocāvī, prōvocātus**, call forth, challenge, invite. (*Provoke*)
- proximus, -a, -um, adj.**, *superl.* of *propior*, nearest, next. (*Proximity*)
- pūblicē, adv.**, in the name of the state, PUBLICLY
- Pūblicola, -ae, m.**, PUBLICOLA, a Roman surname
- puella, -ae, f.** [*diminutive of puer*], girl, maiden
- puer, -erī, m.**, boy, child. (*Puerile*)
- pugna, -ae, f.** [*pugnō*], battle, contest, fight. Cf. *proelium*. (*Pugnacious*)
- pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātūrus** [*pugna*], fight. Cf. *dimicō*
- pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj.**, beautiful, fair, pretty. (*Pulchritude*)
- pūniō, pūnire, pūnivī (pūni), pūnitus** [*poena*], PUNISH
- putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus**, think, believe, reckon. (*Compute*.) Cf. *arbitror and existimō*
- Pyrrhus, -ī, m.**, PYRRHUS, a king of Epirus
- Pŷthia, -ae, f.**, the PYTHIA, the inspired prophetess of Apollo at Delphi

quā, *adv.* [*quā*], where
quadrāgintā, *adj.*, *indecl.*, forty
quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī** (**quaesii**),
quaesitus, seek, ask, *inQUIRE*.

Cf. petō and rogō

quālis, **-e**, *interrog. and rel. adj.*,
 what sort of. (*Quality*)

quam, *adv.* [*quā*], than, how

quam-quam, *conj.*, though, although
quandō, *adv.*, at any time

quantus, **-a**, **-um**, *interrog. and rel. adj.* [*quam*], how great, how much;
 as great as, as much as. (*Quantity*)

quā-rē, *adv.*, for which reason,
 wherefore, therefore

quārtus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [*quattuor*],
 fourth. (*Quart*)

qua-si, *adv.*, as if

quattuor, *adj.*, *indecl.*, four

quattuor-decim, *adj.*, *indecl.* [*-decem*],
 fourteen

-que, *conj.*, *enclitic*, and. *Cf. et and atque (ac)*

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron. and adj.*,
 who, which, what, that

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (**quīdam**), *indef. pron. and adj.*, a
 certain one, certain, a

quidem, *adv.* (*never the first word*),
 indeed, certainly, in truth; **nē**

. . . **quidem**, not . . . even

quīēs, **-ētis**, *f.*, QUIET, rest, repose

quīnquāgintā, *adj.*, *indecl.* [*quīnque*],
 fifty

quīnque, *adj.*, *indecl.*, five. (*Quīnquennial*)

quīntus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [*quīnque*],
 fifth

Quirīnālis, **-is**, *m.*, the QUIRINAL,
 one of the hills of Rome

quis (**quī**), **quae**, **quid** (**quod**), *interrog. pron. and adj.*, who?
 which? what?

quisquam, —, **quidquam**, *indef. pron. and adj.* (*no plur.*), any one,
 anything (at all), any

quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque** (**quodque**), *indef. pron. and adj.*, each
 one, each, every

quī-vīs, **quae-vīs**, **quod-vīs** (**quīd-vīs**), *indef. pron. and adj.*, any one,
 anything (you wish), any what-
 ever

quō, *interrog. and rel. adv.* [*quis*,
quī], whither, where

quod, *conj.* [*quā*], because, in that

quoque, *conj.* (*after an emphatic word*), also, too. *Cf. etiam*

quot, *interrog. and rel. adj.*, *indecl.*,
 how many? as many as

rapīna, **-ae**, *f.* [*rapīō*], robbery, plun-
 dering. (*Rapine*)

rapīō, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptus**, seize;
 snatch, drag. (*Rapt, Rapture*)

rārō, *adv.*, seldom, RARELY

ratiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, (a reckoning), reason,
 method, plan, way, conduct.
 (*Ratio*)

re- (**red-**), *prefix*, back, again

re-cēdō, **recēdere**, **recessī**, **recessūrus**,
 withdraw. (*Recede, Recess*)

re-cipiō, **recipere**, **recēpī**, **receptus**
 [**-capīō**], take back, RECEIVE, re-
 cover; **sē recipere**, withdraw,
 retreat, betake one's self. (*Re-
 ception*)

- rēctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*regō*], straight, DIRECT, right
- re-cumbō**, recumbere, recubūi, —, lie down, sink down. (*Recumbent*)
- re-currō**, recurrere, recurri, —, (run back), retire, return. (*Recur*)
- re-cūsō**, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus [*causa*], decline, refuse
- red-dō**, reddere, reddidī, redditus [*re(d)-dō*, put], give back, return, RENDER, make
- red-eō**, redire, rediī, reditūrus [*re(d)-*], go back, return
- red-imō**, redimere, redēmī, redēptus [*re(d)-emō*], buy back, purchase, REDEEM, ransom. (*Redemption*)
- reditus**, -ūs, *m.* [*redeō*], return
- re-dūcō**, reducere, redūxī, reductus, lead back, bring back. (*Reduce*)
- re-ferō**, referre, rettulī, relātus, bring back; return, repay; report, announce; **pedem referre**, withdraw, retreat, fall back. (*Refer, Relate*)
- refrāctus**, *see* refringō
- re-fringō**, refringere, refrēgī, refrāctus [*-frangō*], break down, break open. (*Refraction*)
- re-fugiō**, refugere, refūgī, —, flee for safety, flee, take to flight. (*Refuge*)
- rēgīna**, -ae, *f.* [*regō*], (the ruling one), queen
- regiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, place, REGION, country
- rēgius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*rēx*], the king's, of the king, royal
- rēgnō**, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātūrus [*rēgnum*], rule, REIGN
- rēgnum**, -ī, *n.* [*rēx*], kingdom
- regō**, regere, rēxī, rēctus [*rēx*], rule
- re-iciō**, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus [*-iaciō*], throw back, drive back, hurl back. (*Reject*)
- re-lābor**, relābī, relāpsus sum, (slide back), flow back, subside. (*Relapse*)
- re-linquō**, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, leave behind, leave, abandon. (*Relinquish*)
- reliquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, remaining, rest of; *plur. as noun*, the rest. (*Relic.*) *Cf.* cēterī
- re-mandō**, remandāre, remandāvī, remandātus, send back word. (*Remand*)
- re-moveō**, removēre, remōvī, remōtus, (move back), REMOVE. (*Remote*)
- re-mūneror**, remūnerārī, remūnerātus sum, repay, reward. (*Remunerate*)
- Remus**, -ī, *m.*, REMUS, brother of Romulus
- rēmus**, -ī, *m.*, oar
- re-nūntiō**, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātus, report, ANNOUNCE. (*Renunciation*)
- re-parō**, reparāre, reparāvī, reparātus, renew, revive. (*Repair*)
- re-pellō**, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, drive away, cast down, deprive; REPULSE, REPEL
- repentīnō**, *adv.* [*repentīnus*], suddenly, unexpectedly
- repentīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden
- re-periō**, reperire, repperī, repertus [*-pariō*, bring forth], find, discover, ascertain. *Cf.* invenīō
- repertor**, -ōris, *m.* [*reperiō*], discoverer, inventor

re-pleō, replēre, replēvī, replētus, fill up again. (*Replete*)
re-pōnō, repōnere, reposuī, repositus, put away, store, keep
re-portō, reportāre, reportāvī, reportātus, bring back, win, gain. (*Report.*) Cf. *referō*
re-poscō, repositere, —, —, demand back, ask for, claim
repositus, see *repōnō*
re-prehēdō, reprehendere, reprehēdī, reprehēnsus, find fault with, blame. (*Reprehend*)
re-prōmittō, reprōmittere, reprōmisi, reprōmissus, promise in return
repulsus, see *repellō*
rēs, rei, f., thing, event, circumstance, affair, scheme, cause, matter, fact; **rēs pūblica**, REPUBLIC, state, commonwealth; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply, provisions; **quā rē**, wherefore. (*Real, Rebus*)
re-scindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescisus, cut off, break down, demolish. (*Rescind*)
rescissus, see *rescindō*
re-sistō, resistere, restitī, —, RESIST, oppose; *with dat.*
re-spondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus, (promise in return), answer, reply, RESPOND
respōnsum, -i, n. [*respondeō*], reply, RESPONSE
re-stituō, restituere, restitūī, restitūtus [*-statuō*, set up], replace, restore. (*Restitution*)
re-tineō, retinēre, retinūī, retentus [*-teneō*], keep back, reserve. (*Retain*)

reversus, see *revertō*
re-vertō, revertere, revertī, reversus (*or, in the present system, commonly revertor, etc., deponent*), turn back, return. (*Revert*)
rēx, rēgis, m. [*regō*], (ruler), king. (*Regal*)
Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae, f., RHEA SILVIA, a priestess of Vesta, and mother of Romulus and Remus
Rhēnus, -i, m., the RHINE
Rhodanus, -i, m., the RHONE
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, risus, smile, laugh at, laugh. (*Deride*)
rīpa, -ae, f., bank. (*Riparian*)
rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, ask, question. Cf. *quaerō, petō, and postulo*
rogus, -i, m., funeral pile, pyre
Rōma, -ae, f., ROME
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [*Rōma*], ROMAN; *masc. as noun*, a ROMAN
Rōmulus, -i, m., ROMULUS, first king of Rome
rūpēs, -is, f., steep rock, cliff. Cf. *saxum*
rūrsus, adv. [*for reversus*], (turned back), again
Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., the SABINES, a tribe of Italy
sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., SACRED
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [*sacer*], priest, priestess. (*Sacerdotal*)
sacrificium, sacrifici, n. [*sacrificō*], SACRIFICE
sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī, sacrificātus [*sacer-faciō*], SACRIFICE
sacrum, -i, n. [*sacer*], shrine

- saepe**, *adv.*, often, frequently
- saepiō**, **saepire**, **saepsī**, **saeptus**, (hedge in), surround, fortify, guard
- saevus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, cruel, savage, fierce. *Cf. atrōx and trux*
- sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow. (*Sagittarius*)
- saltus**, -ūs, *m.*, forest, glade, thicket
- salūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, SAFETY, welfare; greeting
- Samnitēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, the SAMNITES, a tribe of Italy
- sanguis**, -inis, *m.*, blood. (*Sanguinary*)
- Santonēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, the SANTONES, a tribe of Gaul
- satis**, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently. (*Satisfy*)
- saxum**, -ī, *n.*, stone, rock. *Cf. rūpēs*
- scelus**, -eris, *n.*, wickedness, crime
- sciō**, **scīre**, **scīvi** (**scī**), **scītus**, know, know how. (*Science.*) *Cf. cognōscō*
- Scipiō**, -ōnis, *m.*, SCIPIO, a famous Roman general
- scriba**, -ae, *m.* [**scribō**], writer, clerk, secretary. (*Scribe*)
- scribō**, **scribere**, **scripsī**, **scriptus**, write. (*Scripture*)
- scūtum**, -ī, *n.*, shield
- sē**, **sēsē**, *see sui*
- sectiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, (a cutting), sale of confiscated goods, booty. (*Section*)
- secundus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sequor**], following, next; SECOND
- sed**, *conj.*, but. *Cf. autem*
- sēdecim**, *adj.*, *indecl.* [**sex-decem**], sixteen
- sedeō**, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessūrus** [**sēdēs**], sit. (*Sedentary*)
- sēdēs**, -is, *f.* [**sedeō**], seat, dwelling, perch. (*See of a bishop*)
- sēditiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, discord, revolt, SEDITION
- Segusiāvī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the SEGUSIAVI, a tribe of Gaul
- semper**, *adv.*, always, ever
- senātor**, -ōris, *m.* [**senātus**], SENATOR
- senātus**, -ūs, *m.* [**senātor**], council of elders, SENATE
- senectūs**, -ūtis, *f.* [**senex**, old], old age
- senior**, -ōris, *m.* [*comp. of senex*, old], elder. (*Senior*)
- sentiō**, **sentire**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, feel, know (by the senses), see, perceive. (*Sense.*) *Cf. percipiō*
- sepeliō**, **sepelire**, **sepelivī** (**sepelii**), **sepultus**, bury, inter. (*Sepulture*)
- septem**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, seven
- septimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**septem**], seventh
- Sēquani**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the SEQUANI, a tribe of Gaul
- sequor**, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, follow. (*Prosecute*)
- Seriphus**, -ī, *f.*, SERIPHOS, a small island east of Greece
- serpens**, -entis, *m.*, SERPENT, snake
- servitūs**, -ūtis, *f.* [**servus**], slavery, SERVITUDE
- Servius Tullius**, **Servi Tullī**, *m.*, SERVIUS TULLIUS, one of the kings of Rome
- servō**, **servāre**, **servāvī**, **servātus**, save, keep, PRESERVE
- servus**, -ī, *m.*, slave, SERVANT
- sex**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, six
- sī**, *conj.*, if, whether
- sic**, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way. *Cf. ita and tam*

- siccus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry; in **siccō**, on dry ground. (*Desiccate*)
- Sicilia**, -ae, *f.*, SICILY, an island off the coast of Italy
- signum**, -ī, *n.*, mark, SIGN, ENSIGN, SIGNAL
- silva**, -ae, *f.*, wood, forest. (*Silvan*)
- similis**, -e, *adj.* [*simul*], like, resembling, SIMILAR
- simul**, *adv.* [*similis*], at the same time; **simul ac**, as soon as
- sine**, *prep.* with *abl.*, without. (*Sinecure*)
- sinister**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left (hand). (*Sinister*)
- sinus**, -ūs, *m.*, lap, bosom
- situs**, -a, -um, *adj.*, placed, set, lying, SITUATED
- socius**, sociī, *m.*, comrade, companion, ally. (*Social*)
- sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, sun. (*Solar*)
- sollicitō**, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, sollicitātus, stir, arouse, tempt. (*Solicit*)
- sōlus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, single; SOLE
- solvō**, solvere, solvī, solūtus, loose, loosen; melt; break; pay. (*Solve*)
- somnus**, -ī, *m.*, sleep. (*Somnolent*)
- sonitus**, -ūs, *m.*, SOUND, noise, din, clash
- soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister. (*Sorority*)
- Sparta**, -ae; *f.*, SPARTA, a city of Greece
- Spartānus**, -ī, *m.*, a SPARTAN
- spatium**, spatī, *n.*, room, SPACE, distance, time
- speciēs**, (-ēī), *f.* [*spectō*], sight, appearance, pretense. (*Species*)
- spectāculum**, -ī, *n.* [*spectō*], a show, exhibition. (*Spectacle*)
- spectō**, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus, look at, behold, witness. (*Spectator*)
- speculum**, -ī, *n.* [*spectō*], mirror
- spēlunca**, -ae, *f.*, cave, cavern, den
- spernō**, spernere, sprēvī, sprētus, despise, reject, scorn, spurn
- spērō**, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus [*spēs*], hope, hope for
- spēs**, speī, *f.* [*spērō*], hope; in **spem venīre**, to entertain hopes
- spondeō**, spondēre, sponpondī, spōnsus, pledge, promise. (*Spouse*)
- sponte** (suā), *only abl.*, of (one's own) accord. (*Spontaneous*)
- statim**, *adv.* [*stō*], (standing there), on the spot, immediately, at once. *Cf.* **subitō**
- statua**, -ae, *f.* [*statuō*, set up], (the thing set up), STATUE
- stella**, -ae, *f.*, star. (*Constellation, Stellar*)
- stipendium**, stipendī, *n.*, wages, pay; military service. (*Stipend*)
- stō**, stāre, steti, statūrus, stand
- studeō**, studēre, studuī, — [*studium*], desire, be eager for; with *dat.* (*Student*)
- studiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*studium*], eager, desirous, STUDIOUS
- studium**, studī, *n.* [*studeō*], zeal, eagerness; STUDY
- stupeō**, stupēre, stupuī, —, be astonished, be amazed. (*Stupefy*)
- suādeō**, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus, advise, urge; with *dat.* of *person.* (*Suasion*)
- sub**, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*, under, up to; **sub vesperum**, toward evening. (*Subway*)

sub-dō, *subdere*, *subdidī*, *subditus* [-*dō*, put], put under, set to
sub-eō, *subire*, *subiī*, *subitus*, go under, go up to, enter; undergo
sub-iciō, *subicere*, *subiēcī*, *subiectus* [-*iaciō*], put under, place under; with *dat.* of the object under which. (*Subject*)
sub-igō, *subigere*, *subēgī*, *subāctus* [-*agō*], bring under, subdue
subitō, *adv.*, **SUDDENLY**, unexpectedly. *Cf.* *statim*
sublātus, *see tollō*
sublicius, -a, -um, *adj.*, resting on piles; *pōns Sublicius*, the Sublician bridge, the pile bridge
subsidiū, *subsidiī*, *n.*, help, aid, relief. (*Subsidy*.) *Cf.* *auxilium* and *praesidium*
suc-cēdō, *succēdere*, *successī*, *successūrus* [*sub-*], come up, approach, follow. (*Succeed*)
Suessa Pōmētia, *Suessae Pōmētia*, *f.*, **SUESSA POMETIA**, a city of Italy
suī, *reflex. pron.*, of himself (herself, itself, themselves). (*Suicide*)
Sulpicius, *Sulpiciī*, *m.*, a Roman name
sum, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*, be, exist. (*Essence, Future*)
summus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *superl.* of *superus*, highest, greatest, extreme. (*Sum, Consummate*)
sūmō, *sūmere*, *sūmpsi*, *sūmptus*, take, take up; **ASSUME**
super, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*, over, above, upon. (*Superhuman*)
super-incidō, *superincidere*, —, —, fall on from above

superior, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* of *superus*, higher, **SUPERIOR**
superō, *superāre*, *superāvī*, *superātus* [*super*], pass over; surpass, outdo, overcome, conquer. (*Insuperable*.) *Cf.* *praestō* and *vincō*
super-sum, *superesse*, *superfuī*, *superfutūrus*, be over, be left over; survive; with *dat.*
(superus), -a, -um, *adj.* [*super*], above
supplicium, *supplicii*, *n.*, punishment, torture
suprā, *adv.* [*superus*], above, before
suprēmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *superl.* of *superus*, last. (*Supreme*)
sus-cipiō, *suscipere*, *suscēpi*, *suscēptus* [*sub(s)-cipiō*], take up, undertake, receive. (*Susceptible*)
suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [*suspīcor*], **SUSPICION**
suspīcor, *suspīcārī*, *suspīcātus sum* [*suspiciō*], suspect, mistrust
sus-tineō, *sustinēre*, *sustinuī*, *sustentus* [*sub(s)-teneō*], hold up, bear, endure; support; withstand, **SUSTAIN**
suus, -a, -um, *possess. and reflex. adj. and pron.* [*suī*], his, her, hers, its, their, theirs
tālāria, -ium, *n. plur.*, winged shoes
tālis, -e, *adj.*, such
tam, *adv.*, so, so much. *Cf.* *ita* and *sic*
tamen, *adv.*, yet, but, however, nevertheless
tandem, *adv.* [*tam-*], (just so far), at length, finally

- tantulus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*diminutive of tantus*], so small
- tantum**, *adv.* [*tantus*], only
- tantus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*tam*], so great, so much, such. (*Tantamount*)
- Tarentinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Tarentum, a city of southern Italy; *masc. plur. as noun*, the TARENTINES
- Tarentum**, -i, *n.*, TARENTUM, a city of southern Italy
- Tarquinius**, **Tarquini**, *m.*, TARQUIN, name of two kings of Rome, Tarquinius Priscus and Tarquinius Superbus
- tēlum**, -ī, *n.*, weapon
- temperō**, **temperāre**, **temperāvī**, **temperātus**, refrain from, keep from. (*Temperate*)
- tempestās**, -ātis, *f.* [*tempus*], storm, TEMPEST, weather
- templum**, -i, *n.*, TEMPLE
- tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time. (*Temporal*)
- teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, —, hold, keep, have. (*Tenacious, Retain*)
- tentō**, **tentāre**, **tentāvī**, **tentātus**, try, ATTEMPT. *Cf.* experior
- tergum**, -i, *n.*, back; ā **tergō**, behind, in the rear. (*Tergiversation*)
- terra**, -ae, *f.*, earth, land; region. (*Terrace*)
- terreō**, **terrēre**, **terruī**, **terrītus** [*terror*], frighten, alarm, TERRIFY
- terribilis**, -e, *adj.* [*terreō*], dreadful, frightful, TERRIBLE. *Cf.* horribilis
- territōrium**, **territōri**, *n.* [*terra*], lands. (*Territory*)
- terror**, -ōris, *m.* [*terreō*], TERROR, alarm, fear. *Cf.* pavor and timor
- tertium**, *adv.* [*textius*], the third time
- tertius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*trēs*], third. (*Tertiary*)
- Thalēs**, -is, *m.*, THALES, a Greek philosopher
- Thēbae**, -ārum, *f. plur.*, THEBES, a city of Greece
- Tiberis**, -is, *m.* (*acc.* -im), the TIBER, a river of Italy
- Tīcinus**, -i, *m.*, the TICINUS, a river of Italy
- timeō**, **timēre**, **timuī**, — [*timor*], fear, be afraid of. *Cf.* vereor
- timidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*timeō*], faint-hearted, TIMID
- Timōn**, -ōnis, *m.*, TIMON, an Athenian
- timor**, -ōris, *m.* [*timeō*], fear. *Cf.* pavor and terror. (*Timorous*)
- tintinnābulum**, -ī, *n.*, bell. (*Tintinnabulation*)
- Tiryns**, -nthis (-os) (*acc.* Tirynta), *f.*, TIRYNS, a city of Greece
- tolerō**, **tolerāre**, **tolerāvī**, **tolerātus**, bear, endure. (*Tolerate.*) *Cf.* ferō
- tollō**, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, raise, pick up, take. (*Extol*)
- Tolōsātēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, the TOLoSATES, inhabitants of Tolosa, a city in Gaul
- tōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, all, entire. (*Total.*) *Cf.* omnis, ūniversus, and cūctus
- trabs**, **trabis**, *f.*, beam, timber, log
- trāctō**, **trāctāre**, **trāctāvī**, **trāctātus** [*trahō*], handle, feel of. (*Tractate*)
- trā-dō**, **trādere**, **trādidī**, **trādītus** [*trāns-dō*, put], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; **trādunt**, they say. (*Tradition*)

- trā-dūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāduc-tus** [*trāns-*], lead over, lead across. *Often with a secondary object, as, flūmen cōpiās trādūcere*, lead the troops across the river. (*Traduce*)
- trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus**, draw, drag, lead. (*Traction*)
- trā-iciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectus** [*trāns-iaciō*], throw across, cross; pierce. (*Trajectory*)
- trā-nō, trānāre, trānāvī, —** [*trāns-*], swim across
- tranquillus, -a, -um, adj.**, calm, TRANQUIL
- trāns, prep.** with *acc.*, across, beyond, over, the other side of. (*Transatlantic*)
- trāns-eō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsitus**, go over, cross. (*Transit*)
- trāns-figō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī, trānsfixus**, pierce through, stab. (*Transfix*)
- trānsfixus, see trānsfigō**
- trāns-fodiō, trānsfodere, trānsfōdī, trānsfossus**, run through, pierce through, stab
- trāns-fugiō, trānsfugere, trānsfūgī, —**, go over (to the enemy), desert
- trāns-marīnus, -a, -um, adj.** [*mare*], foreign
- trāns-portō, trānsportāre, trānsportāvī, trānsportātus**, carry across. (*Transport*)
- trecentī, -ae, -a, adj.** [*trēs-centum*], three hundred
- trepidō, trepidāre, trepidāvī, trepidātūrus**, be in alarm, be in confusion. (*Trepidation*)
- trēs, tria, adj.**, three. (*Trefoil*)
- tribūnal, -ālis, n.** [*tribūnus*], judgment seat, TRIBUNAL
- tribūnus, -ī, m.**, TRIBUNE, a Roman officer
- trīcēsimus, -a, -um, adj.**, thirtieth
- trīduum, -ī, n.**, three days
- trīstis, -e, adj.**, sad, gloomy
- triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī, triumphātūrus**, celebrate a TRIUMPH
- Trōia, -ae, f.**, TROY, an ancient city of Asia Minor
- trux, trucis, adj.**, wild, harsh, savage, fierce, TRUCULENT. *Cf. atrōx and saevus*
- tū, pers. pron.**, thou, you
- tuba, -ae, f.**, trumpet
- Tullus Hostīlius, Tullī Hostīli, m.**, TULLUS HOSTILIUS, the third king of Rome
- tum, adv.**, at that time; then
- tunc, adv.** [*tum*], at that time, then
- turba, -ae, f.** [*turbō*], crowd, throng; turmoil
- turbō, turbāre, turbāvī, turbātus** [*turba*], DISTURB, confuse, trouble
- turris, -is, f.**, TOWER. (*Turret*)
- Tuscī, -ōrum, m. plur.**, the Etruscans, people of Etruria, in Italy
- Tuscia, -ae, f.**, Etruria, a district of Italy
- Tusculum, -ī, n.**, TUSCULUM, a town near Rome
- tūtēla, -ae, f.**, guardianship, charge, care. (*Tutelary*)
- tūtus, -a, -um, adj.**, safe
- tuus, -a, -um, possess. adj. and pron.**, thy, thine; your, yours (*of only one person*)

- ubi, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, where, when
- ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, *avenger*
- Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, ULYSSES, a Greek hero
- ūllus, -a, -um, *adj. and pron.* [*for ūnulus, diminutive of ūnus*], any, any one, anybody
- ulterior, -ius, *adj., comp.*, farther, more remote. (*Ulterior*)
- ultimus, -a, -um, *adj., superl. of ulterior*, farthest, last. (*Ultimate*)
- umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow. (*Umbra*, *Umbrella*)
- umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder. (*Humerus*)
- umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever
- unde, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, whence
- ūndecimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ūndecim*], eleventh
- undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides, everywhere
- ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ūnus-versus*], (turned into one), whole, all, in a mass. (*Universal, Universe, University.*) *Cf.* cūctus, omnis, and tōtus
- ūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, one; alone. (*Union*)
- urbs, -is, *f.*, city. (*Suburb*)
- ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [*ūtor*], USE, benefit, advantage
- ut (utī), *adv. and conj.*, how, as, when; that, in order that, so that, to
- uter, -tra, -trum, *interrog. pron. and adj.*, which (of two)? uter . . . utrī, which . . . to the other
- ūter, -tris, *m.*, leather bottle, skin (of wine)
- uterque, utraque, utrumque, *indef. pron. and adj.*, each (of two), both
- ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [*ūtor*], useful, advantageous. (*Utility*)
- ūtor, utī, ūsus sum [*ūsus*], USE, employ, enjoy, maintain; *with abl.*
- uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. (*Uxorious*)
- vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, —, be unoccupied. (*Vacant*)
- vadum, -ī, *n.*, shoal, ford
- vāgītus, -ūs, *m.*, a crying
- valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, be in good health; valē, farewell, good-by. (*Valiant, Value*)
- Valerius, Valerī, *m.*, VALERIUS, a Roman name
- valētūdō, -inis, *f.* [*valeō*], health, state of health. (*Valetudinarian*)
- validus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*valeō*], strong, stout, sturdy. (*Valid.*) *Cf.* fortis
- vāllum, -ī, *n.*, earthworks, rampart. (*Circumvallation*)
- vās, vāsis (*plur. vāsa, -ōrum*), *n.*, VASE, pot
- vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus, lay WASTE, ravage
- ve, *conj., enclitic*, or
- vehementer, *adv.*, eagerly, earnestly, very much, VEHEMENTLY
- Vēientēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the inhabitants of Veii
- vel, *conj.* [*volō*, wish], or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or. *Cf.* aut
- vēlō, vēlāre, vēlāvī, vēlātus, cover, encircle, envelop, VEIL
- vel-ut, *adv.*, just as, as if, like

- vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditus,** sell, **VEND**
- venēnum, -ī, n.,** poison. (*Venom*)
- venia, -ae, f.,** indulgence, favor. (*Venial*)
- veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus,** come. (*Convene*)
- vēnor, vēnārī, vēnātus sum,** hunt, chase. (*Venison*)
- venter, -tris, m.,** belly, stomach. (*Ventriloquist*)
- ventus, -ī, m.,** wind. (*Ventilate*)
- verbum, -ī, n.,** word. (*Verb*)
- vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** fear, REVERENCE, respect. *Cf. timeō*
- veritus, see vereor**
- vērō, adv. [vērum],** in truth, but
- versus, see vertō**
- vertō, vertere, vertī, versus,** turn, change. (*Convert, Verse*)
- vērum, conj. [vērō],** but
- vesper, -erī, m.,** evening, nightfall. (*Vespers*)
- Vesta, -ae, f., VESTA,** the goddess of the hearth
- vester, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. and pron.,** your, yours (*of more than one person*)
- vestis, -is, f.,** garment, robe, clothing
- Vesuvius, Vesuvī, m., VESUVIUS,** a volcano near Naples
- Veturia, -ae, f., VETURIA,** mother of Coriolanus
- via, -ae, f.,** way, road, street; gap. (*Via, Viaduct*)
- viātor, -ōris, m. [via],** traveler
- vicīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus],** near, neighboring; *masc. as noun,* neighbor. (*Vicinity*)
- victor, -ōris, m. [vincō],** conqueror, VICTOR; *as adj.,* VICTORIOUS
- victōria, -ae, f. [victor],** VICTORY
- vīcus, -ī, m.,** village, district, street
- videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus,** see, perceive; *pass.,* be seen, seem. (*Vision*)
- vigilia, -ae, f.,** watch, night watch. (*Vigil*)
- vigintī, adj., indecl.,** twenty
- vīmen, -inis, n.,** pliant twig, with, osier
- Viminālis, -is, m.,** the VIMINAL, one of the hills of Rome
- vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīctus,** bind
- vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus,** conquer, defeat. (*Invincible.*) *Cf. superō*
- vinculum, -ī, n. [vinciō],** chain, bond; in **vincula,** into prison, into chains
- vīnea, -ae, f.,** covered shed, movable shelter, VINEA
- vīnum, -ī, n.,** WINE. (*Vine*)
- vir, virī, m.,** man, hero. (*Virile.*) *Cf. homō*
- vireō, virēre, viruī, —,** be green
- virgō, -inis, f.,** maiden, VIRGIN
- virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir],** manliness, courage, bravery, valor; VIRTUE
- vīs, see volō, wish**
- vīs, vīs, f.,** strength, power, force, violence. (*Vim*)
- vīta, -ae, f.,** life. (*Vital*)
- vix, adv.,** hardly, with difficulty
- vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus [vōx],** call. (*Vocation.*) *Cf. appellō*
- Vocontii, -ōrum, m. plur.,** the VOCONTII, a tribe in the Roman province in southeastern Gaul

- volō, velle, volui**, —, wish, be willing, desire, intend. (*Volition*)
- volō, volāre, volāvī, volātūrus**, fly. (*Volatile*)
- Volsci, -ōrum, m. plur.**, the VOLSCIANS, a people of Italy
- Volumnia, -ae, f.**, VOLUMNIA, wife of Coriolanus
- voluntās, -ātis, f.** [*volō, wish*], will, good will, consent. (*Voluntary*)
- voluptās, -ātis, f.** [*volō, wish*], pleasure, enjoyment. (*Voluptuous*)
- vōx, vōcis, f.** [*vocō*], VOICE, word, remark. (*Vocal*)
- Vulcānus, -ī, m.**, VULCAN, the god of fire
- vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātus** [*vulnus*], wound, hurt, injury. (*Vulnerable*)
- vulnus, -eris, n.** [*vulnerō*], wound
- vultus, -ūs, m.**, countenance, looks, features
- Zama, -ae, f.**, ZAMA, a town in Africa

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For the principal parts of verbs, and for other details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English Vocabulary or to the special vocabularies. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4 after verbs indicate the conjugation.

- about**, *dē*, *with abl.*
across, *trāns*, *with acc.*
act, *agō*, 3
advance, *prōgredior*, 3
advise, *moneō*, 2
after, *post*, *with acc.*; *implied in a participle*
afterwards, *postea*
against, *contrā* or *ad*, *with acc.*
aid, *auxilium*, *auxili*, *n.*
all, *omnis*, -e; *tōtus*, -a, -um
ally, *socius*, *soci*, *m.*
alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um; *ūnus*, -a, -um
also, *etiam*
although, *implied in a participle*
among, *inter*, *with acc.*; *in*, *with abl.*
ample, *amplus*, -a, -um
and, *et*, -que; **and also**, *atque*; **and so**, *itaque*
announce, *nūntiō*, 1
another, *alius*, -a, -ud
any, *ūllus*, -a, -um; *aliquī*, *aliqua*, *aliquod*; **any at all**, *quisquam*, —, *quidquam*; **any one**, *aliquis*
anything, *aliquid*
approach, *appropinquō*, 1
approve, *probō*, 1
arm, *armō*, 1
arms, *arma*, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
army, *exercitus*, -ūs, *m.*
arouse, *incitō*, 1; *commoveō*, 2
arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, *m.*
arrow, *sagitta*, -ae, *f.*
ask, *rogō*, 1; *petō*, 3
assistance, *auxilium*, *auxili*, *n.*
at, *in*, *with acc. or abl.*; *abl. of cause*; *abl. of time*; **at last**, *tandem*; **at once**, *statim*
Athens, *Athēnae*, -ārum, *f. plur.*
attack, *v.*, *oppugnō*, 1; *impetum faciō*, 3
attack, *n.*, *impetus*, -ūs, *m.*
attempt, *cōnor*, 1
await, *expectō*, 1
away from, *ā* or *ab*, *with abl.*
baggage, *impedimenta*, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
band, *manus*, -ūs, *f.*
bank, *rīpa*, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, *barbarus*, -ī, *m.*
battle, *pugna*, -ae, *f.*; *proelium*, *proeli*, *n.*
be, *sum*, *irr.*; **be able**, *possum*, *irr.*; **be made**, *fiō*, *irr.*; **be unwilling**, *nōlō*, *irr.*; **be wanting**, *dēsūm*, *irr.*; **be willing**, *volō*, *irr.*
bear, *ferō*, *irr.*

- because**, quod; because of, ob
 or propter, *with acc.*; *abl. of*
cause
become, fiō, *irr.*
began, coepī, *defective*
best, optimus, -a, -um
better, melior, melius
between, inter, *with acc.*
boat, nāvīgium, nāvīgī, *n.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
bold, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
both . . . and, et . . . et
boy, puer, -erī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e
bravely, fortiter; cum virtūte
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
bring, portō, *i*
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
build, aedificō, *i*
building, aedificium, aedificī, *n.*
but, sed
buy, emō, *3*
by, ā or ab, *with abl.*; *abl. of*
means or instrument
Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call together, convocō, *i*
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, *irr.*
captive, captivus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, *3*
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carry, portō, *i*; carry on war, bel-
 lum gerō, *3*
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
 (quiddam)
certainly, certē
chief, princeps, -cipis, *m.*
children, liberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
clan, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*
come, veniō, *4*; come near, accēdō,
3; appropinquō, *i*
coming, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
command, v., iubeō, *2*; imperō, *i*,
with dat.
command, *n.*, imperium, imperī, *n.*
comrade, socius, sociī, *m.*
concerning, dē, *with abl.*
conference, conloquium, conlo-
 quī, *n.*
confidence, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
confuse, perturbō, *i*
conquer, superō, *i*; vincō, *3*
contend, pugnō, *i*
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*
country, patria, -ae, *f.*
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
cut off, interclūdō, *3*
daily, cotidiē
danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*
daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*
dawn (at), primā luce
day, diēs, -eī, *m.*
daybreak (at), primā luce
death, mors, mortis, *f.*

- decide**, cōstituō, 3
deep, altus, -a, -um
defend, dēfendō, 3
delay, *v.*, moror, 1
delay, *n.*, mora, -ae, *f.*
delight, dēlectō, 1
Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
demand, postulō, 1
depart, discēdō, 3
deprive, prīvō, 1
desire, cupiō, 3; studeō, 2, *with dat.*
desist, dēsistō, 3
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
dismiss, dīmittō, 3
disturb, commoveō, 2
do, faciō, 3; agō, 3
down from, dē, *with abl.*
draw up, instruō, 3
dwell, habitō, 1; incolō, 3
- each, each one**, quisque; **each of two**, uterque, utraque, utrumque
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre
easy, facilis, -e
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*
enough, satis
every one, quisque; omnēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
exhort, hortor, 1
extend, pateō, 2
- fact**, rēs, rei, *f.*; **the fact that**, quod, *with a clause of fact*
fail, dēsum, *irr.*, *with dat.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fear, *v.*, timeō, 2; vereor, 2
fear, *n.*, timor, -ōris, *m.*
few, paucī, -ae, -a, *plur.*
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fight, *v.*, pugnō, 1
fight, *n.*, pugna, -ae, *f.*
fill, compleō, 2
find, reperiō, 4
fire, ignis, -is, *m.*
first, prīmus, -a, -um
fit, idōneus, -a, -um
five, quinque
flank, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
flee, fugiō, 3
follow, sequor, 3
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*; **foot soldier**, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *sign of the dative*; prō, *with abl.*; **for the purpose of**, ad, *with gerundive or gerund*; ut, *with subjunctive*
force, vis, vis, *f.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
formerly, ōlim
fortify, mūniō, 4
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
free, *v.*, liberō, 1
free, *adj.*, liber, -era, -erum
friend, amicus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amicus, -a, -um
frighten, terreō, 2
from, dē, *with abl.*; **away from**, ā or ab, *with abl.*; **out from**, ē or ex, *with abl.*; *abl. of separation*
- Galba**, Galba, -ae, *m.*
garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather together, cōgō, 3

- Gaul**, Gallia, -ae, *f.*; **a Gaul**, Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f.*
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, 1; dōnō, 1
go, eō, *irr.*; **go away**, discēdō, 3;
go forward, prōgredior, 3; **go out**, ēgredior, 3
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
good, bonus, -a, -um
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
great, magnus, -a, -um; **great number**, multitudō, -inis, *f.*
greatly, magnopere
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
grieve, doleō, 2

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
happen, fiō, *irr.*
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hardship, labor, -ōris, *m.*
harm, noceō, 2, *with dat.*
hasten, properō, 1
have, habeō, 2
he, is, hic, ille
head, caput, -itis, *n.*
hear, audiō, 4
heavy, gravis, -e
help, auxilium, auxiliī, *n.*; subsidium, subsidiī, *n.*
Helvetians, Helvētīi, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
her, (*objective*) eam, hanc, illam;
(*possessive*) eius, huius, illius;
(*reflexive possessive*) suus, -a, -um
herself, suī

high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
him, eum, hunc, illum
himself, suī
hinder, impediō, 4
his, eius, huius, illius; (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um
hold, habeō, 2; teneō, 2; **hold in check**, sustineō, 2
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how many, quot
however, tamen
hundred, centum
hurl, iaciō, 3
hurry, properō, 1

I, ego
if, *implied in a participle*
impel, incitō, 1
in, in, *with abl.*; *abl. of specification*; *in defense of*, prō, *with abl.*; *in front of*, prō, *with abl.*; *in order to*, ut, *with subjunctive*; *in such a way*, ita; *in vain*, frūstrā
increase, augeō, 2
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
inform, certiōrem faciō, 3
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*
injure, noceō, 2, *with dat.*
into, in, *with acc.*
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*

- it, id, hoc, illud
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
- javelin**, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
Julia, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*
- kill**, interficiō, 3
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, 4; cognōscō, 3, *in perf. tenses*
- Labienus**, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
labor, labōrō, 1
lack, *v.*, careō, 2, *with abl.*; dēsum, *irr., with dat.*
lack, *n.*, inopia, -ae, *f.*
lady, domina, -ae, *f.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
land, terra, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um
last, proximus, -a, -um
lay waste, vāstō, 1
lead, dūcō, 3; **lead back**, redūcō, 3;
lead out, ēdūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
learn, cognōscō, 3
least, minimus, -a, -um
leave behind, relinquō, 3
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
legion, legiō; -ōnis, *f.*
lest, nē, *with subjunctive*
letter, litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
liberate, liberō, 1
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
like, similis, -e
line of battle; aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
little, parvus, -a, -um
live, habitō, 1
- long**, longus, -a, -um; **for a long time**, diū
look at, spectō, 1
love, amō, 1
- make**, faciō, 3
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, -inis, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a, *plur.*
march, *v.*, iter faciō, 3
march, *n.*, iter, itineris, *n.*
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
marsh, palūs, palūdis, *f.*
master, dominus, -ī, *m.*
meanwhile, interim
messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*
mile, mille passuum
mine, meus, -a, -um
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
more, plūs, plūris
most, plūrimus, -a, -um
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, 2
much, *adj.*, multus, -a, -um
much, *adv.*, multum; multō
must, *passive periphrastic conjugation*
my, meus, -a, -um
- nation**, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
near, *adj.*, finitimus, -a, -um; pro-
pinquus, -a, -um
near, *prep.*, apud, *with acc.*
neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um
neighbors, finitimī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
never, numquam
new, novus, -a, -um

night, nox, noctis, *f.*

no, nūllus, -a, -um; no longer, nōn iam

nor, neque

not, nōn; not even, nē . . . quidem

nothing, nihil

now, iam, nunc

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

ocean, ōceanus, -ī, *m.*

of, sign of the genitive; dē, with
abl.; out of, ē or ex, with abl.

offer, dō, *i*

often, saepe

on, in, with abl.; abl. of time; on
account of, ob or propter, with acc.

once (upon a time), ōlim

one, ūnus, -a, -um

order, *v.*, iubeō, 2; imperō, *i*, with
dat.

order (in order that), ut, with sub-
junctive

other, alius, -a, -ud; other of two,
alter, -era, -erum

ought, dēbeō, 2; *passive peri-*
phrastic conjugation

our, noster, -tra, -trum; our men,
nostrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

ourselves, nōs; ipsī, -ae

out of, ē or ex, with abl.

overcome, superō, *i*; vincō, 3

own, (his, her, its, their) suus, -a,
-um; (my) meus, -a, -um; (our)

noster, -tra, -trum; (your, *sing.*)

tuus, -a, -um; (your, *plur.*) vester,

-tra, -trum

part, pars, partis, *f.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

people, populus, -ī, *m.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

personal enemy, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*

persuade, persuādeō, 2, with dat.

pirate, pīrātā, -ae, *m.*

pitch camp, castra pōnō, 3

place, *v.*, pōnō, 3; conlocō, *i*;

place in command, praeficiō, 3,
with dat. of the object over
which

place, *n.*, locus, -ī (*plur. loca and*
rarely locī), *m.*

plan, cōnsilium, cōnsilī, *n.*

plead, ōrō, *i*

please, placeō, 2, with dat.

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um

plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

point out, dēmōnstrō, *i*

poor, miser, -era, -erum

power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; vis, vis, *f.*

praise, laudō, *i*

prefer, mālō, *irr.*

prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*

promise, polliceor, 2

protection, subsidium, subsidi, *n.*

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

purpose (for the purpose of), ut (*neg.*
nē), with subjunctive; ad, with
gerund or gerundive; causā, fol-
lowing a gerund or gerundive

put in command, praeficiō, 3, with
dat. of the object over which:

put to flight, fugō, *i*

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*

receive, capiō, 3; recipiō, 3

relate, nārrō, *i*

remain, maneō, 2

remember, memoriā teneō, 2

- reply**, respondeō, 2
report, nūntiō, 1
resist, resistō, 3, *with dat.*
rest, reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*; **rest of**, reliquus, -a, -um
return, revertō, 3; *commonly deponent in the present system*
reward, praemium, praemī, *n.*
right, dexter, -tra, -trum
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
road, via, -ae, *f.*
Roman, *adj.*, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Roman, *n.*, Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rule, regō, 3

sail, nāvigō, 1
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake (for the sake of), causā, *following a genitive*
same, īdem, eadem, idem
say, dīcō, 3
scare, terreō, 2
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um
see, videō, 2
seek, petō, 3
self, ipse, -a, -um; suī
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, 3; **send ahead**, praemittō, 3
servant, servus, -ī, *m.*
set free, liberō, 1; **set out**, proficīscor, 3
severe, gravis, -e
she, ea, haec, illa
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*

shore, litus, -oris, *n.*
short, brevis, -e
show, dēmōnstrō, 1; praebeō, 2; doceō, 2
shut off, interclūdō, 3
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*
since, *implied in a participle*
sing, cantō, 1
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
six, sex
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slight, parvus, -a, -um
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, tam, ita; **so as not to**, nē, *with subjunctive*; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um; **so that**, ut, *with subjunctive*
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī
somebody, **some one**, aliquis
something, aliquid
sometimes, interdum
son, filius, filiī, *m.*
sortie, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
spend the winter, hiemō, 1
state, civitās, -ātis, *f.*
station, conlocō, 1
stay, maneō, 2
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vīs, vīs, *f.*
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
sunset, sōlis occāsus
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
surpass, superō, 1
surrender, dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*

- survive**, supersum, *irr.*, with *dat.*
swamp, palūs, palūdis, *f.*
swim, natō, *1*
sword, gladius, gladi, *m.*
- take**, capiō, *3*
tall, altus, -a, -um
teach, doceō, *2*
tell, nārrō, *1*; dicō, *3*
ten, decem
tenth, decimus, -a, -um
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
territory, finēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
than, quam
that, *dem. pron.*, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; **that of yours**, iste, -a, -ud
that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod
that, *conj.*, in *purpose or result clauses*, ut, with *subjunctive*; not expressed after a verb of saying;
that not, nē, ut nōn, with *subjunctive*
their, eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um
them, eōs, eās, ea
themselves, sē (sēsē); ipsī, -ae, -a
then, tum
there, ibi; not translated in such expressions as **there is**
therefore, itaque
they, eī, eae, ea; hī, hae, haec; illī, illae, illa
thing, rēs, rei, *f.*; sometimes omitted
think, putō, *1*
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc
though, implied in a *participle*
thousand, mille
three, trēs, tria
- through**, per, with *acc.*
throw, iaciō, *3*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
tired, tired out, defessus, -a, -um
to, sign of the *dative*; ad or in, with *acc.*; expressing *purpose*, ut, with *subjunctive*; ad, with *gerund or gerundive*; causā, following a *gerund or gerundive*
to-day, hodiē
toward, ad, with *acc.*
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
turret, turris, -is, *f.*
two, duo, -ae, -o; **which of two**, uter, utra, utrum; **each of two**, uterque, utraque, utrumque
- unfriendly**, inimicus, -a, -um
unhappy, miser, -era, -erum
unwilling (be), nōlō, *irr.*
urge, hortor, *1*
- valor**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
very, *superlative degree*; maximē; ipse, -a, -um
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
- wage**, gerō, *3*
wagon, carrus, -ī, *m.*
wait, wait for, exspectō, *1*
walk, ambulō, *1*
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*

- war**, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, 2
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
welcome, *v.*, recipiō, 3
welcome, *adj.*, grātus, -a, -um
well, bene
what, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod)
when, cum; *ablative absolute; implied in a participle*
whence, unde
where, ubi
whether, num
which, quī, quae, quod; **which of two**, uter, utra, utrum
while, cum; *implied in a participle*
whither, quō
who, (*rel.*) quī, quae; (*interrog.*) quis
whole, tōtus, -a, -um; omnis, -e
why, cūr
wide, lātus, -a, -um
width, lātitūdō, -inis, *f.*
wind, ventūs, -ī, *m.*
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*; **winter quarters**, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
wish, volō, *irr.*; cupiō, 3
with, cum, *with abl.*; *sometimes abl. alone*
without, sine, *with abl.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*
woods, silva, -ae, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, labōrō, 1
wound, *v.*, vulnerō, 1
wound, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wretched, miser, -era, -erum
year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yet, tamen
you, (*sing.*) tū; (*plur.*) vōs
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
your, (*sing.*) tuus, -a, -um; (*plur.*) vester, -tra, -trum
zeal, studium, studi, *n.*



INDEX

References are to sections unless otherwise indicated

- ā** or **ab** with ablative of agent, 242, 243
- ablative**, XXIV, *b*
of adjectives of third declension, 208, *c*
absolute, 452-455
of accompaniment, 142, 143
of agent, 242, 243
of cause, 184, 185
of degree of difference, 320, 321
of manner, 128, 129
of means, 121, 122
of place from which, 177, 229, 230
of place where, 58, 59
of separation, 281, 282
of specification, 480, 481
of time, 218, 219
with **ex**, equivalent to partitive genitive, 309, *a*
with prepositions, 194
- accent**, 20-22
- accusative**, XXIV, *b*
in indirect statements, 400, 401
object of transitive verbs, 32, 33
of extent, 332, 333
of place to which, 179, 229, 230
subject of the infinitive, 398, 399
with prepositions, 193
- ācer**, declension, 644
comparison, 306, 647
- adjectives**, definition, III, *a*
kinds and definitions, III, *b-f*
of first and second declensions, 78, 79, 643; in **-er**, 103, 643; with genitive in **-ius** and dative in **-i**, 385-387, 646
of third declension, 208, 644; of one, two, and three terminations, 208
- agreement**, 79
comparison, 296, 306, 307, 317, 319, 647, 649; irregular, 307, 317, 319, 649; by adverbs, XXVI, *c*
- declension of comparatives, 297, 648
meaning of comparative and superlative, 296, *c*
interrogative, 152, 154
possessive, 278; distinction in use: between **suus** and **eius**, 279; between **tuus** and **vester**, 278; omission of **suus**, 280
predicate, XV, *a*; 86, 88; with complementary infinitive, 394, *b*
used as nouns, III, *f*; 196
- adverbial clauses with quā and ut**, 497
- adverbs**, definition, V, *a*
kinds and definitions, V, *b-f*
formation, 325, 326; of the comparative and superlative, 327, *a*.
comparison, 327, 650
- agent**, expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**, 242, 243
- ager**, declension, 97, 637
- agreement**, of adjectives, 79; after a complementary infinitive, 394, *b*
of appositives, 93, 94
of predicate nouns, XV, *c*; 87
of relative pronouns, 247, 248
of verb with its subject, 29
- aliquis**, 420, *c*; 657
- alius**, declension, 646
alius . . . alius, 387
- alphabet**, I
- alter . . . alter**, 387
- amāns**, declension, 645
- amō**, conjugation, 658
- antecedent**, definition, II, *b*
- antepenult**, II
when accented, 21
- apposition**, 93, 94
- article**, not used in Latin, 27, *a*
- audāx**, declension, 644
comparison, 296, 647
- audiō**, conjugation, 662

- base**, 63, *a*
- bonus**, declension, 643
comparison, 317, 649
- brevis**, declension, 644
comparison, 296, 647
- capīō**, conjugation, 661
- caput**, declension, 171, 638
- cardinals**, definition, III, *c*
declension, 378, 646
indeclinable forms, 378
table of, 651
- case**, definition, XXIV
of relative pronoun, 247
- case endings**, 25, *a*; 63, 73, 171, 189, 292, 331
- cases**, names of English, XXIV, *a*
names of Latin, XXIV, *b*. See under **nominative**, **genitive**, etc.
uses, 512
- causā** with gerund, 461, *a*
with gerundive, 472
- causal clauses** with **quod**, 50, 51
- cause**, expressed by the ablative, 184, 185
expressed by a prepositional phrase, 186, 195, *b*
- characteristic vowels** of the four conjugations, 38
- clauses**, definitions, xx, *a-f*
indirect questions, 372, 373
of cause, with **quod**, 50, 51
of purpose, with **ut** and **nē**, 343, 344;
substantive, 355, 356
of result, with **ut** and **ut nōn**, 357, 358
temporal, with **cum**, 487, 488
- cohors**, declension, 189, 639
- comparative**, declined, 297, 648
formation, 296, *a*
meaning too, etc., 296, *c*
- comparison**, definition, XXVI, *a*
methods of, in English and in Latin, XXVI, *b, c*
of adjectives, 296, 306, 307, 317, 319, 647, 649; of adjectives in -lis, 307; irregular, 307, 317, 319, 649
of adverbs, 327, 650
- complement** of verb, xv, *b*
- complementary infinitive**; 394
- conjugation**, definition, XXVII, *a*. See **verbs**
in English and Latin verbs, XXVII, *b, c*
- conjunctions**, definition, VII, *a*
kinds and definitions, VII, *b, c*
- consonant-i**, 3
- consonants**, how pronounced, 6
- contraction** in genitive of nouns in -ium and -ius, 98
- coördinate clauses**, xx, *f*
- copula**, xv, *b*
- cornū**, declension, 292, 640
- cum** (conj.) in temporal clauses, 487, 488
- cum** (prep.), with ablative of accompaniment, 142, 143
with ablative of manner, 128, 129
joined to ablative of personal, reflexive, relative, and interrogative pronouns, p. 109, note I
- dative**, XXIV, *a, 4*; *b*
double, 426, *a*
of indirect object, 56, 57
of purpose, 426, 427
of reference, 426, 428
with adjectives, 110, 111
with compound verbs, 424, 425
with special intransitive verbs, 432, 433
- declension**, definition, XXII. See **nouns**, **pronouns**, **adjectives**, and **comparatives**
- degree of difference**, expressed by the ablative, 320, 321
- demonstrative adjectives** and **pronouns**, definition, II, *f*; III, *e*. See **pronouns**; also **hic**, **idem**, **ille**, **ipse**, **is**, **iste**
- dependent clause**, XIX, note; XX, *a-e*
- deponent verbs**, 482, 483, 669
- deus**, declension, 642
- diēs**, declension, 331, 641
gender, 331
- diphthongs**, how pronounced, 5
- direct statements**, 400
- domō**, used of place from which, 229, 230, *a*
- domum**, used of place to which, 229, 230, *b*

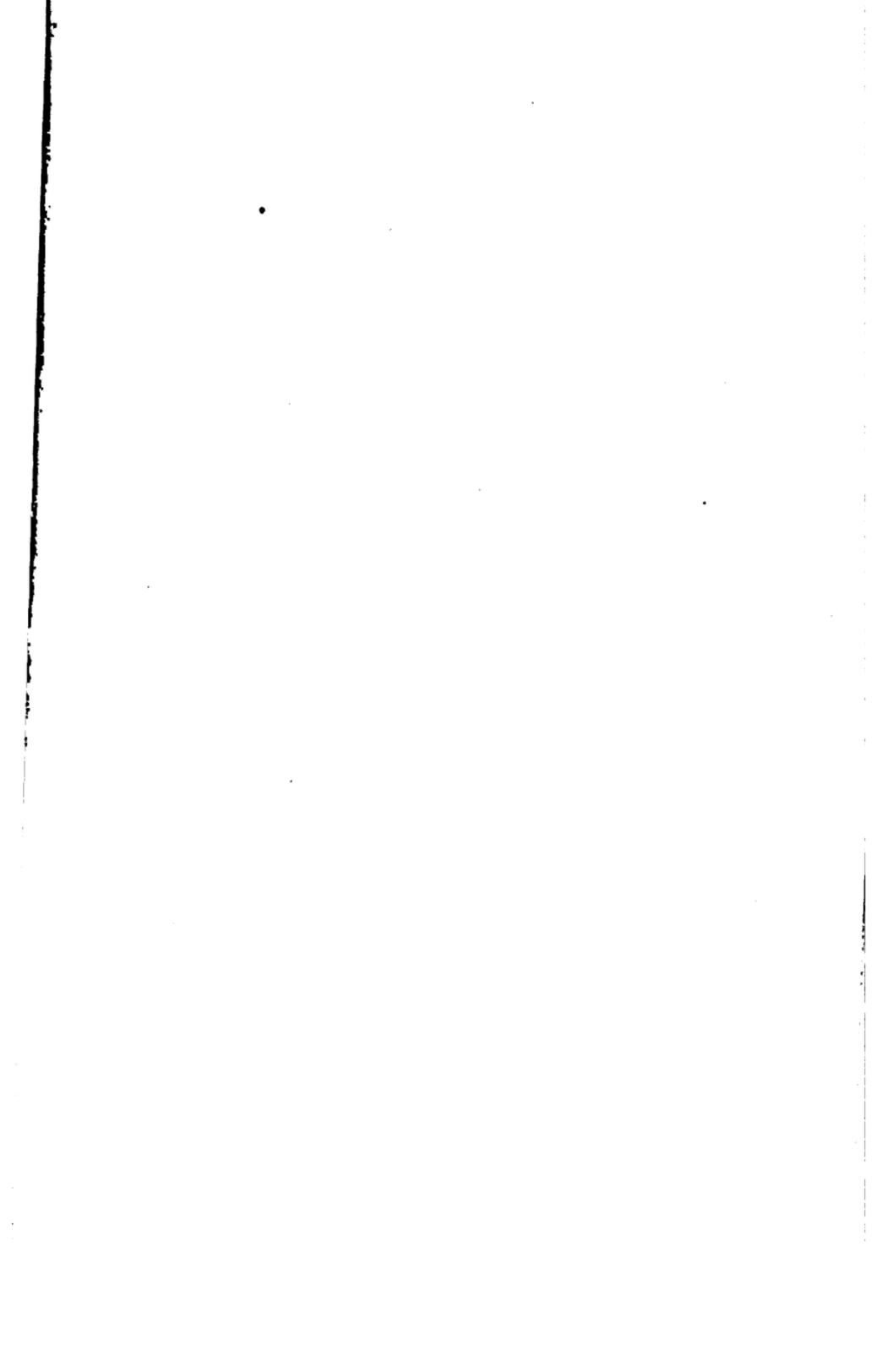
- domus**, declension, 642
gender, 292, *b*
- dōnum**, declension, 73, 637
- dum** with present indicative, p. 133,
note 4
- duo**, declension, 646
- ego**, declension, 652
- eius** compared with **suus**, 279
- enclitics**, 22
- eō**, conjugation, 667
- Eutropius**, selections from, 547-551
- exercitus**, declension, 292, 640
- extent** of time or space, how expressed, 332, 333
- ferō**, conjugation, 666
- fifth declension**, 331, 641
- filius**, declension, 98, 637
- fiō**, conjugation, 668
- first declension**, 63, 636
- fourth declension**, 292, 640
- future active participle**, xxxiv, *b*
formation, 441, *a*
in principal parts, p. 63, note 1
use, 444
- future perfect tense**, formation of,
active, 223, *a*; passive, 286, *b*
- gender**, in English and in Latin,
xxv, *a, b*; 64
in first declension, 64, *a*
in second declension, 99
in third declension, 171, *b*
in fourth declension, 292 and *b*
in fifth declension, 331
- genitive**, xxiv, *a, 2*; *b*
objective, 380, 381
of material, p. 79, note 1
partitive, 308, 309
possessive, 43, 44
- gerund**, a verbal noun, xxxii, *c*; 459,
460
uses, 461
- gerundive**, a verbal adjective, 471
agreement of, 471
used with **ad** and **causā** to express
purpose, 472
used with **sum** to form the passive
periphrastic conjugation, 473;
expresses necessary action, 473, *a*
- Helvetians**, campaign against the,
440, 451, 479, 494, 514-523
- hic**, declension, 654
uses, 228, 263
- hortor**, conjugation, 669
- hortus**, declension, 73, 637
- hostis**, declension, 189, 639
- i** with force of a consonant before a
vowel, 3
- i-stems**, 189, 639
- idem**, declension, 654
use, 410, *a*
- iēns**, declension, 645
- ille**, declension, 654
uses, 228, 263
- in** with accusative and ablative, 193,
194
- indefinite pronouns and adjectives**,
definition, II, *g*; III, *e*. See pro-
nouns
- independent clause**, xviii, note
- indirect object**, definition, xiv, *b*
case of, 56, 57
- indirect questions**, 372, 373
- indirect statements**, 400-402
- infinitive**, definition and English uses,
xxxii, *a, b*
formation, 38, 392; omission of
esse in compound forms, p. 190,
note 1
as object, 398
as subject, 393
complementary, 394
in indirect statements, 400-402;
tenses in, 402
not used to express purpose,
343, *b*
takes a subject accusative, 398,
399
- inflection**, definition, xxi
- interjection**, definition, viii
- interrogative adjective**, 152, 154
- interrogative pronoun**, 152, 153
- intransitive verb**, definition, iv, *c*
followed by dative, 432, 433
- iō**, verbs in, of the third conjugation,
175, 661
- ipse**, declension, 654
distinguished from **sui**, 410, *c*
used for emphasis, 410, *c*

- irregular adjectives** (genitives in -ius), 385-387, 646
- irregular comparison**, 307, 317, 319, 649
- irregular verbs**: eō, 667; ferō, 666; fiō, 668; possum, 664; sum, 663; volō, nōlō, and mālō, 665
- is**, declension, 147, 654
relation to hic and ille, 148
uses as a demonstrative pronoun and adjective, 148
used as a personal pronoun, 263
- iste**, declension, 654
uses, 410, a, b
- iter**, declension, 642
- Iuppiter**, declension, 642
- lātior**, declension, 297, 648
- lātus**, comparison, 296, 647
- liber**, declension, 643
- locative case**, XXIV, b
- magnus**, comparison, 317, 649
- mālō**, conjugation, 665
- malus**, comparison, 317, 649
- manner**, how expressed, 128, 129
- manus**, gender, 292, b
- mare**, declension, 189, 639
- means**, expressed by the ablative, 121, 122
- miles**, declension, 171, 638
- mille**, declension, 378, 646
use, 379
- miser**, comparison, 306, 647
- moneō**, conjugation, 659
- mōns**, declension, 189, 639
- moods**, kinds and definitions, XXIX-XXXI
- multus**, comparison, 317, 649
- ne**, enclitic, 22, 27, d
- nē**, *that not (lest)*, introducing negative clauses of purpose, 343, 344
- nōlō**, conjugation, 665
- nominative**, XXIV, a, 1; b
as subject of a finite verb, 28
of pronouns expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 39, b; 264
predicate, 86-88
- nōs**, declension, 652
- noster**, declension, 643
- nouns**, definition, I, a
kinds and definitions, I, b-f
first declension, 63, 636
second declension, 73, 97, 98, 637
third declension, 171, 189, 638, 639
fourth declension, 292, 640
fifth declension, 331, 641
predicate, 87
rules of gender, 64, a; 99, 171, b; 292 and b, 331
- number**, singular and plural, XXIII
- numerals**, definition, III, c
declension, 378
table of, 651
- object**, definition, XIV, a
direct and indirect, XIV, b
of a transitive verb, 33
- on account of**, how expressed in Latin, 195
- order of words**, 35, 60, 81, 89, 228, 386, b
- ordinals**, definition, III, c
declined like bonus, 378
table of, 651
- participles**, definition and uses, XXXIV, a-c
agreement, 443
declension, 442, 645
formation, 441, a
in deponent verbs, 483; perfect, 483, a
no past and perfect active and no present passive, in Latin, XXXIV, b
often best rendered as a clause, 445
tenses, 444
- partitive genitive**, 308, 309
- parvus**, comparison, 317, 649
- passive voice**, XXVIII, 237
formation, 238, a; 239, 286, a, c
agent expressed by the ablative with ā or ab, 242, 243
- penult**, definition, II
when accented, 21
- perfect tense**, formation of, active, 134 and b; passive, 286, a, c
definite and indefinite, 134, a
- periphrastic conjugation**, passive, 473
synopsis of, 670

- person**, distinctions, II, *c*
- personal pronouns**, see **pronouns**
- phrase**, definition and kinds, XVI, *a-c*
- place to which and from which**, 229, 230
- pluperfect tense**, formation of, active, 223, *a*; passive, 286, *b*
- plūs**, declension, 648
- portus**, irregular dative and ablative plural, 292, *a*
- possessive adjectives**, see **adjectives**
- possum**, how compounded, 411
conjugation, 664
- potior**, conjugation, 669
- predicate**, definition, XI, *c*
complete, XIII
simple, XII
- predicate adjective**, agreement, 88
definition, xv
- predicate nominative**, xv, *c*
- predicate noun**, agreement, 87
definition, xv
- prefixes**, 630
- prepositions**, definition, vi
with the ablative, 194
with the accusative, 193
- primary tenses**, 349
- principal parts of verbs**, 132
- proelium**, declension, 98, 637
- pronouns**, definition, II, *a*
kinds and definitions, II, *c-h*
demonstrative, definition, II, *f*; declension, 654; *hic* and *ille*, uses, 228; *is*, uses, 228; relation of *is* to *hic* and *ille*, 148; *iste*, *idem*, *ipse*, 410
indefinite, definition, II, *g*; declension, 657; uses, 420; *quid* forms used as pronouns, *quod* forms as adjectives, 420, *e*
interrogative, definition, II, *e*; declension, 153, 656; followed by *cum*, p. 109, note 1
personal, definition, II, *c*; declension, 652; nominative expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 264; third person supplied by *is*, sometimes by *hic* or *ille*, 263; followed by *cum*, p. 109, note 1
possessive, see **possessive adjectives**
- reflexive, definition, II, *h*; declension, 653; use, 266; followed by *cum*, p. 109, note 1
relative, definition, II, *d*; agreement, 247, 248; declension, 246, 655; followed by *cum*, p. 109, note 1; referring to a personal pronoun, 267
- pronunciation**, sounds of letters, 4-6
- puer**, declension, 97, 637
- purpose**, dative of, 426, 427
expressed by the accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, 461, 472
expressed by the genitive of the gerund or gerundive with *causā*, 461, 472
expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* and *nē*, 343, 344
not expressed by the infinitive, 343, *b*
substantive clauses of, 355, 356
- quā** in adverbial clauses, 497
- que**, enclitic, 22
- questions**, indirect, 372, 373
- quī**, declension, 246, 655
- quidam**, 420, *d*; 657
- quis**, declension, 153, 656
- quisquam**, 420, 657
- quisque**, 420, 657
- quod clause** of fact, 495, 496
- reflexive pronouns**, see **pronouns**
- regō**, conjugation, 660
- relative pronouns**, see **pronouns**
- rēs**, declension, 331, 641
- result**, expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 357, 358
- rēx**, declension, 171, 638
- sē**, distinguished from *ipse*, 410, *c*
- second declension**, 73, 97, 98, 637
- secondary tenses**, 349
- sentences**, definition, IX
kinds and definitions, x, *a-d*
- separation**, expressed by the ablative, 281, 282
- sequence of tenses**, 348-352
- sequor**, conjugation, 669
- space**, extent of, 332, 333

- specification**, ablative of, 480, 481
stems of verbs, 132, 133
Stories from Roman History, 552-555
Stories of Hercules, 529-538
Stories of Perseus, 277, 291, 316, 339, 370, 391, 408
Story of Ulysses, 539-546
Story of the Aduatuci, 524-528
subject, definition, XI, *b*
 complete, XIII
 simple, XII
 agreement of verb with, 29
 not expressed, 264
 of an infinitive, 399
 of a verb, 28
subjunctive, definition, xxx
 formation, of present, 342; of imperfect, 347; of perfect and pluperfect, 371
 in indirect questions, 372, 373
 in purpose clauses, 343, 344, 355, 356
 in result clauses, 357, 358
 in temporal clauses with *cum*, 487, 488
 tenses, 341; sequence of, 348-352
subordinate clauses in indirect statements, 501, 502
substantive clauses, of fact with *quod*, 495, 496
 of purpose, 355, 356
suffixes, 632
sui, declension, 653
 distinguished from *ipse*, 410, *c*
sum, conjugation, 663
summary of uses, of nouns, 512
 of verbs, 513
suus, 278, 279
 compared with *eius*, 279
 omission of, 280
syllables, number of, 8
 division of, 9, 10; in compound words, 10
 how named, 11
 long and short, 17-19
synopsis of the verb, 671
temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, 487, 488
tense, XXXIII, *a, b*
tenses, distinction in use between the perfect and the imperfect, 134, *a*
 of the infinitive in indirect statements, 402
 primary and secondary, 349
 sequence of, 348-352
 sign of the future, 126, *a*
 sign of the imperfect, 120, *b*
terminations, of first declension, 63
 of second declension, 73
 of third declension, 171, 189
 of fourth declension, 292
 of fifth declension, 331
third declension, 171, 638
i-stems, 189, 639
time, at which and within which, 218, 219
 extent of, 332, 333
to, how expressed in Latin, 195
towns, names of, expressing place to which and from which, 229, 230
transitive verb, IV, *b*
trēs, declension, 646
tū, declension, 652
tuus, compared with *vester*, 278
-ubus, in irregular dative and ablative plural, 292, *a*
ultima, 11
ūnus, declension, 646
ut, in adverbial clauses, 497
 in clauses of purpose, 343, 344, 355, 356
 in clauses of result, 357, 358
 translations, 343, 1 and *b*
verbs, definition, IV, *a*
 kinds and definitions, IV, *b-f*
 agreement, 29; in relative clauses, 267
 case, of subject, 28; of object, 33
 conjugations, how distinguished, 38
 deponent, form, meaning, how distinguished, 482; active forms, 483; participles of both voices, 483; perfect participle, active in meaning, 483, *a*; conjugation, 669
 intransitive, which are transitive in English, 432, 433
 irregular, see *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*, *possum*, *sum*, and *volō*

- of first conjugation**, 658
- of second conjugation**, 659
- of third conjugation**, 660, 661
- of fourth conjugation**, 662
- passive periphrastic conjugation**,
473; synopsis of, 670
- personal endings**, 25, *a*; 39, 134
- principal parts**, 132
- vereor**, conjugation, 669
- vester**, compared with *tuus*, 278
- vir**, declension, 97, 637
- virtūs**, declension, 171, 638
- vīs**, declension, 642
- vocative case**, XXIV, *b*
- voice**, XXVIII
- volō**, conjugation, 665
- vōs**, declension, 652
- vowels**, how pronounced, 4
 - long, 14, 15
 - short, 12, 13
- with**, how expressed in Latin, 195



14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

2 Jun '61 JR

REC'D LD

JUN 1 1961

5 Dec '61 RR

REC'D LD

NOV 22 1961

SENT ON ILL

JUL 14 2003

U. C. BERKELEY

LD 21A-50m-12, '60
(B6221s10)476B

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

YB 00235

